

A
TRUE
STORY

A
TRUE
STORY

AN INTERMEDIATE GREEK READER

Evan Hayes
and
Stephen Nimis

LUCIAN'S
A TRUE STORY

An Intermediate Greek Reader

Greek Text with Running Vocabulary and Commentary

Evan Hayes
and
Stephen Nimis

Lucian's *A True Story*: An Intermediate Greek Reader
Greek text with Running Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2011 by Evan Hayes and Stephen Nimis

Revised Aug. 2014

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The authors have made a version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter and distribute this work under the following conditions:

1. You must attribute the work to the author (but not in a way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
2. You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
3. If you alter, transform or build up this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

The Greek text is the edition of A. M. Harmon, first published by William Heinemann in 1921.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9832228-0-4

ISBN-10: 0983222800

Published by Stephen Nimis

Cover Design: Evan Hayes

Cover Photo: Illustration from Brockhaus and Efron Encyclopedic Dictionary,
1890–1907 (image in the public domain)

Fonts: Gentium (Open Font License)
GFS Porson (Open Font License)

Table of Contents

Introduction	vii-x
Abbreviations	x
Text and Commentary	1-160
Book 1	1
Book 2	75
Grammatical topics:	
αὐτός	5
Future more and less vivid conditions	7
Unreal conditions	8
Verbs of coming and going	12
Expressions of time and space	14
Imperfect of ἔρχομαι	16
Defective verbs	17
Greek numbers	20
Indirect statement in secondary sequence	22
Conjugation of ἴημι	24
Uses of the subjunctive and optative in subordinate clauses	27
Conjugation of τάσσω	33
Result clauses	38
Indirect statement after verbs of knowing, perceiving, hearing or showing	41
General conditions and temporal clauses	44
Conjugation of ἵστημι	79
Time and Aspect: the Indicative	80-81
Indirect statement after verbs of saying	83
Indirect statement after verbs of thinking and believing	87
ἄτε and ὥς + participle	94
More about αὐτός	104
Time and Aspect: Translating the Aorist Participle	122-123
List of verbs	163-177
Glossary	179-191

Acknowledgments

The idea for this project grew out of work the authors did with support from Miami University's Undergraduate Summer Scholars Program and the Dean's Scholar Program of the College of Arts and Science. The technical aspects of this project were made possible through the invaluable advice and support of Bill Hayes, Christopher Kuo, and Daniel Meyers. Parts of the text were improved by the help of intermediate Greek students at Miami who tested an earlier version. They were Nicholas Arlington, Brian Bitzer, Michael Clemmer, Elisabeth Colucci, Christopher Dobbs, Kristie Fernberg, Tyler Gau, Stephanie Goldkopf, Jordan Gulley, Alexander Heck, Amanda Holmes, Victoria Hudson, Dylan Ketchum, Adrian Kimmett, Stephanie Krause, Paul Levitt, Brent Maynard, Rebecca Riffle, Katherine Roach, Nathan Roser, Derek Rumpler, Nathan Schaad, Katie Spaulding, and Simone Waller. The following identified errors in an earlier edition: Christopher Francese, Mark Lightman, Jesse Lundquist, Sean Manning, Louise Pratt, Robert Regan, and Maud Gleason. The authors also profited from advice and help on the POD process from Geoffrey Steadman. All responsibility for errors, however, rests with the authors themselves.

Introduction

The aim of this book is to make Lucian's *A True Story* accessible to intermediate students of Ancient Greek. The running vocabulary and commentary are meant to provide everything necessary to read each page. The commentary is almost exclusively grammatical, explaining subordinate clauses, conditions etc., and explaining unusual verb forms. The page by page vocabularies gloss all but the most common words. We have endeavored to make these glossaries as useful as possible without becoming fulsome. A glossary of all words occurring three or more times in the text can be found as an appendix in the back, but it is our hope that most readers will not need to use this appendix often. Brief summaries of a number of grammatical and morphological topics are interspersed through the text as well, and there is a list of verbs used by Lucian that have unusual forms in an appendix. The principal parts of those verbs are given there rather than in the glossaries. We have provided brief explanations of allusions and proper names, but the commentary by Aristoula Georgiadou and David H.J. Larmour (*Lucian's Science Fiction Novel, True Histories: Interpretation and Commentary*. Leiden: Brill, 1998) can be consulted for more details on the literary character of the work, and those authors include a generous bibliography of critical studies of Lucian.

Lucian's *A True Story* is an ideal text for intermediate readers. Its breathless narrative does not involve many complex sentences or constructions; there is some unusual vocabulary and a few departures from Attic Greek, but for the most part it is a straightforward narrative that is fun and interesting. Lucian of Samosata is one of antiquity's cleverest authors. Nearly everything we know about him is derived from his works, several of which have autobiographical material that is unable to be confirmed by other sources. He claims to have been trained in rhetoric and to be one of the many traveling professional speakers, the "sophists" of the Roman empire, who entertained audiences with amusing lectures on topics of all sorts. He is famous for his satirical sketches that often focus on hypocrisy and pedantry. In *A True Story*, he parodies accounts of fanciful adventures and travel to incredible places by authors such as Ctesias and Iambulus. The story's combination of mockery and learning makes it an excellent example of the Greek literature of the imperial period. The climax of the story is the visit to the Island of the Blessed, where many major figures from Greek literary history are presented with a mixture of humor and pride. In addition the conspicuous absence of any reference to the Roman world in the work--the journey begins at the western

margin of the Mediterranean and never returns--represents one frequent strategy of works of the so-called "second sophistic," which emphasized the importance of Greek learning (*paideia*) in a world dominated by Roman political power. *A True Story* is of course aimed at a readership of learned men (*pepaideumenoι*), who would recognize the many humorous allusions to the Greek cultural tradition, especially the *Odyssey*. The introductory paragraphs state that *A True Story* is meant to be a relaxation as a respite from more serious work, a respite that is clever and amusing in part because it makes hinting reference (*ainissomai*) to archaic poetry and history. Georgiadou and Larmour take the position that a more serious allegory about truth and experience can be deduced from this *ainigma*. Perhaps they are right, but *A True Story* has been admired for centuries as a lot of fun: the first example of science fiction, a utopian fantasy, and a gentle mockery of some of the most famous figures in the classical tradition.

The Greek text contained in this volume is based on the Loeb edition of Lucian, first published in 1921 and now in the public domain. This text was scanned in 2003 and has appeared on several web pages. We have corrected as many of the inevitable errors introduced by the scanning process as we could find, and also made a few minor changes to the Loeb text itself. This is not a scholarly edition; for that the reader is referred to the OCT edited by M. D. Macleod. Keith Sidwell includes some selections from *A True Story* in his intermediate reader, *Lucian: Selections* (Bristol: Bristol Classical Press, 1986). The bowdlerized version of C. S. Jerram (1879) with grammatical notes has been reprinted as *Luciani Vera Historia* (Wauconda: Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, 1990). Selections of some other dialogues by Lucian have been presented with extensive literary commentary by Neil Hopkins in the Cambridge Greek and Latin series (*Lucian: A Selection*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2008).

Select Bibliography

Branham, R. Bracht. *Unruly Eloquence: Lucian and the Comedy of Traditions*.

Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1989.

Fusillio, M. "The Mirror of the Moon: Lucian's *A True Story* - From Satire to

Utopia," in *Oxford Readings in the Greek Novel*, ed. Simon Swain (Oxford: OUP, 1999), 351-81.

Georgiadou, Aristoula and David H.J. Larmour. *Lucian's Science Fiction Novel, True Histories: Interpretation and Commentary*. Leiden: Brill, 1998.

Jones, C. P. *Culture and Society in Lucian*. Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1986.

Swain, Simon. *Hellenism and Empire*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1996.

Whitmarsh, Tim. *Greek Literature and the Roman Empire: the Politics of Imitation*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001.

How to use this book:

The presentation assumes the reader has a basic acquaintance with Greek grammar. Generally, particles have not been included in the page-by-page glossaries, along with other common nouns and adjectives. If necessary, all of these words can be found in the glossary at the end. Verbs, being a special problem in Greek, have been treated more fully. A simple and more generic dictionary entry is given in the glossary on each page, with a more specific meaning provided in the commentary below if necessary. We have also included a list of verbs with unusual forms and their principal parts as an appendix, which should be useful in identifying the dictionary form of verbs. Brief discussions of the morphology of some special cases (e.g., *-μι* verbs) are also interspersed throughout the text. A good strategy for attacking a text like this is to read a section of the Greek to get as much out of it as possible, then to look at the glossary below for unrecognized vocabulary items, and lastly to consult the commentary. The fuller glossary at the end of the book can be a last resort.

An Important Disclaimer:

This volume is a self-published "Print on Demand" (POD) book, and it has not been vetted or edited in the usual way by publishing professionals. There are sure to be some factual and typographical errors in the text, for which we apologize in advance. The volume is also available only through online distributors, since each book is printed only when ordered online. However, this publishing channel and format also account for the low price of the book; and it is a simple matter to make changes to the pdf file when they come to our attention. For this reason, any corrections or suggestions for improvement are welcome and will be addressed as quickly as possible in future versions of the text.

Evan Hayes
hayesee@miamioh.edu

Stephen Nimis
nimissa@miamioh.edu

Evan Hayes is a recent graduate in Classics and Philosophy at Miami University and the 2011 Joanna Jackson Goldman Scholar.

Stephen Nimis is a Professor of Classics at Miami University.

Abbreviations

abs.	absolute	nom.	nominative
acc.	accusative	obj.	object
act.	active	opt.	optative
adj.	adjective	part.	participle
adv.	adverb	pas.	passive
ao.	aorist	perf.	perfect
app.	appositive	pl.	plural
comp.	comparative	plupf.	pluperfect
dat.	dative	pred.	predicate
dep.	deponent	prep.	preposition
d.o.	direct object	pr.	present
f.	feminine	pron.	pronoun
fut.	future	reflex.	reflexive
gen.	genitive	rel.	relative
impf.	imperfect	seq.	sequence
imper.	imperative	sg.	singular
indic.	indicative	subj.	subject or
i.o.	indirect object		subjunctive
inf.	infinitive	superl.	superlative
m.	masculine	voc.	vocative
n.	neuter		

Λουκιανοῦ
Ἀληθῆ Διηγήματα:
βίβλος Α΄

Lucian's
A True Story:
Book 1

Ἀληθῆ Διηγήματα: Α΄

[1] Ὡσπερ τοῖς ἀθλητικοῖς καὶ περὶ τὴν τῶν σωμάτων ἐπιμέλειαν ἀσχολουμένοις οὐ τῆς εὐεξίας μόνον οὐδὲ τῶν γυμνασίων φροντίς ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς κατὰ καιρὸν γινομένης ἀνέσεως - μέρος γοῦν τῆς ἀσκήσεως τὸ μέγιστον αὐτὴν ὑπολαμβάνουσιν - οὕτω δὴ καὶ τοῖς περὶ τοὺς λόγους ἐσπουδακόσιν ἡγοῦμαι προσήκειν μετὰ τὴν πολλὴν τῶν σπουδαιοτέρων ἀνάγνωσιν ἀνιέναι τε τὴν διάνοιαν καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἔπειτα κάματον ἀκμαιοτέραν παρασκευάζειν. [2] γένοιτο δ' ἂν

ἀθλητικός, -ή, -όν: athletic	εὐεξία, ἡ: a good habit of body, good health
ἀκμαῖος, -α, -ον: vigorous	ἡγέομαι: to consider, lead the way
ἀνάγνωσις, -εως, ἡ: recognition, reading	καιρός, ὁ: due measure, proportion, fitness
ἀνεσις, -εως, ἡ: a loosening, relaxing	κάματος, ὁ: toil, labor
ἀνίημι: to let go, relax	λόγος, ὁ: a word, account
ἀσκησις, -εως, ἡ: exercise, practice, training	μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share
ἀσχολεῖν: to engage, occupy	παρασκευάζω: to prepare, make ready
γίνομαι: to become	προσῆκω: to be fitting
γοῦν: "as a matter of fact"	σπουδάζω: to make haste
γυμνάσιον, τό: bodily exercises	σπουδαῖος, -α, -ον: earnest, serious
διάνοια, ἡ: a thought	σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body
ἐπιμέλεια, ἡ: care, attention	ὑπολαμβάνω: to undertake, to understand
	φροντίς, -ιδος, ἡ: thought, care, attention

Just as athletes seek appropriate rest for the body, so too readers should profit from intermittent light reading, especially if it is clever as well as entertaining. Such is offered here, an amusing collection of fictions which, unlike such authors as Iambulus and Ktesias, makes no pretense to truth.

ὥσπερ...οὕτω δὴ καὶ: "just as...so also." Lucian begins with an elaborate comparison between athletes and scholars.

τοῖς ἀθλητικοῖς καὶ...ἀσχολουμένοις: "to athletes and to those engaged..."

οὐ μόνον φροντίς ἐστίν...ἀλλὰ καὶ: "not only is it a care...but also"

φροντίς ἐστίν: governs the genitives εὐεξίας, γυμνασίων, and ἀνέσεως

κατὰ καιρὸν γινομένης: "happening in season"

αὐτὴν ὑπολαμβάνουσιν: "this (i.e., ἀνέσις) they suppose to be..."

ἡγοῦμαι προσήκειν: "I think it fitting to..." the thought is completed by ἀνιέναι τε καὶ παρασκευάζειν

ἀνιέναι: pr. inf. of ἀνα-ἵημι "to relax," the same stem as ἀνέσις, "relaxation"

ἐσπουδακόσιν: perf. part. dat. pl. of σπουδάζω "to those who have labored"

πρὸς τὸν ἔπειτα κάματον: "for subsequent labor," the definite article makes the adverb ἔπειτα an attributive adjective

ἀκμαιοτέραν (sc. διάνοιαν): "an even greater thought"

γένοιτο δ' ἂν...εἰ ὁμιλοῖεν: future less vivid condition, "a rest would be...if they were to engage in it"

γένοιτο: ao. opt. of γίνομαι

ἐμμελὴς ἢ ἀνάπαυσις αὐτοῖς, εἰ τοῖς τοιούτοις τῶν ἀναγνωσμάτων ὁμιλοῖεν, ἃ μὴ μόνον ἐκ τοῦ ἀστείου τε καὶ χαρίεντος ψιλὴν παρέξει τὴν ψυχαγωγίαν, ἀλλὰ τινα καὶ θεωρίαν οὐκ ἄμουσον ἐπιδείξεται, οἷόν τι καὶ περὶ τῶνδε τῶν συγγραμμάτων αὐτοὺς φρονήσιν ὑπολαμβάνω· οὐ γὰρ μόνον τὸ ξένον τῆς ὑποθέσεως οὐδὲ τὸ χαρίεν τῆς προαιρέσεως ἐπαγωγὸν ἔσται αὐτοῖς οὐδ' ὅτι ψεύσματα ποικίλα πιθανῶς τε καὶ ἐναλήθως ἐξηγηνόχαμεν, ἀλλ' ὅτι καὶ τῶν ἱστορουμένων ἕκαστον οὐκ ἀκωμωδῆτως ἥνικται πρὸς τινὰς τῶν παλαιῶν ποιητῶν τε καὶ

αἰνίσσομαι: to intimate in riddles

ἀκωμώδητος, -α, -ον: unfunny

ἄμουσος, -α, -ον: without the Muses, inelegant

ἀνάγνωσμα, -ατος, τό: a passage read aloud

ἀνάπαυσις, -εως, ἡ: repose, rest

ἀστεῖος, -α, -ον: urbane

ἐκφέρω: to carry out

ἐμμελής, -ές: harmonious

ἐναλήθως: plausibly

ἐπαγωγός, -όν: attractive

ἐπιδείκνυμι: to exhibit

θεωρία, ἡ: a looking at, viewing

ἱστορέω: to inquire into

ξένος, -η, -ον: foreign, strange

ὁμιλέω: to engage in (+ dat.)

παλαιός, -ά, -όν: old in years

παρέχω: to provide

πιθανός, -ή, -όν: persuasive

ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet

ποικίλος, -η, -ον: many-colored, spotted

προαίρεσις, -εως, ἡ: a choosing, subject

σύγγραμμα, -ατος, τό: a writing

ὑπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ: subject matter, composition

ὑπολαμβάνω: to understand, think

φρονέω: to think, consider

χαρίεις, -εσσα, -εν: graceful, beautiful, lovely

ψεῦσμα, -ατος, τό: a lie

ψιλός, -ή, -όν: bare

ψυχαγωγία, ἡ: a winning of souls, persuasion

τοιούτοις... ἃ: correlatives, "if they were to engage in such things, the kind which ..."

παρέξει...ἐπιδείξεται: futures of παρέχω and ἐπιδείκνυμι, "not only will provide...but also will exhibit"

οὐκ ἄμουσον: "not without taste," note the frequent use of double negatives (litotes) in this passage.

οἷόν τι: "just such a thing..."

αὐτοὺς φρονήσιν: indirect statement after ὑπολαμβάνω, "I think that they will consider"

ἐπαγωγὸν ἔσται: "will be pleasing to" + dat.

οὐδ' ὅτι...ἀλλ' ὅτι: "not just because...but also because"

ἐξηγηνόχαμεν: perf. 1 pl. of ἐκφέρω, "we have expressed"

ἥνικται: perf. 3 s. of αἰνίσσομαι, "has made hinting reference to...." The subject is ἕκαστον "each one of the things narrated"

συγγραφέων καὶ φιλοσόφων πολλὰ τεράστια καὶ μυθώδη συγγεγραφότων, οὓς καὶ ὀνομαστί ἂν ἔγραφον, εἰ μὴ καὶ αὐτῶ σοι ἐκ τῆς ἀναγνώσεως φανεῖσθαι ἔμελλον. [3] [οἶον] Κτησίας ὁ Κτησιόχου ὁ Κνίδιος, ὃς συνέγραψεν περὶ τῆς Ἰνδῶν χώρας καὶ τῶν παρ' αὐτοῖς ἃ μὴτε αὐτὸς εἶδεν μὴτε ἄλλου ἀληθεύοντος ἤκουσεν. ἔγραψε δὲ καὶ Ἰαμβοῦλος περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ θαλάττῃ πολλὰ παράδοξα, γνῶριμον μὲν ἅπασιν τὸ ψεῦδος

ἀκούω: to hear

ἀληθεύω: to speak truth

ἀνάγνωσις, -εως, ἡ: recognition

ἅπας: all, the whole

γνῶριμος, -η, -ον: well-known, familiar

γράφω: to write

θάλασσα, ἡ: the sea

Ἰνδός, -ή, -όν: Indian, from India

Κνίδιος, -α, -ον: Cnidian, from Cnidos

μυθώδης, -ες: legendary, fabulous

ὀνομαστί: by name

παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical

συγγραφεύς, -έως, ὁ: an historian

συγγράφω: to write, note down

τεράστιος, -ον: monstrous

φαίνομαι: to appear

φιλόσοφος, ὁ: a lover of wisdom, philosopher

χώρα, ἡ: a space, land

ψεῦδος, -εος, τό: a falsehood, untruth, lie

συγγεγραφότων: perf. part. act. gen. pl. of **συγγράφω**, agreeing with **ποιητῶν**, **συγγραφέων**, and **φιλοσόφων**: “those who have written”

ἂν ἔγραφον, εἰ μὴ...ἔμελλον: impf. in present contrary to fact condition, “I would write their names were it not that they would be obvious”

αὐτῶ σοι: “to you (the reader) yourself.” **αὐτῶ** is here intensive, not reflexive.

φανεῖσθαι: fut. inf. of **φαίνομαι** after **ἔμελλον**

Κτησίας ὁ Κνίδιος: Ctesias of Cnidos, fifth century author of a lost *History of India*, which contained accounts of fantastic creatures. He reappears later in *A True Story* being punished in the hereafter.

ἄλλον ἀληθεύοντος: “another telling the truth,” gen. after **ἤκουσεν**

Ἰαμβοῦλος: Iambulus is the author of a lost narrative (written between 165 and 50 BCE) about a fabulous trip in the Indian Ocean, summarized by Diodorus Siculus.

Note the different meanings of the word **αὐτὸς**:

1. Without the definite article
 - a. The nominative forms of the word always are intensive (= Latin ipse): **αὐτὸς**: *he himself*, **αὐτοί**, *they themselves*; **ἃ μὴτε αὐτὸς εἶδεν**: *which he himself never saw*.
 - b. The other cases of the word are the unemphatic third person pronouns: him, them, etc. **παρ' αὐτοῖς**: *around them*.
2. With the definite article
 - a. In predicative position, it is also intensive (= Latin ipse): **τὸν ἄνδρα αὐτόν**: *the man himself*.
 - b. in attributive position or with no noun, it means “the same”: **τὸν αὐτόν ἄνδρα**: *the same man*; **πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι τὰ αὐτα**: “and many others do the same things.”

πλασάμενος, οὐκ ἀτερπῇ δὲ ὅμως συνθεὶς τὴν ὑπόθεσιν. πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι τὰ αὐτὰ τούτοις προελόμενοι συνέγραψαν ὡς δὴ τινὰς ἑαυτῶν πλάνας τε καὶ ἀποδημίας, θηρίων τε μεγέθη ἱστοροῦντες καὶ ἀνθρώπων ὠμότητας καὶ βίων καινότητας· ἀρχηγὸς δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλος τῆς τοιαύτης βωμολοχίας ὁ τοῦ Ὀμήρου Ὀδυσσεύς, τοῖς περὶ τὸν Ἀλκίνοον διηγούμενος ἀνέμων τε δουλείαν καὶ μονοφθάλμους καὶ ὠμοφάγους καὶ ἀγρίους τινὰς ἀνθρώπους, ἔτι δὲ πολυκέφαλα ζῶα καὶ τὰς ὑπὸ φαρμάκων τῶν ἐταίρων μεταβολάς, οἷα πολλὰ ἐκείνος πρὸς ιδιώτας ἀνθρώπους τοὺς Φαίιακας ἑτερατεύσατο. [4] τούτοις οὖν ἐντυχὼν ἅπασιν,

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: wild, savage
 ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
 ἄνθρωπος, ὁ: a man, person
 ἀποδημία, ἡ: a going abroad
 ἀρχηγός, ὁ: an originator, founder
 ἀτερπής, -ές: unpleasing, joyless, melancholy
 βίος, ὁ: a life, lifestyle
 βωμολοχία, ἡ: buffoonery, ribaldry
 διδάσκαλος, ὁ: a teacher, master
 διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full
 δουλεία, ἡ: servitude, slavery
 ἐντυχάνω: to fall in with, read (+ dat.)
 ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate
 ζῶον, τό: a living being, animal
 θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast
 ιδιώτης, -ου, ὁ: a individual, simpleton

ἱστορέω: to inquire into
 καινότης, -ητος, ἡ: newness, strangeness
 μεταβολή, ἡ: a change
 μονόφθαλμος, -ον: one-eyed
 Ὀδυσσεύς, -έως, ὁ: Odysseus
 Ὀμηρος, -ου, ὁ: Homer
 πλάνη, ἡ: a wandering, roaming
 πλάσσω: to form, create
 πολυκέφαλος, -ον: many-headed
 προαιρέω: to bring forth, choose
 συγγράφω: to write, note down
 συντίθημι: to put together
 τερατεύομαι: to talk marvels
 ὑπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ: composition
 Φαίιαξ, -ακος, ὁ: a Phaeacian
 φάρμακον, τό: a drug, medicine
 ὠμότης, -ητος, ἡ: rawness
 ὠμοφάγος, -ον: eating raw flesh

πλασάμενος: ao. part. of πλάσσω, “having fabricated”
 συνθεὶς: aor. act. part. nom. s. of συντίθημι, “having composed”
 προελόμενοι aor. mid. part. of προ-αίρέω, “having proposed (to do) the same”
 ὡς δὴ: “as though”
 τοῖς περὶ τὸν Ἀλκίνοον: “those with King Alkinous,” the Phaeacians, who were the audience of Odysseus in Odyssey books 9-12.
 μονοφθάλμους καὶ ὠμοφάγους: one-eyed flesh-eaters, the Cyclopes of Odyssey 9.
 πολυκέφαλα ζῶα: “many-headed beasts,” like Scylla in Odyssey 12
 ὑπὸ φαρμάκων...μεταβολάς: “transformations by drugs,” such as Circe in Odyssey 10.
 οἷα πολλὰ: acc. of respect, “many such things as”
 ἐντυχὼν: ao. part. of ἐντυχάνω, “having read”

A True Story

τοῦ ψεύσασθαι μὲν οὐ σφόδρα τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐμεμψάμην, ὁρῶν ἤδη σύνηθες ὃν τοῦτο καὶ τοῖς φιλοσοφεῖν ὑπισχνουμένοις· ἐκείνο δὲ αὐτῶν ἐθαύμασα, εἰ ἐνόμιζον λήσειν οὐκ ἀληθῆ συγγράφοντες. διόπερ καὶ αὐτὸς ὑπὸ κενοδοξίας ἀπολιπεῖν τι σπουδάσας τοῖς μεθ' ἡμᾶς, ἵνα μὴ μόνος ἄμοιρος ᾖ τῆς ἐν τῷ μυθολογεῖν ἐλευθερίας, ἐπεὶ μηδὲν ἀληθὲς ἱστορεῖν εἶχον - οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐπεπόνθειν ἀξιόλογον - ἐπὶ τὸ ψεῦδος ἐτραπόμην πολὺν

ἀληθής, -ές: true	νομίζω: to think, believe
ἄμοιρος, -ον: without share in	πάσχω: to suffer, to have happen to
ἀξιόλογος, -ον: noteworthy	σπουδάω: to be eager to (+ inf.)
ἀπολείπω: to leave behind	συγγράφω: to write, note down
ἐλευθερία, ἡ: freedom, liberty	σφόδρα: very, much
θαυμάζω: to wonder at, marvel	τρέπω: to turn
ἱστορέω: to inquire into, record	ὑπισχνέομαι: to profess, engage in (+ inf.)
κενοδοξία, ἡ: vanity	φιλοσοφέω: to philosophize
λανθάνω: to escape notice (+ part.)	ψεῦδος, -εος, τό: a falsehood
μέμφομαι: to blame, find fault	ψεύδω: to cheat by lies, beguile
μυθολογέω: to tell mythic tales or legends	

τοῦ ψεύσασθαι: articular infinitive in gen. after ἐμεμψάμην, “for lying”

ἐμεμψάμην: ao. 1 s. middle of μέμφομαι, “I didn’t fault...”

σύνηθες ὃν τοῦτο: ind. st. after ὁρῶν, “seeing that this was (ὃν) customary”

καὶ τοῖς φιλοσοφεῖν ὑπισχνουμένοις: “even to those professing to philosophize”

This is the meaning of ὑπισχνέομαι with a present infinitive.

εἰ ἐνόμιζον: impf. in indirect question, “whether they thought”

λήσειν: fut. inf. of λανθάνω in indirect statement after ἐνόμιζον, “that they would get away” + part.

τοῖς μεθ' ἡμᾶς: “those in our time”

ἵνα μὴ μόνος ἄμοιρος ᾖ: pr. subj. of εἶμι in negative purpose clause, “lest I alone be portionless”

ἐν τῷ μυθολογεῖν: articular inf. “in mythmaking”

εἶχον: impf. of ἔχω, “I was able” + inf.

ἐπεπόνθειν: 1 s. plupf. of πάσχω, “I had experienced.” Note that Lucian often uses pluperfects in subordinate clauses where classical authors would typically use the aorist.

ἐτραπόμην: ao. mid. of τρέπω, “I turned myself”

Note the difference between the future less vivid and future more vivid conditions:

The future less vivid indicates a future action as merely a possibility; the future more vivid indicates a future action as a probability.

less vivid: εἰ plus optative in the protasis, ἄν plus the optative in the apodosis: translate “if he were to..., then he would...”

more vivid: ἐάν (Attic contraction = ἥν) plus subjunctive in the protasis, future indicative in the apodosis: translate “if he does..., then he will...”

τῶν ἄλλων εὐγνωμονέστερον· κἂν ἔν γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο ἀληθεύσω λέγων ὅτι ψεύδομαι. οὕτω δ' ἂν μοι δοκῶ καὶ τὴν παρὰ τῶν ἄλλων κατηγορίαν ἐκφυγεῖν αὐτὸς ὁμολογῶν μηδὲν ἀληθὲς λέγειν. γράφω τοῖνυν περὶ ὧν μήτε εἶδον μήτε ἔπαθον μήτε παρ' ἄλλων ἐπυθόμην, ἔτι δὲ μήτε ὅλως ὄντων μήτε τὴν ἀρχὴν γενέσθαι δυναμένων. διὸ δεῖ τοὺς ἐντυγχάνοντας μηδαμῶς πιστεῦειν αὐτοῖς.

ἀληθεύω: to speak truth

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning

δύναμαι: to be able, capable

ἐκφεύγω: to flee, escape

ἐντυγχάνω: to meet with, read

εὐγνώμων, -ον: kindhearted, considerate

κατηγορία, ἡ: an accusation, charge

ὅλως: entirely

ὁμολογέω: to agree

πάσχω: to experience, to suffer

πιστεῦω: to trust, believe in (+ dat.)

πυνθάνομαι: to learn

τοῖνυν: therefore, accordingly

ψεύδω: to lie

κἂν (=καὶ ἔάν): more vivid condition with the verb of the protasis suppressed, "if I tell the truth, I will tell this one truth by saying..."

ἂν...ἐκφυγεῖν: the potential optative becomes an infinitive after δοκῶ, "I think that I might escape..."

αὐτὸς ὁμολογῶν: pr. part., instrumental, "by myself admitting that..."

ἔπαθον: ao. of πάσχω, "I experienced"

ἐπυθόμην: ao. of πυνθάνομαι, "I learned"

μήτε ὅλως ὄντων: pr. part. agreeing with ὧν, "neither (things which) actually exist"

τὴν ἀρχὴν: acc. of respect, "in the first place"

γενέσθαι δυναμένων: pr. part., also agreeing with ὧν, "nor are able to exist"

Unreal conditions:

Compare the future less vivid with the present and past contrafactual conditions:

future less vivid:

εἰ plus optative in the protasis, ἂν plus the optative in the apodosis: translate "If he were to..., then he would..." (but not likely).

present contrafactual:

εἰ plus imperfect indicative in the protasis, ἂν plus the imperfect indicative in the apodosis: translate "if he were (now) doing..., then he would be..." (but he isn't).

past contrafactual:

εἰ plus aorist indicative in the protasis, ἂν plus the aorist indicative in the apodosis: translate "if he had done..., then he would have..." (but he didn't).

[5] Ὀρμηθεὶς γάρ ποτε ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείων στηλῶν καὶ ἀφείς
εἰς τὸν ἑσπέριον ὠκεανὸν οὐρίῳ ἀνέμῳ τὸν πλοῦν ἐποιούμεην.
αἰτία δέ μοι τῆς ἀποδημίας καὶ ὑπόθεσις ἡ τῆς διανοίας περιεργία
καὶ πραγμάτων καινῶν ἐπιθυμία καὶ τὸ βούλεσθαι μαθεῖν τί τὸ
τέλος ἐστὶν τοῦ ὠκεανοῦ καὶ τίνες οἱ πέραν κατοικοῦντες
ἄνθρωποι. τούτου γέ τοι ἔνεκα πάμπολλα μὲν σιτία ἐνεβαλόμεν,
ικανὸν δὲ καὶ ὕδωρ ἐνεθέμην, πεντήκοντα δὲ τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν
προσεποιησάμην τὴν αὐτὴν ἐμοὶ γνώμην ἔχοντας, ἔτι δὲ καὶ
ὄπλων πολὺ τι πλῆθος παρεσκευασάμην καὶ κυβερνήτην τὸν

αἰτία, ἡ: a cause, purpose
ἀποδημία, ἡ: a being from home, a going
abroad
ἀφίημι: to make for (+ εἰς + acc.)
γνώμη, ἡ: a mind, intention
διάνοια, ἡ: a thought, intention
ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, put in
ἔνεκα: on account of + gen.
ἐντίθημι: to put in or into
ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: a desire, yearning, longing
ἑσπέριος, -α, -ον: western
ἡλικιώτης, -ου, ὁ: fellow, comrade
Ἡράκλειος, -α, -ον: of Hercules
ικανός, -ή, -όν: sufficient
καινός, -ή, -όν: new, fresh
κατοικέω: to dwell in
κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὁ: a helmsman, pilot

μανθάνω: to learn
ὄπλον, τό: a tool, weapon
ὀρμάω: to set out
οὐριος, -α, -ον: from behind
πεντήκοντα: fifty
πέραν: on the other side, across
περιεργία, ἡ: curiosity
πλῆθος, -εος, τό: a great number
πρᾶγμα, -ατος, τό: a deed, act
προσποιέω: to procure, (mid.) to attach to
oneself
σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions
στήλη, ἡ: a block of stone, pillar
τέλος, -εος, τό: an end
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
ὑπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ: a supposition, purpose
ὠκεανός, -οῦ, ὁ: the ocean

The narrator recounts his intention to sail out beyond the Pillars of Heracles because of a thirst for knowledge. A storm carries him and his crew away for 80 days before they make landfall.

ὀρμηθεὶς: ao. pas. part. nom. s., “having set out from”

ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείων στηλῶν: “from the pillars of Heracles,” bestriding the straits of Gibraltar, the western boundary of the Mediterranean Sea.

ἀφείς: ao. part. nom. s. of ἀφ-ίημι, “having made for the western ocean”

οὐρίῳ ἀνέμῳ: dat., “with a tailwind”

τὸ βούλεσθαι: art. inf. “the desire”

τί τὸ τέλος ἐστὶν... τίνες ἄνθρωποι: indirect questions, “to learn what the end of the Ocean was and who were the men...”

ἐνεβαλόμεν: ao. of ἐμβάλλω, “I put onboard”

ἐνεθέμην: ao. of ἐντίθημι, “I put onboard”

τὴν αὐτὴν ἐμοὶ γνώμην: “the same mind as I”

ἄριστον μισθῷ μεγάλῳ πείσας παρέλαβον καὶ τὴν ναῦν - ἄκατος δὲ ἦν - ὥς πρὸς μέγαν καὶ βίαιον πλοῦν ἐκρατυνάμην. [6] ἡμέραν οὖν καὶ νύκτα οὐρίῳ πλέοντες ἔτι τῆς γῆς ὑποφαινομένης οὐ σφόδρα βιαίως ἀνηγόμεθα, τῆς ἐπιούσης δὲ ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνίσχοντι ὃ τε ἄνεμος ἐπεδίδου καὶ τὸ κύμα ἠϋξάνετο καὶ ζόφος ἐπεγίνετο καὶ οὐκέτ' οὐδὲ στείλαι τὴν ὀθόνην δυνατὸν ἦν. ἐπιτρέψαντες οὖν τῷ πνέοντι καὶ παραδόντες ἑαυτοὺς ἐχειμαζόμεθα ἡμέρας ἑννέα καὶ ἑβδομήκοντα, τῇ ὀγδοηκοστῇ δὲ ἄφνω ἐκλάμψαντος ἡλίου καθορῶμεν οὐ πόρρω νῆσον ὑψηλὴν καὶ δασεῖαν, οὐ τραχεῖ περιηχουμένην τῷ κύματι· καὶ γὰρ ἤδη τὸ πολὺ τῆς ζάλης κατεπαύετο.

ἄκατος, ὁ: a light vessel

ἅμα: at the same time as (+ dat.)

ἀνάγω: to lead up, (mid./pas.) to put to sea

ἄριστος: best

αὐξάνω: to increase, augment

δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick with hair, shaggy

δυνατός, -ή, -όν: able, possible (+ inf.)

ἑβδομήκοντα: seventy

ἐκλάμπω: to shine

ἑννέα: nine

ἐπιγίνομαι: to come into being

ἐπιδίδωμι: to increase

ἐπιτρέπω: to turn towards

ζάλη, ἡ: a surging

ζόφος, ὁ: the darkness

καταπαύω: to stop, put an end to

κρατύνω: to strengthen

κύμα, -ατος, τό: a wave

μισθός, ὁ: wages, pay, hire

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship

ὀγδοηκοστός, -ή, -όν: eightieth

ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth

οὐριος, -α, -ον: from behind

παραδίδωμι: to give or hand over to

παραλαμβάνω: to secure

πείθω: persuade

περιηχέω: to echo all around

πνέω: to blow

πόρρω: far off

στέλλω: to equip, make ready

σφόδρα: very, much

τραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: rugged, rough

ὑποφαίνω: to appear slight, just be visible

ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty

χειμάζομαι: to be drive by a storm

πείσας: ao. part. nom. s. of πείθω, "having persuaded"

οὐρίῳ (sc. ἀνέμῳ): "with a tailwind," as above

ἔτι τῆς γῆς ὑποφαινομένης: gen. abs., "the land still being visible"

τῆς ἐπιούσης (sc. ἡμέρας): gen. of time within which, "in the course of the next day"

ἡλίῳ ἀνίσχοντι: dat. with ἅμα, "at sunrise"

ἐπεδίδου: 3. s. impf. of ἐπιδίδωμι, "the wind began increasing"

ἐπεγίνετο: impf. of ἐπι-γίνομαι, "darkness came on"

παραδόντες: ao. part. of παραδίδωμι, "having given ourselves over to..."

ἡμέρας ἑννέα καὶ ἑβδομήκοντα: acc. of duration of time, "for 79 days"

ἐκλάμψαντος ἡλίου: gen. abs., "the sun having shown forth"

περιηχουμένην: perf. part. of περιηχέω, "echoing all around," modifying νῆσον

Προσσχόντες οὖν καὶ ἀποβάντες ὥς ἂν ἐκ μακρᾶς
ταλαιπωρίας πολὺν μὲν χρόνον ἐπὶ γῆς ἐκείμεθα, διαναστάντες δὲ
ὁμῶς ἀπεκρίναμεν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν τριάκοντα μὲν φύλακας τῆς νεῶς
παραμένειν, εἴκοσι δὲ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἀνελθεῖν ἐπὶ κατασκοπῇ τῶν ἐν τῇ
νήσῳ. [7] προελθόντες δὲ ὅσον σταδίους τρεῖς ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης
δι' ὕλης ὀρώμεν τινα στήλην χαλκοῦ πεποιημένην, Ἑλληνικοῖς
γράμμασιν καταγεγραμμένην, ἀμυδροῖς δὲ καὶ ἐκτετριμμένοις,
λέγουσαν «Ἄχρι τούτων Ἡρακλῆς καὶ Διόνυσος ἀφίκοντο». ἦν δὲ
καὶ ἵχνη δύο πλησίον ἐπὶ πέτρας, τὸ μὲν πλεθριαῖον, τὸ δὲ
ἔλαττον - ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, τὸ μὲν τοῦ Διονύσου, τὸ μικρότερον,

ἀμυδρός, -ά, -όν: indistinct, dim, obscure
ἀνέρχομαι: to go up
ἀποκρίνω: to separate, set apart
ἄχρι: up to
γράμμα, -ατος, τό: a letter
διανίσταμαι: to depart from
Διόνυσος, -ου, ό: Dionysus
ἐκτρίβω: to rub out
ἐλάττων, -ον: smaller, less
Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Hellenic, Greek
Ἡρακλῆς, -έους, ό: Heracles
ἵχνος, -εος, τό: a track, footstep
καταγράφω: to inscribe

κατασκοπή, ἡ: a viewing closely, spying
μικρός, -ά, -όν: small
ναῦς, νεῶς, ἡ: a ship
παραμένω: to stay near, stand by
πέτρη, ἡ: a rock
πλεθριαῖος, -α, -ον: broad, long
προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance
προσέχω: to put in, anchor
στήλη, ἡ: a block of stone, marker
ταλαιπωρία, ἡ: hardship, suffering
τριάκοντα: thirty
φύλαξ, -ακος, ό: a watcher, guard
χάλκεος, -έα, -εον: of bronze, brazen

Their first stop turns out to be an island with rivers of wine, wine-fish, and vine maidens.

προσσχόντες: ao. part. of προσ-έχω, “having put in”

ἀποβάντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-βαίνω, “having gone ashore”

ὥς ἂν: with an implied potential optative, “as you might expect from our suffering”

διαναστάντες: ao. part. from δια-ανα-ίστημι, “having gotten up and gone”

ἀπεκρίναμεν: ao. 1 pl., “we divided off 30 of ourselves”

παραμένειν...ἀνελθεῖν: inf. in implied indirect commands with ἀπεκρίναμεν, “some to remain, some to go”

πεποιημένην: perf. part. acc. s. of ποιέω, “having been made”

καταγεγραμμένην: perf. part. acc. s., “having been inscribed”

ἐκτετριμμένοις: perf. part. dat. pl., “having been worn out”

Ἡρακλῆς καὶ Διόνυσος: Heracles and Dionysus were both legendary travelers, who traversed the limits of the known world.

ἀφίκοντο: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, “they arrived”

ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν: parenthetical, “so it seemed to me”

Verbs of coming and going:

There is a lot of coming and going in *A True Story*. Here are some of the common words for various kinds of movement and arrival:

ὀρμάω, “to set out”: **ὀρμηθεῖς**: ao. part. pass.

ὀρμίζω, “to anchor”: **ὀρμισάμενοι** ao. part. mid.

πλέω, “to sail”: **πλέοντες** pr. part.; **πλεύσαντες**: ao. part.

δι-επλεύσαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of **δια-πλέω**, “sail through”

προσ-πλέοντας: pr. part. of **προσ-πλέω**, “sail towards”

παρα-πλέοντες: pr. part. of **παρα-πλέω**, “sail by”

ἐπ-έπλεεν: impf. of **ἐπι-πλέω**, “to sail against”

βαίνω, “to step” and hence “to step up, away upon,” etc.

ἀποβαίνω “to step off”: **ἀποβάντες**, **ἀπέβημεν**

ἐμβαίνω, “to step on or in” **ἐμβάντες**: “boarding (a ship)” or “stepping on land”

ἀφικνέομαι, “to arrive”: aorist: **ἀφίκοντο**, “they arrived,”

ἀφικόμενος “having arrived”

Forms of **εἶμι** (“I will go”) are used for some present and imperfect forms of **ἔρχομαι**:

προ-ῆμεν: “we went forward

παρ-ῆμεν; **παρ-ῆειμεν**: “we went by”

ἐπ-ῆει: “he attacked”

ἐπ-ῆσαν: “they attacked”

ἀν-ῆειν: “I went up”

διεξ-ῆει: “he went through, he narrated”

προσ-ιόντες: “going forward”

Forms derived from **ἦλθον** are used for the aorist and perfect of **ἔρχομαι**:

ao.: **προ-ελθόντες**, **ἀν-ελθεῖν**, **δι-ελθῶν**, **ἀπ-ελθόντες**, **ἐπ-ελθόντες**,
ἐπ-εξ-ῆλθον

perf.: **ἀπ-εληλύθεσαν**, **παρ-εληλυθότας**

ἀνάγω, “to lead up,” often, esp. in middle and passive “to put to sea”

impf: **ἀνηγόμεθα**, ao. pas: **ἀνήχθημεν**, “we put to sea”

προσ-έχω, “to hold to” and hence “to bring a ship to shore, to land”

προσσχόντες ao. part.; **προσέσχομεν** ao. ind.

The aorist passive of **ἡνεγχον (φέρω)** occurs in special combinations:

προσ-ενεχθέντες: “having been borne toward,” hence “having put into” (a harbor)

ἀπ-ηνέχθημεν: “we were carried away”

θάτερον δὲ Ἡρακλέους. προσκυνήσαντες δ' οὖν προῆμεν· οὐπω δὲ πολὺ παρήμεν καὶ ἐφιστάμεθα ποταμῷ οἶνον ῥέοντι ὁμοιότατον μάλιστα οἶοσπερ ὁ Χιὸς ἐστίν. ἄφθονον δὲ ἦν τὸ ῥεῦμα καὶ πολὺ, ὥστε ἐνιαχοῦ καὶ ναυσίπορον εἶναι δύνασθαι. ἐπήει οὖν ἡμῖν πολὺ μᾶλλον πιστεύειν τῷ ἐπὶ τῆς στήλης ἐπιγράμματι, ὁρῶσι τὰ σημεῖα τῆς Διονύσου ἐπιδημίας. δόξαν δέ μοι καὶ ὅθεν ἄρχεται ὁ ποταμὸς καταμαθεῖν, ἀνῆειν παρὰ τὸ ῥεῦμα, καὶ πηγὴν μὲν οὐδεμίαν εὗρον αὐτοῦ, πολλὰς δὲ καὶ μεγάλας ἀμπέλους, πλήρεις βοτρύων, παρὰ δὲ τὴν ρίζαν ἐκάστην ἀπέρρει σταγῶν οἶνου διαυγοῦς, ἀφ' ὧν ἐγένετο ὁ ποταμός. ἦν δὲ καὶ ἰχθὺς ἐν αὐτῷ

ἄμπελος, ἡ: a vine, tendril
ἀνέρχομαι: to go up
ἀπορρέω: to flow away, stream forth
ἄφθονος, -ον: unstinting
βότρυον, τό: a cluster or bunch of grapes
διαυγής, -ές: transparent, clear
Διόνυσος, -ον, ὁ: Dionysus
δοκέω: to seem
δύναμαι: to be able (+ inf.)
ἐνιαχοῦ: in some places, here and there
ἐπίγραμμα, -ατος, τό: an inscription
ἐπιδημία, ἡ: a visit, arrival
Ἡρακλῆς, -έους, ὁ: Heracles
ἰχθὺς, -ύος, ὁ: a fish
καταμανθάνω: to observe well, learn
μᾶλλον: more

ναυσίπορος, -ον: navigable
ὅθεν: whence
οἶνος, ὁ: wine
οὐπω: not yet
πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams
πιστεύω: to trust, believe in (+ dat.)
πλήρης, -ες: full, filled with (+ gen.)
ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream
προσκυνέω: to make obeisance, worship
ῥεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a flow, stream, current
ρίζα, -ης, ἡ: a root
σημεῖον, τό: a sign, a mark
σταγῶν, -όνος, ἡ: a drop
στήλη, ἡ: a block of stone
Χιός, -α, -ον: Chian, of or from Chios

προσκυνήσαντες: ao. part., “having made obeisance”

προῆμεν: impf. of προ-έρχομαι, “we advanced”

οὐπω παρήμεν: impf. of παρα-έρχομαι, “did not go far”

οἶοσπερ ὁ Χιός: “just like Chian” (wine), a famous vintage

ὥστε...δύνασθαι: pr. inf. in result clause, “so that it was possible”

ἐπήει: impf. of ἐπι-έρχομαι, “it occurred to us”

ὁρῶσι: pr. part. dat. pl., “to us seeing”

δόξαν: ao. part. acc. s. neut. of δοκέω, used absolutely and impersonally, “since it seemed a good idea”

ἀνῆειν: impf. 1 s. of ἀνα-έρχομαι, “I went up”

εὗρον: ao. 1 s. of εὕρισκω, “I found”

πλήρεις: acc. pl. modifying ἀμπέλους, “vines full of” + gen.

ἀπέρρει: impf. of ἀπορρέω, “was flowing”

οἶνου διαυγοῦς: gen. of description, “of clear wine”

πολλοὺς ἰδεῖν, οἶνω μάλιστα καὶ τὴν χροάν καὶ τὴν γεῦσιν
προσεοικότας· ἡμεῖς γοῦν ἀγρεύσαντες αὐτῶν τινὰς καὶ
ἐμφαγόντες ἐμεθύσθημεν· ἀμέλει καὶ ἀνατεμόντες αὐτοὺς
εὐρίσκομεν τρυγὸς μεστούς. ὕστερον μέντοι ἐπινοήσαντες τοὺς
ἄλλους ἰχθῦς, τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος παραμιγνύντες ἐκεράννυμεν
τὸ σφοδρὸν τῆς οἰνοφαγίας.

ἀγρεύω: to catch

ἀμέλει: nevermind, of course

ἀνατέμνω: to cut open

ἐνεσθίω: to eat one's fill

ἐπινοέω: to think on, contrive

εὐρίσκω: to find

κεράννυμι: to mix, dilute

μεθύσκω: to make drunk, intoxicate

μεστός, -ή, -όν: full of (+ gen.)

οἶνος, ὄ: wine

οἰνοφαγία, ἡ: wine-feast

παραμίγνυμι: to intermix with

προσέοικα: to resemble

σφοδρός, τό: excessiveness

τρύξ, τρυγός, ἡ: lees, dregs

χρoιά, ἡ: color

ἰδεῖν: inf. after ἦν, "it was possible to see"

τὴν χροάν καὶ τὴν γεῦσιν: acc. of respect, "in color and taste"

ἐμφαγόντες: ao. part. of ἐν-εσθίω, "eat one's fill," coined on the analogy of
ἐμπίνω, "drink one's fill"

ἐμεθύσθημεν: ao. pas., "we were made drunk"

ἀμέλει: adverbial, "of course," properly the imperative of ἀμελέω, "don't worry"

τρυγὸς μεστούς: the "lees" of the wine

ἐπινοήσαντες: ao. part. of ἐπι-νοέω, "having contrived"

παραμιγνύντες: pres. part. "by mingling...we tempered"

Expressions of time and space:

Any span of time or space can be thought of in three ways:

1. as a **point** in time or space: at noon, today, in 1975, in Athens
2. as an **extent**: for an hour, for a day, for a year, from Athens to Sparta.
3. as a **span within which** something happens: in the course of the first hour, during the fifth day, in the course of the twentieth century (somewhere) between Athens and Sparta.

1. Greek uses the **dative** case to express time when: ἡλῖω ἀνίσχοντι: "at sunrise." the preposition ἐν is often added when there is no adjective: ἐν τῷ χειμῶνι: "in winter."
2. Greek uses the **accusative** case to indicate duration or extent of time: ἡμέρας ἐννέα καὶ ἑβδομήκοντα: "for 79 days."
3. Greek uses the **genitive** case to indicate the time within which an action takes place: τῆς ἐπιούσης ἡμέρας: "in the course of the next day," with the idea that an action happens for **part of the day**.

The accusative is also used for an extent of space, and the genitive for the place within which an action happens. For a point in space, the dative case is also used, but more often this is expressed with the dative after a preposition like ἐν, παρά, ἐπί, etc.

[8] Τότε δὲ τὸν ποταμὸν διαπεράσαντες ἢ διαβατὸς ἦν, εὖρομεν ἀμπέλων χρήμα τεράστιον· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς, ὁ στέλεχος αὐτὸς εὐερνῆς καὶ παχύς, τὸ δὲ ἄνω γυναικες ἦσαν, ὅσον ἐκ τῶν λαγόνων ἅπαντα ἔχουσai τέλεια - τοιαύτην παρ' ἡμῖν τὴν Δάφνην γράφουσιν ἄρτι τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος καταλαμβάνοντος ἀποδενδρουμένην. ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν δακτύλων ἄκρων ἐξεφύοντο αὐταῖς οἱ κλάδοι καὶ μεστοὶ ἦσαν βοτρυῶν. καὶ μὴν καὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς ἐκόμων ἔλιξί τε καὶ φύλλοις καὶ βότρυσι. προσελθόντας δὲ ἡμᾶς ἡσπάζοντο καὶ ἐδεξιοῦντο, αἱ μὲν Λύδιον, αἱ δ' Ἰνδικήν, αἱ πλείσται δὲ τὴν Ἑλλάδα φωνήν

ἄκρον, -ον, τό: the tip
 ἄμπελος, ἡ: a vine, tendril
 ἀποδενδρόομαι: to be turned into a tree
 Ἀπόλλων, -ωνος, ὁ: Apollo
 ἄρτι: still
 ἀσπάζομαι: to greet, bid farewell
 βότρυσ, -υος: a cluster or bunch of grapes
 γράφω: to write, draw
 γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman
 δάκτυλος, ὁ: a finger
 Δάφνη, ἡ: Daphne
 διαβατός, -ή, -όν: fordable
 ἐκφύω: to grow out
 ἔλιξ, -ικος, ἡ: a spiral, twisting tendril
 Ἑλλάς, ἄδος: Greek
 εὐερνής, -ές: flourishing
 Ἰνδικός, -ή, -όν: Indian

καταλαμβάνω: to seize, lay hold of
 κεφαλή, ἡ: a head
 κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a shoot
 κομάω: to let the hair grow long
 λαγών, -όνος, ἡ: a flank
 Λύδιος, -α, -ον: Lydian
 μεστός, -ή, -όν: full of (+ gen.)
 παχύς, -εία, -ύ: thick, stout
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
 ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream
 προσέρχομαι: to approach
 στέλεχος, ὁ: a stump
 τέλειος, -α, -ον: complete
 τεράστιος, -ον: monstrous
 φωνή, ἡ: a language, tongue
 φύλλον, τό: a leaf
 χρήμα, -ατος, τό: a thing

ἢ: dat. s. f. of relative pronoun, "in which place, where"

τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς: "the part above the ground"

τὸ δὲ ἄνω: "the upper part"

ἔχουσai τέλεια: "being perfect"

Δάφνην: Pursued by Apollo, the nymph Daphne was changed into a laurel tree to escape him.

ἄρτι τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος καταλαμβάνοντος: gen. abs., "Apollo still trying to seize her"

ἀποδενδρουμένην: pr. part. acc., "her turning into a tree"

ἐξεφύοντο: impf. of ἐκφύω, "branches were growing out of"

καὶ μὴν καὶ: "and indeed even..."

ἐκόμων: impf. 3 pl. of κομάω, "their hair was growing long..."

ἔλιξί: dat. pl. of ἔλιξ "tendrils"

ἐδεξιοῦντο: impf. of δεξιόομαι, "they greeted us," from δεχία, "right hand"

προϊέμεναι. καὶ ἐφίλουν δὲ ἡμᾶς τοῖς στόμασιν· ὁ δὲ φιληθεὶς αὐτίκα ἐμέθυσεν καὶ παράφορος ἦν. δρέπεσθαι μέντοι οὐ παρείχον τοῦ καρποῦ, ἀλλ' ἤλγουν καὶ ἐβόων ἀποσπασμένον. αἱ δὲ καὶ μίγνυσθαι ἡμῖν ἐπεθύμουν· καὶ δύο τινὲς τῶν ἐταίρων πλησιάσαντες αὐταῖς οὐκέτι ἀπελύνοντο, ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων ἐδέδεντο· συνεφύοντο γὰρ καὶ συνερριζοῦντο. καὶ ἤδη αὐτοῖς κλάδοι ἐπεφύκεσαν οἱ δάκτυλοι, καὶ ταῖς ἑλιξι περιπλεκόμενοι ὅσον οὐδέπω καὶ αὐτοὶ

αἰδοῖον, τό: genitals	οὐδέπω: not as yet
ἀλγέω: to feel pain, suffer	παράφορος, -ον: carried away
ἀπολύω: to loose, set free	παρέχω: to provide, allow (+ inf.)
ἀποσπάω: to tear away	περιπλέκω: to entwine, embrace
δάκτυλος, ὁ: a finger	πλησιάζω: to approach, have sex with (+ dat.)
δρέπω: to pluck, cull (+ gen.)	προίημι: to send forward
ἑλιξ, -ικος, ἡ: a spiral, twisting tendril	στόμα, στόματος, τό: a mouth
ἐπιθυμέω: to desire	συμφύω: to grow together
καρπός, ὁ: fruit	συρριζόμαι: to take root together
κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a young shoot	φιλέω: to love, kiss
μεθύω: to get drunk	φύω: to put forth, sprout
μίγνυμι: to mix, have intercourse with	

προϊέμεναι: pr. part. nom. pl. f. of *προ-ἵημι*, “sending forth a voice,” i.e., speaking Greek

φιληθεῖς: ao. pas. part., “having been kissed”

οὐ παρείχον: impf. of *παρα-έχω*, “they would not allow”

ἤλγουν καὶ ἐβόων: impf., “they began suffering and crying out”

αἱ δὲ: “some (of the women)”

ἐπεθύμουν: impf. 3 pl. of *ἐπιθυμέω*, “they desired” + inf.

οὐκέτι ἀπελύνοντο: impf. mid. of *ἀπολύομαι*, “no longer were freeing themselves”

ἐδέδεντο: plupf. of *δέω*, “they had been bound”

συνεφύοντο: impf. of *συμφύομαι*, “they were growing together.”

συνερριζοῦντο: impf. of *συν-ριζόομαι*, “they were taking root together”

ἐπεφύκεσαν: plupf. of *φύω*, “their fingers had already sprouted branches”

καὶ αὐτοὶ: “the men themselves also”

The imperfect tense of *ἔρχομαι* (*ἦα*), along with other forms of the present system, is based on the same stem as the future (*εἰμι*). Here is the declension of the imperfect:

ἦα, ἦ εἰν (I went, etc.)	ἦμεν
ἦισθα	ἦτε
ἦει	ἦσαν

Contrast with the imperfect of *εἰμι*:

ἦ(ν) (I was, etc.)	ἦμεν
ἦσθα	ἦτε
ἦν	ἦσαν

A True Story

Defective verbs

The principal parts of some verbs come from completely different words. Sometimes there are more than one form for a specific tense, in which case one will usually be preferred. Here are some important examples:

Present	Future	Aorist	Perfect	Aorist passive	Translation
ἔρχομαι	εἶμι ἐλεύσομαι	ἦλθον	ἐλήλουθα		go
λέγω	έρέω λέξω	εἶπον ἔλεξα	εἶρηκα λέλεγμαι	ἐρρήθην ἐλέχθην	speak
φέρω	οἶσω	1st ao. ἤνεγκα 2nd ao. ἤνεγκον	ἐνήνοχα	ἠνέχθην	carry
αἰρέω	αἰρήσω	εἶλον	ἤρηκα	ἠρέθην	take
ὁράω impf. ἑώρων	ὄψομαι	εἶδον	οἶδα fut. εἴσομαι	plupf. ᾔδη perf: know	see
τρέχω	δραμοῦμαι	ἔδραμον	δεδράμικα		run
ἐσθίω	ἔδομαι	ἔφαγον	ἐδήδοκα	ἠδέσθην	eat

καρποφορήσειν ἔμελλον. [9] καταλιπόντες δὲ αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ ναῦν ἐφεύγομεν καὶ τοῖς ἀπολειφθεῖσιν διηγούμεθα ἐλθόντες τά τε ἄλλα καὶ τῶν ἐταίρων τὴν ἀμπελομιξίαν. καὶ δὴ λαβόντες ἀμφορέας τινὰς καὶ ὑδρευσάμενοί τε ἅμα καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ οἰνισάμενοι καὶ αὐτοῦ πλησίον ἐπὶ τῆς ἡónος αὐλίσάμενοι ἔωθεν ἀνήχθημεν οὐ σφόδρα βιαίῳ πνεύματι.

Περὶ μεσημβρίαν δὲ οὐκέτι τῆς νήσου φαινομένης ἄφνω τυφὼν ἐπιγενόμενος καὶ περιδιήσας τὴν ναῦν καὶ μετεωρίσας ὅσον ἐπὶ σταδίους τριακοσίους οὐκέτι καθῆκεν εἰς τὸ πέλαγος, ἀλλ' ἄνω μετέωρον ἐξηρτημένην ἄνεμος ἐμπεσὼν τοῖς ἰστίοις

ἅμα: at the same time
ἀμφορεύς, -έως: an amphora, jar
ἄνεμος, ό: wind
ἀπολείπω: to leave behind
αὐλίζομαι: to camp
ἄφνω: suddenly, unawares
βίαιος, -ος, -ον: forceful
διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full
ἐξαρτάω: to hang upon, (mid./pas.) to be suspended
ἐπιγίνομαι: come into being, happen
ἔωθεν: at daybreak
ἡίων, ἡónος, ἡ: a shore, bank
ἰστίον, τό: a sail
καθίημι: to let fall, set down

καρποφορέω: to bear fruit
καταλείπω: to abandon
μεσημβρία, ἡ: mid-day, noon
μετεωρίζω: to raise
μετέωρος, -ον: raised, hanging
νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
οἰνίζομαι: to procure wine
πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea
περιδινέω: to whirl
πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing, breeze
ποταμός, ό: a river, stream
σφόδρα: very, much
τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α: three hundred
τυφών, ό: a whirlwind, typhoon
ὑδρεύω: to draw water
φεύγω: to flee

καρποφορήσειν: fut. inf. with ἔμελλον, "they were about to bear fruit"
καταλιπόντες: ao. part. of καταλείπω, "having abandoned"
ἀπολειφθεῖσιν: ao. pas. part. dat. pl. "to those left behind" (i.e., guarding the boat)
τά τε ἄλλα καὶ: "the other things, and especially..."
ἀμπελομιξίαν: "the vine-affair"
ὑδρευσάμενοί τε ἅμα καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ οἰνισάμενοι: ao. part., "having watered and wine ourselves"
αὐλίσάμενοι: ao. part., "having camped"
ἀνήχθημεν: ao. pas. of ἀνα-άγω, "we put out to sea"

A wind rises which carries them into the air; they land on the Moon.

οὐκέτι τῆς νήσου φαινομένης: gen. abs., "the island no longer being visible"
μετεωρίσας: ao. part. "raising (the ship) into the air"
καθῆκεν: ao. 3 s. of καθίημι (κατα-ίημι), "set her down"
ἐξηρτημένην: perf. part. of ἐξ-άρτάω, modifying τὴν ναῦν, "having been suspended"

ἔφερεν κολπώσας τὴν ὀθόνην. [10] ἑπτὰ δὲ ἡμέρας καὶ τὰς ἴσας
νύκτας ἀεροδρομήσαντες, ὀγδόῃ καθορώμεν γῆν τινα μεγάλην ἐν
τῷ ἀέρι καθάπερ νῆσον, λαμπρὰν καὶ σφαιροειδῆ καὶ φωτὶ
μεγάλῳ καταλαμπομένην· προσενεχθέντες δὲ αὐτῇ καὶ
ὀρμισάμενοι ἀπέβημεν, ἐπισκοποῦντες δὲ τὴν χώραν εὐρίσκομεν
οἰκουμένην τε καὶ γεωργουμένην. ἡμέρας μὲν οὖν οὐδὲν αὐτόθεν
καθεωρώμεν, νυκτὸς δὲ ἐπιγενομένης ἐφαίνοντο ἡμῖν καὶ ἄλλαι
πολλαὶ νῆσοι πλησίον, αἱ μὲν μείζους, αἱ δὲ μικρότεραι, πυρὶ τὴν
χροιὰν προσεοικυῖαι, καὶ ἄλλη δέ τις γῆ κάτω, καὶ πόλεις ἐν αὐτῇ
καὶ ποταμοὺς ἔχουσα καὶ πελάγη καὶ ὕλας καὶ ὄρη. ταύτην οὖν
τὴν καθ' ἡμᾶς οἰκουμένην εἰκάζομεν.

ἀεροδρομέω: to traverse the air

αὐτόθεν: from the very spot

γεωργέω: to farm

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth, land

ἐπιγίνομαι: come into being, happen

ἐπισκοπέω: to look at, inspect

ἑπτὰ: seven

καταλάμπω: to shine

κάτω: below

κολπώω: to swell, fill (with wind)

λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, large, great

μείζων, ον: greater

μικρότερος, -α, -ον: smaller

νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

ὀγδοος, -η, -ον: eighth

ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth

οἰκέω: to inhabit

ὀρμίζω: to moor, anchor

ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

ποταμός, ό: a river, stream

προσέοικα: to resemble

προσφέρω: to put in (a ship)

σφαιροειδής, -ές: spherical

φαίνομαι: to appear

φῶς, φωτός, τό: light

χρoιά, ἡ: color

κολπώσας τὴν ὀθόνην: “billowing out the canvas”

καθορώμεν: vivid present, “we spot”

καταλαμπομένην: pr. part., “all lit up”

προσενεχθέντες: ao. pas. part. of προσ-φέρω, “having put (a ship) in” + dat.

οἰκουμένην τε καὶ γεωργουμένην: ind. st. after εὐρίσκομεν, “we discover that (the island) is inhabited and being farmed”

ἡμέρας μὲν...νυκτὸς δε ἐπιγενομένης: gen of time within which, “by day...as night came on”

καθεωρώμεν: impf. 1 pl. of κατα-ὀράω, “we spotted”

τὴν χρoάν: acc. of respect, “in color”

προσεοικυῖαι: perf. part. nom. pl. f., “resembling” + dat.

γῆ κάτω: “another land below”

ταύτην...οἰκουμένην: ind. st. after εἰκάζομεν, “we surmised that this was the world inhabited by us”

Lucian

Greek numbers:

	Cardinal	Ordinal	Adverbial
1	εἷς, μία, ἓν one	πρῶτος first	ἅπαξ once
2	δύο two	δεύτερος second	δῖς twice
3	τρεις, τρία three	τρίτος third	τρίς thrice
4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	τέταρτος	τετράκις
5	πέντε	πέμπτος	πεντάκις
6	ἕξ	ἕκτος	ἑξάκις
7	ἐπτά	ἑβδομος	ἐπτάκις
8	ὀκτώ	ὀγδοος	ὀκτάκις
9	ἐννέα	ἐνατος	ἐνάκις
10	δέκα	δέκατος	δεκάκις
11	ἐνδεκα	ἐνδέκατος	ἐνδεκάκις
12	δώδεκα	δωδέκατος	
13	τρεις καὶ δέκα	τρίτος καὶ δέκατος	
20	εἴκοσι	εἰκοστός, -ή, -όν	εἰκοσάκις
21	εἷς καὶ εἴκοσι	πρῶτος καὶ εἰκοστός	εἰκοσάκις ἅπαξ
30	τριακόνα	τριακοστός	τριακοντάκις
40	τετταράκοντα	τετταρακοστός	τετταρακοντάκις
50	πεντήκοντα	πεντηκοστός	πεντηκοντάκις
60	ἑξήκοντα	ἑξηκοστός	ἑξηκοντάκις
70	ἑβδομήκοντα	ἑβδομηκοστός	ἑβδομηκοντάκις
80	ὀγδοήκοντα	ὀγδοηκοστός	ὀγδοηκοντάκις
90	ἐνενήκοντα		
100	ἑκατόν	ἑκατοστός, -ή, -όν	ἑκατοντάκις
200	διακόσιοι, -αι, -α	διακοσιοστός	διακοσιάκις
300	τριακόσιοι		
1,000	χίλιοι, -αι, -α	χιλιοστός, -ή, -όν	χιλιάκις
2,000	δισχίλιοι		
3,000	τρισχίλιοι		
10,000	μύριοι, -αι, -α		
20,000	δισμύριοι or δύο μυριάδες		
30,000	τρισμύριοι or τρεις μυριάδες		
50,000	πεντακισμύριοι or πέντε μυριάδες		
80,000	ὀκτακισμύριοι or ὀκτώ μυριάδες		
100,000	δέκα μυριάδες		
60,000,000	ἑξακισχίλιοι μυριάδες		

[11] Δόξαν δὲ ἡμῖν καὶ ἔτι πορρωτέρω προελθεῖν, συνελήφθημεν τοῖς Ἴππογύποις παρ' αὐτοῖς καλουμένοις ἀπαντήσαντες. οἱ δὲ Ἴππόγυποι οὗτοί εἰσιν ἄνδρες ἐπὶ γυπῶν μεγάλων ὀχούμενοι καὶ καθάπερ ἵπποις τοῖς ὀρνέοις χρώμενοι· μεγάλοι γὰρ οἱ γύπες καὶ ὡς ἐπίπαν τρικέφαλοι. μάθοι δ' ἂν τις τὸ μέγεθος αὐτῶν ἐντεῦθεν· νεὼς γὰρ μεγάλης φορτίδος ἱστοῦ ἕκαστον τῶν πτερῶν μακρότερον καὶ παχύτερον φέρουσι. τούτοις οὖν τοῖς Ἴππογύποις προστέτακται περιπετομένοις τὴν γῆν, εἴ τις εὐρεθείη ξένος, ἀνάγειν ὡς τὸν βασιλέα· καὶ δὴ καὶ ἡμᾶς

ἀνάγω: to lead up

ἀπαντάω: to encounter

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief

γύψ, ἡ: a vulture

εἰκάζω: to surmise

ἐντεῦθεν: from this

ἐπίπαν: on the whole, for the most part

θεάομαι: to look on, gaze at, view, behold

Ἴππόγυποι, οἱ: Vulture-cavalry

ἵππος, ὁ: a horse

ἱστός, ὁ: a mast

καθάπερ: just like

καλέω: to call

μανθάνω: to learn

ναῦς, νεὼς, ἡ: a ship

ὄρνεον, τό: a bird

ὀχέω: to uphold, bear

παχύς, -εία, -ύ: thick, stout

περιπέτομαι: to fly around

πορρωτέω: father off

προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance

προστάσσω: to place, post at

πτερόν, τό: feather

τρικέφαλος, -ον: three-headed

φορτίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a ship of burden

χράομαι: to use

δόξαν: ao. part. acc. s. neut. of *δοκέω*, used absolutely, “since it seemed a good idea”
πορρωτέρω: “further”

συνελήφθημεν: ao. pas. of *συλ-λαμβάνω* “we were captured”

τοῖς Ἴππογύποις: dat. pl. with *ἀπαντήσαντες*, “meeting up with the Horse-vultures”
παρ' αὐτοῖς: “so called among them”

ἀπαντήσαντες: ao. part. of *ἀπαντάω*

ὀχούμενοι: pr. part. pas. of *ὀχέω*, “being borne”

ὀρνέοις: dat. after *χρώμενοι*, “using the birds”

ὡς ἐπίπαν: “for the most part”

μάθοι ἂν: pot. opt. of *μανθάνω*, “someone could learn”

ἱστοῦ: gen. of comparison after *μακρότερον καὶ παχύτερον*, “bigger than the mast of a big commercial ship”

τούτοις...προστέτακται: perf. pas. of *προσ-τάσσω*, used impersonally, “to these it has been commissioned to...”

εἴ τις εὐρεθείη ξένος, ἀνάγειν: general condition with apodosis changed to an infinitive in an indirect command after *προστέτεκεται*, “if any stranger were found, to lead.” The direct version would have been *εἰάν τις εὐρέθῃ ξένος, ἀνάγετε*, “if any stranger is found, lead him...”

καὶ δὴ καὶ: “and so in fact”

συλλαβόντες ἀνάγουσιν ὡς αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ θεασάμενος καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς στολῆς εἰκάσας, «Ἑλληνες ἄρα,» ἔφη, «ὕμεις, ὦ ξένοι;» συμφησάντων δέ, «Πῶς οὖν ἀφίκεσθε,» ἔφη, «τοσοῦτον ἀέρα διελθόντες;» καὶ ἡμεῖς τὸ πᾶν αὐτῷ διηγούμεθα· καὶ ὃς ἀρξάμενος τὸ καθ' αὐτόν ἡμῖν διεξήει, ὡς καὶ αὐτὸς ἄνθρωπος ὢν τοῦνομα Ἐνδυμίων ἀπὸ τῆς ἡμετέρας γῆς καθεύδων ἀναρπασθείη ποτὲ καὶ ἀφικόμενος βασιλεύσειε τῆς χώρας· εἶναι δὲ τὴν γῆν ἐκείνην ἔλεγε

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air

ἀνάγω: to lead up

ἀναρπάζω: to snatch up

ἄρα: particle introducing a question

ἄρχω: to be first, begin

βασιλεύω: to be king, to rule, reign

διέξερχομαι: to narrate

διέρχομαι: to go through

διηγέομαι: to narrate

Ἐνδυμίων, -ωνος, ὁ: Endymion

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

θεάομαι: to gaze at

καθεύδω: to sleep

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name

ποτέ: at some time

στολή, ἡ: an equipment, armament

συλλαμβάνω: to capture

σύμφημι: to assent, agree

χώρα, ἡ: land

ἀπὸ τῆς στολῆς εἰκάσας: "having surmised from our clothes"

συμφησάντων (sc. ἡμῶν): ao. part. gen. abs., "with us having assented"

ἀφίκεσθε: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, "how did you arrive?"

ὃς: "he"

διεξήει: impf. 3 s. of δια-εξ-έρχομαι, "narrated" (lit. "went through")

Ἐνδυμίων: The mortal Endymion was loved by Selene, the Moon goddess, who sought for him eternal youth (or perpetual sleep).

ὡς...ἀναρπασθείη καὶ βασιλεύσειε: optatives in ind. st. after the past tense διεξήει

ἀναρπασθείη: ao. pas. 3. s. of ἀνα-ἀρπάζω, "that he had been snatched up"

εἶναι...ἔλεγε: "he said that that land was..." λέγω can take the acc. + inf. form of ind. st.

Indirect statement in secondary sequence:

One of the three main forms of indirect statement in Greek is **ὅτι** or **ὡς** + the indicative after verbs of saying, like **φημι** and **λέγω**. The mood of the direct speech can always be retained. But if the verb of saying is a past tense, the mood of the original statement can be changed to the corresponding tense of the optative. The difference between the two forms cannot be rendered in English, but the optative version is considered "less vivid" because it is not as close to the original words of the direct statement.

ἡμῖν διεξήει, ὡς ἀναρπασθείη ποτὲ καὶ βασιλεύσειε τῆς χώρας

ἡμῖν διεξήει, ὡς ἀνηρπάσθη ποτὲ καὶ ἐβασίλευσε τῆς χώρας

He explained that he had been snatched up once and made king of this land.

The original statement was ἀνηρπάσθη ποτὲ καὶ ἐβασίλευσα.

τὴν ἡμῖν κάτω φαινομένην σελήνην. ἀλλὰ θαρρεῖν τε παρεκελεύετο καὶ μηδένα κίνδυνον ὑφορᾶσθαι· πάντα γὰρ ἡμῖν παρέσεσθαι ὦν δεόμεθα. [12] «Ἦν δὲ καὶ κατορθώσω,» ἔφη, «τὸν πόλεμον ὃν ἐκφέρω νῦν πρὸς τοὺς τὸν ἥλιον κατοικοῦντας, ἀπάντων εὐδαιμονέστατα παρ' ἐμοὶ καταβιώσεσθε.» καὶ ἡμεῖς ἠρόμεθα τίνες εἶεν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν τῆς διαφορᾶς· «Ὁ δὲ Φαέθων,» φησὶν, «ὁ τῶν ἐν τῷ ἡλίῳ κατοικούντων βασιλεὺς - οἰκεῖται γὰρ δὴ κακείνος ὥσπερ καὶ ἡ σελήνη - πολὺν ἤδη πρὸς ἡμᾶς πολεμεῖ χρόνον. ἤρξατο δὲ ἐξ αἰτίας τοιαύτης· τῶν ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ τῇ ἐμῇ ποτε τοὺς ἀπορωτάτους συναγαγὼν ἐβουλήθη ἀποικίαν εἰς τὸν Ἑωσφόρον στείλαι, ὄντα ἔρημον καὶ ὑπὸ μηδενὸς

αἰτία, ἡ: a cause, purpose	κατοικέω: to dwell in
ἀποικία, ἡ: a settlement, colony	κατορθόω: to succeed
ἄπορος, -ον: without resources	κάτω: down
ἄρχω: to begin	κίνδυνος, ὁ: a danger
βασιλεὺς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief	παρακελεύομαι: to order
διαφορά, ἡ: a difference	πόλεμος, ὁ: a battle, war
ἐκφέρω: to carry out of	σελήνη, ἡ: the moon
ἐρωτάω: to ask, enquire	στέλλω: to set in order, establish
εὐδαίμων, -ον: blessed, fortunate	συνάγω: to bring together
Ἑωσφόρος, ὁ: Morning Star	ὑφοράω: to suspect
θαρρέω: to be of good courage, take heart	Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon
καταβιώω: to live out one's life	

κάτω φαινομένην: "appearing from below"

θαρρεῖν: pr. inf., an ind. command after παρεκελεύετο "he ordered us to take heart"

ὑφορᾶσθαι...παρέσεσθαι: infinitives in implied ind. st. "(saying) that no danger should be suspected, that all would be present"

παρέσεσθαι: fut. inf. of πάρεμι

ἦν (=ἐὰν) κατορθώσω (ao. subj.): fut. more vivid condition "If I succeed...."

καταβιώσεσθε: fut. of καταβιώω, "you will live out your life"

τίνες εἶεν οἱ πολέμοι: ind. quest. with optative in sec. sequence after ἠρόμεθα, ao. of ἐρωτάω, "we asked who the enemy were"

οἰκεῖται: pr. pas. "is inhabited"

ἤρξατο: ao. of ἄρχω, "it started"

τῶν ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ τῇ ἐμῇ: "of those in my empire"

συναγαγὼν: ao. part. of συν-άγω, "having gathered"

ἐβουλήθη: ao. pas. with middle meaning, "I wished to send"

ὄντα ἔρημον: modifying Ἑωσφόρον, "since it was empty"

κατοικοῦμενον· ὁ τοίνυν Φαέθων φθονήσας ἐκώλυσε τὴν ἀποικίαν
κατὰ μέσον τὸν πόρον ἀπαντήσας ἐπὶ τῶν Ἱππομυρμήκων. τότε
μὲν οὖν νικηθέντες - οὐ γὰρ ἤμεν ἀντίπαλοι τῇ παρασκευῇ -
ἀνεχωρήσαμεν· νῦν δὲ βούλομαι αὖθις ἐξενεγκεῖν τὸν πόλεμον καὶ
ἀποστεῖλαι τὴν ἀποικίαν. ἦν οὖν ἐθέλητε, κοινωνήσατέ μοι τοῦ
στόλου, γυψας δὲ ὑμῖν ἐγὼ παρέξω τῶν βασιλικῶν ἓνα ἐκάστω
καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ὄπλισιν· αὔριον δὲ ποιησόμεθα τὴν ἔξοδον.»
«Οὕτως,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «γιγνέσθω, ἐπειδὴ σοι δοκεῖ.»

ἀναχωρέω: to go back
ἀντίπαλος, -ον: evenly matched
ἀπαντάω: to encounter
ἀποικία, ἡ: a settlement, colony
ἀποστελλω: to send out
αὔριον: tomorrow
βασιλικός, -ή, -όν: royal, kingly
γύψ, ἡ: a vulture
ἐθέλω: to wish
ἐκάστος, -η, -ον: every, each
ἐκφέρω: to carry out
ἔξοδος, -ον: a departure, foray

Ἱππομύρμηξ, -ηκος, ὁ: a horse-ant
κοινωνέω: to participate
κωλύω: to hinder, prevent
νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
ὄπλισις, -εως, ἡ: an equipment, arming
παρασκευή, ἡ: preparation
παρέχω: to furnish, provide
πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, war
πόρος, ὁ: a way, passage
στόλος, ὁ: a mission
Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon
φθονέω: to be jealous

φθονήσας: ao. part. causal, "since he was jealous"
ἀπαντήσας: ao. part. instrumental, "by opposing"
ἐπὶ τῶν Ἱππομυρμήκων: "at the head of his Horse-ants"
νικηθέντες: ao. pas. part. of νικάω, "having been defeated"
ἀνεχωρήσαμεν: ao. of ἀναχωρέω, "we retreated"
ἐξενεγκεῖν: ao. inf. of ἐκ-φέρω, "I wish to carry out"
ἦν ἐθέλητε: fut. more vivid cond., "if you wish..."
κοινωνήσατέ: ao. imper. "join my expedition"
παρέξω: fut. of παρα-έχω: "I will provide X (acc.) to Y (dat.)"
τῶν βασιλικῶν ἓνα: "one of my royal vultures"
οὕτως γιγνέσθω: 3. s. imper., "let it be so"
ἐπειδὴ σοι δοκεῖ: "since it seems good to you"

ἱημι, ἦσω, ἦκα, εἶκα, εἶμαι, εἶθην to release, to let go

This troublesome -μι verb originally had a stem with a consonant which dropped out very early and was never written using the Greek alphabet (ϣε). When the consonant dropped out all that was left was a vowel with rough breathing (ἐ). The simple stem was used for the aorist system; reduplicated stems were used for the present tense system (ϣιϣε=ἔε) and the perfect system (ϣεϣε=εἶ). Compare with δίδωμι, ἔδωκα and δέδωκα for the verb δίδωμι. ἱημι is found usually with prefixes like ἀπό, πρό, κατά, ἀνά, ἐπί, etc., producing compounds like ἀφίημι, προῖημι, καθίημι, ἀνίημι, ἐφίημι. Its basic meaning is "to release, to let go," hence in compounds "to send away, forth, down, up, upon," etc.

[13] Τότε μὲν οὖν παρ' αὐτῷ ἐστιαθέντες ἐμείναμεν, ἔωθεν δὲ διαναστάντες ἐτασσόμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ σκοποὶ ἐσήμαινον πλησίον εἶναι τοὺς πολεμίους. τὸ μὲν οὖν πλήθος τῆς στρατιᾶς δέκα μυριάδες ἔγένοντο ἄνευ τῶν σκευοφόρων καὶ τῶν μηχανοποιῶν καὶ τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τῶν ξένων συμμάχων· τούτων δὲ ὀκτακισμύριοι μὲν ἦσαν οἱ Ἰππόγυπτοι, δισμύριοι δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τῶν Λαχανοπτέρων. ὄρνεον δὲ καὶ τοῦτό ἐστι μέγιστον, ἀντὶ τῶν πτερῶν λαχάνοις πάντῃ λάσιον, τὰ δὲ ὠκύπτερα ἔχει θριδακίνης φύλλοις μάλιστα προσεοικότα. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις οἱ Κεγχροβόλοι τετάχατο καὶ οἱ Σκοροδομάχοι. ἦλθον δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς

ἄνευ: without + gen.

δέκα: ten

διανίσταμαι: to get up, arise

δισμύριοι: twenty thousand

ἔωθεν: at daybreak

ἐστιάω: to entertain

θριδάκινος, -η, -ον: of lettuce

Ἰππόγυπτοι, οἱ: vulture-cavalry

Κεγχροβόλοι, οἱ: Millet-throwers

λάσιος, -ον: hairy, shaggy

λάχανον, -ον, τό: vegetables, greens

Λαχανόπτερος, ό: Grass-plumer

μένω: to stay

μηχανοποιός, ό: an engineer

μυριάς, -άδος, ή: 10,000

ξένος, -ον: foreign, strange

ὀκτακισμύριοι: eighty thousand

ὄρνεον, τό: a bird

πάντῃ: on every side

πεζός, ό: a footsoldier

πλήθος, -eos, τό: a great number

προσέοικα: to be like, resemble

πτερόν, τό: a feather

σημαίνω: to indicate, signal

σκευοφόρος, -ον, ό: a porter

σκοπός, ό: a lookout, watcher

Σκοροδομάχοι, οἱ: Garlic-fighters

στρατία, ή: an army

σύμμαχος, ό: an ally

τάσσω: to arrange, put in order

φύλλον, τό: a leaf

ὠκύπτερος, -ον: swift-winged

They decide to join the Moon people and their allies in a war against the Sun. The various hosts are described.

ἐστιαθέντες: ao. pas. part. of ἐστιάω, “having been treated as guests”

διαναστάντες: ao. part. of δια-ανα-ἵστημι, “having risen”

ἐτασσόμεθα: impf. mid., “we arranged ourselves”

εἶναι τοὺς πολεμίους: ind. st. after ἐσήμαινον, “that the enemy was near”

δέκα μυριάδες ἄνευ τῶν ...: “100,000 without auxiliaries and allies,” the fantastic numbers echo Herodotus’ account of the Persian host.

δισμύριοι οἱ ἐπὶ τῶν Λαχανοπτέρων: “20,000 riding on Grass-plumers.”

ἀντὶ τῶν πτερῶν: “instead of plumage”

τὰ ὠκύπτερα: “wing-feathers”

ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις: “next to these”

τετάχατο: plupf 3 pl. mid., “had arrayed themselves”

ἦλθον δὲ αὐτῷ: “allies came with him (i.e. Endymion)”

ἄρκτου σύμμαχοι, τρισμύριοι μὲν Ψυλλοτοξόται, πεντακισμύριοι δὲ Ἄνεμοδρόμοι· τούτων δὲ οἱ μὲν Ψυλλοτοξόται ἐπὶ ψυλλῶν μεγάλων ἱππάζονται, ὅθεν καὶ τὴν προσηγορίαν ἔχουσιν· μέγεθος δὲ τῶν ψυλλῶν ὅσον δώδεκα ἐλέφαντες· οἱ δὲ Ἄνεμοδρόμοι πεζοὶ μὲν εἰσιν, φέρονται δὲ ἐν τῷ ἀέρι ἄνευ πτερῶν· ὁ δὲ τρόπος τῆς φορᾶς τοιόσδε. χιτῶνας ποδήρεις ὑπεζωσμένοι κολπώσαντες αὐτοὺς τῷ ἀνέμῳ καθάπερ ἱστία φέρονται ὥσπερ τὰ σκάφη. τὰ πολλὰ δ' οἱ τοιοῦτοι ἐν ταῖς μάχαις πελτασταί εἰσιν. ἐλέγοντο δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ὑπὲρ τὴν Καππαδοκίαν ἀστέρων ἥξειν Στρουθοβάλανοι μὲν ἑπτακισμύριοι, Ἴππογέρανοι δὲ πεντακισχίλιοι. τούτους ἐγὼ οὐκ ἐθεασάμην· οὐ γὰρ ἀφίκοντο.

Ἄνεμοδρόμοι, οἱ: Wind-walkers

ἄρκτος, ἡ: a bear

ἀστήρ, -ἔρος, ὁ: a star

δώδεκα: twelve

ἐλέφας, -αντος: an elephant

ἑπτακισμύριοι, -αι, -α: seventy thousand

ἥκω: to come

θεάομαι: to look at, see

ἱππάζομαι: to ride horses

Ἴππογέρανοι: crane-cavalry

ἱστίον, τό: a sail

καθάπερ: just as

Καππαδοκίος, -α, -ον: Cappadocian

κολπῶ: to swell, to fill (with wind)

μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight

ὅθεν: whence

πεζός, ὁ: a footsoldier

πελταστής, -οῦ, ὁ: one who bears a light shield

πεντακισμύριοι, -αι: 50,000

πεντακισχίλιοι, -αι: five thousand

ποδήρης, -ες: reaching to the feet

προσηγορία, ἡ: a name

πτερόν, τό: feather

σκάφος, -εος, τό: (the hull of) a ship

Στρουθοβάλανοι, οἱ: Sparrow-acorns

τρисμύριοι, -αι, -α: three times ten thousand

τρόπος, ὁ: a course, manner

ὑποζώννυμι: to undergird

φορά, ἡ: equipment

χιτῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: a tunic

ψύλλα, -ης, ἡ: a flea

Ψυλλοτοξότης, -ου, ὁ: a flea-archer

ἀπὸ τῆς ἄρκτου: “from the Bear” i.e. the constellation Ursa Major

πεζοὶ μὲν...φέρονται δὲ: “while foot-soldiers, yet are carried...”

ὑπεζωσμένοι: perf. mid. part., “having girded themselves with X (acc.)”

ὥσπερ τὰ σκάφη: “like ships”

τὰ πολλὰ: acc. of resp., “for the most part”

οὐ ἀφίκοντο: ao. 3 pl. of ἀφικνεόμαι, “they did not arrive”

Uses of the subjunctive and optative in subordinate clauses:

The subjunctive and optative are used in various kinds of subordinate clauses that do not make a statement about a specific state of affairs (as opposed to the indicative). The subjunctive, often with **ἄν**, is used when the main verb is a primary tense: either present, future or present perfect. The optative, never with **ἄν**, is used when the main verb is a secondary tense. Note that the subjunctive, which has primary endings, is used with tenses that have primary endings; just as the optative, which itself has secondary endings, is used with those tenses that have secondary endings. This simple fact should help you keep the sequence of moods straight.

1. In purpose clauses, the particles **ἵνα**, **ὅπως**, and **ὥς** are used with the subjunctive in primary sequence, optative in secondary sequence:

ἔρχεται ἵνα πειθῇ τοὺς ἄνδρας: “he is going in order to persuade the men.”
ἦλθεν ἵνα πείθῃ τοὺς ἄνδρας: “he went in order to persuade the men.”

2. With verbs of fearing, **μή** plus the subjunctive is used in primary sequence, optative in secondary sequence:

φοβοῦμαι μή ἀφίκηται ἡ στρατία: “I fear that the army will come”
έφοβείτο μή ἡ στρατία ἀφίκοιτο: “He feared that the army would come”

3. Indefinite clauses use **ἄν** plus the subjunctive in primary sequence, optative without **ἄν** in secondary sequence:

ὅστις ἂν τοῦτο ποιῇ μῶρος ἐστίν: “whoever does this is a fool.”
μένομεν ἕως ἂν ἔλθῃ: “we are waiting until he comes.”
ὅστις τοῦτο ποιῶν μῶρος ἦν: “whoever did this was a fool.”
έμένομεν ἕως ἔλθοι: “we waited until such time as he would come.”

4. Analogous to the previous type of clause is the use of the subjunctive with **ἄν** to express a general condition in present time, optative without **ἄν** in past time:

ἐὰν ἔλθωσι, σῶοι ἔσμεν: “If ever they come, we are safe”
εἰ ἔλθοιεν, σῶοι ἦσαν: “if they ever came, we were safe”

Distinguish these from the future more vivid and future less vivid conditions:

ἐὰν ἔλθωσι, σῶοι ἐσόμεθα: “If they go, we will be safe”
εἰ ἔλθοιεν, σῶοι ἂν εἶεν: “If they were to go, we would be safe”

5. For the optative in indirect statement, for which there is no parallel with the subjunctive, see above p. 22.

διόπερ οὐδὲ γράψαι τὰς φύσεις αὐτῶν ἐτόλμησα· τεράστια γὰρ καὶ ἄπιστα περὶ αὐτῶν ἐλέγετο.

[14] Αὕτη μὲν ἡ τοῦ Ἐνδυμίωνος δύναμις ἦν. σκευὴ δὲ πάντων ἡ αὐτή· κράνη μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν κυάμων, μεγάλοι γὰρ παρ' αὐτοῖς οἱ κύαμοι καὶ καρτεροί· θώρακες δὲ φολιδωτοὶ πάντες θέρμινι· τὰ γὰρ λέπη τῶν θέρμων συρράπτοντες ποιοῦνται θώρακας, ἄρρηκτον δὲ ἐκεῖ γίνεται τοῦ θέρμου τὸ λέπος ὥσπερ κέρας· ἀσπίδες δὲ καὶ ξίφη οἶα τὰ Ἑλληνικά. [15] ἐπειδὴ δὲ καιρὸς ἦν, ἐτάξαντο ὧδε· τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν κέρας εἶχον οἱ Ἱππόγυποι καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς ἀρίστους περὶ αὐτὸν ἔχων· καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐν τούτοις ἤμεν· τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον οἱ Λαχανόπτεροι· τὸ μέσον δὲ οἱ

ἄπιστος, -ον: unbelievable
 ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best
 ἄρρηκτος, -ον: unbroken, unable to break
 ἀσπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a round shield
 βασιλεὺς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
 γράφω: to write
 δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, strength
 ἐκεῖ: there, in that place
 Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Hellenic, Greek
 Ἐνδυμίων, -ωνος, ὁ: Endymion
 εὐώνυμος, ἡ: on the left
 θέρμινος, -η, -ον: of lupines
 θέρμος, ὁ: a lupine
 θώραξ, -ακος, ὁ: a breastplate
 Ἱππόγυποι, οἱ: vulture-cavalry
 καιρός, ὁ: the proper time

καρτερός, -ά, -όν: harder
 κέρας, τό: the horn of an animal
 κράνος, -εος, τό: a helmet
 κύαμος, ὁ: a bean
 Λαχανόπτερος, ὁ: Grass-plumer
 λέπος, -εος, τό: a rind, husk
 μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
 ξίφος, -εος, τό: a sword
 σκευή, ἡ: equipment
 συρράπτω: to sew or stitch together
 τεράστιος, -ον: monstrous
 τολμάω: to undertake, take heart
 φολιδωτός, -ή, -όν: of scales
 φύσις, ἡ: a nature, condition
 ὧδε: thus

γράφαι: ao. inf. of γράφω, "I did not dare to write"

τεράστια καὶ ἄπιστα ἐλέγετο: After all this fantastic account, the author demures to report anything he did not see himself, for what he heard about these creatures is "unbelievable."

ἀπὸ τῶν κυάμων: "helmets from beans"

φολιδωτοὶ θέρμινι: "overlapping legume skins"

συρράπτοντες: pr. part. of συν-ράπτω, instrumental, "by stitching together the husks"

ἐτάξαντο: ao. mid. of τάσσω, "they arranged themselves"

δεξιὸν κέρας: "right wing" (lit. "horn")

περὶ αὐτὸν: (= ἐ+αὐτον) "around himself"

ἐν τούτοις: "among these"

τὸ εὐώνυμον: "the left wing"

σύμμαχοι ὡς ἐκάστοις ἐδόκει. τὸ δὲ πεζὸν ἦσαν μὲν ἀμφὶ τὰς ἑξακισχιλίας μυριάδας, ἐτάχθησαν δὲ οὕτως. ἀράχνη παρ' αὐτοῖς πολλοὶ καὶ μεγάλοι γίνονται, πολλὴ τῶν Κυκλάδων νήσων ἕκαστος μείζων. τούτοις προσέταξεν διυφῆναι τὸν μεταξὺ τῆς σελήνης καὶ τοῦ Ἑωσφόρου αέρα. ὡς δὲ τάχιστα ἐξεργάσαντο καὶ πεδίον ἐποίησαν, ἐπὶ τούτου παρέταξε τὸ πεζόν· ἡγεῖτο δὲ αὐτῶν Νυκτερίων ὁ Εὐδιάνακτος τρίτος αὐτός.

[16] Τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον εἶχον οἱ Ἴππομύρμηκες καὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς ὁ Φαέθων· θηρία δὲ ἐστὶ μέγιστα, ὑπόπτερα, τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν μύρμηξι προσεοικότα πλὴν τοῦ μεγέθους· ὁ γὰρ μέγιστος αὐτῶν καὶ δίπλεθρος ἦν. ἐμάχοντο δὲ

ἀήρ, αέρος, ὁ: the air
ἀράχνης, -ου, ὁ: a spider
δίπλεθρος, -ον: two hundred feet
διυφαίνω: to fill up by weaving
ἑξακισχίλιοι, -αι, -α: six thousand
ἐξεργάζομαι: to work out, finish off
εὐώνυμος: on the left
Ἑωσφόρος, ὁ: Morning Star
ἡγέομαι: to lead
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal
Ἴππομύρμηξ, -ηκος, ὁ: a horse-ant
Κυκλάδες, αἱ: the Cyclades
μεταξύ: between + gen.
μυριάς, -άδος, ἡ: a thousand

μύρμηξ, -ηκος, ὁ: an ant
νυκτέριος, -α, -ον: by night
παρατάσσω: to place side by side, draw up
in battle-order
πεδίον, τό: a plain, flat
πεζός, ὁ: a footsoldier
προσέοικα: to be like, resemble
προστάσσω: to place, post at
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon
σύμμαχος, ὁ: an ally
ταχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: quick, swift
τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third
ὑπόπτερος, -ον: winged
Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon

ὡς ἐκάστοις ἐδόκει: "arrayed however they wanted"

τὸ δὲ πεζόν: "as for the infantry"

ἀμφὶ τὰς ἑξακισχιλίας μυριάδας: "about 60,000,000"

ἐτάχθησαν: ao. pas. of τάσσω, "they were arranged"

Κυκλάδων νήσων: gen. of comparison after μείζων, "larger than the Cyclades islands," a circular group of islands between Crete and mainland Greece.

προσέταξεν: ao. act., "he commissioned" + dat. + inf.

διυφῆναι: ao. act. inf. of δια-ύφαίνω, "to weave"

ὡς τάχιστα: "as quickly as possible"

ἡγεῖτο: impf of ἡγέομαι, "he led"

Νυκτερίων ὁ Εὐδιάνακτος: "Owlett, son of Fairweather"

τρίτος αὐτός: "himself the third," i.e., along with two others

τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν μύρμηξι προσεοικότα: "very similar to our ants"

οὐ μόνον οἱ ἐπ' αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτοὶ μάλιστα τοῖς κέρασιν·
 ἐλέγοντο δὲ οὗτοι εἶναι ἀμφὶ τὰς πέντε μυριάδας. ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ
 δεξιοῦ αὐτῶν ἐτάχθησαν οἱ Ἀεροκώνωπες, ὄντες καὶ οὗτοι ἀμφὶ
 τὰς πέντε μυριάδας, πάντες τοξόται κώνωψι μεγάλοις
 ἐποχούμενοι· μετὰ δὲ τούτους οἱ Ἀεροκόρδακες, ψιλοὶ τε ὄντες
 καὶ πεζοί, πλὴν μάχιμοί γε καὶ οὗτοι· πόρρωθεν γὰρ ἐσφενδόνων
 ῥαφανίδας ὑπερμεγέθεις, καὶ ὁ βληθεὶς οὐδ' ἐπ' ὀλίγον ἀντέχειν
 ἐδύνατο, ἀπέθνησκε δὲ δυσωδίας τινὸς τῷ τραύματι ἐγγινομένης·
 ἐλέγοντο δὲ χρίειν τὰ βέλη μαλάχης ἰῶ. ἐχόμενοι δὲ αὐτῶν
 ἐτάχθησαν οἱ Καυλομύκητες, ὀπλῖται ὄντες καὶ ἀγχέμαχοι,

ἀγχέμαχος, -ον: fighting hand to hand
 Ἀεροκόρδακες, οἱ: Sky-dancers
 Ἀεροκώνωπες, οἱ: Air-gnat
 ἀντέχω: to hold against
 ἀποθνήσκω: to die
 βάλλω: to throw
 βέλος, -εος, τό: a missile, shot
 δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side
 δύναμαι: to be able
 ἐγγίνομαι: to be born, bred in
 ἐποχέομαι: to be carried upon, ride upon
 ἴος, ὁ: poison
 Καυλομύκητες, οἱ: Stalk-mushrooms
 κέρας, τό: the horn of an animal
 κώνωψι, -ωπος, ὁ: a mosquito

μαλάχη, ἡ: the mallow plant
 μάχιμος, -ον: fit for battle, warlike
 μυριάς, -άδος, ἡ: a great number, 10,000
 ὀπλίτης, -ον, ὁ: heavy-armed soldier
 πεζός, ὁ: a footsoldier
 πόρρωθεν: from afar
 ῥαφανίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a radish
 σφενδονάω: to sling, to use the sling
 τάσσω: to appoint, assign
 τοξότης, -ον, -α, ὁ: a Bowman, archer
 τραῦμα, -ατος, τό: a wound, injury
 ὑπερμεγέθης: very large
 χρίω: to anoint
 ψιλός: bare, light-armed

οἱ ἐπ' αὐτῶν: "the ones riding them"
 ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτοὶ: "but they themselves fight"
 ἐποχούμενοι: "riding on"
 ψιλοὶ τε ὄντες καὶ πεζοί: "being light-armed and on foot"
 πλὴν μάχιμοί γε: "but fierce indeed"
 ἐσφενδόνων: impf. of σφενδονάω, "they were slinging"
 ὁ βληθεὶς: ao. pas. of βάλλω, "anyone struck"
 ἀπέθνησκε: impf. of customary action, "he would die"
 δυσωδίας τινὸς...ἐγγινομένης: gen. abs., "a foul odor being born in"
 μαλάχης ἰῶ: dat. of means, "with the poison of mallow," which was thought to
 have a healing power
 ἐχόμενοι αὐτῶν: "staying beside them"
 ἐτάχθησαν: ao. pas. of τάσσω, "they were stationed"

τὸ πλῆθος μύριοι ἐκλήθησαν δὲ Καυλομύκητες, ὅτι ἀσπίσι μὲν
μυκητίναις ἐχρῶντο, δόρασι δὲ καυλίνοις τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν
ἀσπαράγων. πλησίον δὲ αὐτῶν οἱ Κυνοβάλανοι ἔστησαν, οὓς
ἔπεμψαν αὐτῷ οἱ τὸν Σείριον κατοικοῦντες, πεντακισχίλιοι,
ἄνδρες κυνοπρόσωποι ἐπὶ βαλάνων πτερωτῶν μαχόμενοι.
ἐλέγοντο δὲ κἀκείνῳ ὑστερίζειν τῶν συμμάχων οὓς τε ἀπὸ τοῦ
Γαλαξίου μετεπέμπετο σφενδονήτας καὶ οἱ Νεφελοκένταυροι. ἀλλ'
ἐκεῖνοι μὲν τῆς μάχης ἤδη κεκριμένης ἀφίκοντο, ὥς μήποτε
ᾤφελον· οἱ σφενδονῆται δὲ οὐδὲ ὅλως παρεγένοντο, διόπερ φασὶν
ὑστερον αὐτοῖς ὀργισθέντα τὸν Φαέθοντα πυρπολῆσαι τὴν χώραν.

ἀσπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a round shield
ἀσπάραγος, ἡ: asparagus
βάλανος, ἡ: an acorn
Γαλαξίας, -ου, ὁ: the Milky Way
δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: a spear
καλέω: to call, summon
καύλινος, -η, -ον: made of a stalk
Καυλομύκητες, οἱ: Stalk-mushrooms
κρίνω: to decide
Κυνοβάλανοι, οἱ: Dog-acorns
κυνοπρόσωπος, -ον: dog-faced
μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat
μεταπέμπω: to send after
μυκητίνη, ἡ: a mushroom
μυρίος, -ον: ten thousand

Νεφελοκένταυρος, ὁ: a cloud-centaur
ὅλως: completely
ὀργίζω: to make angry, irritate
ὀφείλω: to owe, have to pay for
παραγίνομαι: to be present, attend
πεντακισχίλιοι, -αι: five thousand
πλῆθος, -εος, τό: a great number
πτερωτός, -ή, -όν: feathered
πυρπολέω: to devastate with fire
Σείριος, ὁ: the Dog Star
σύμμαχος, ὁ: an ally
σφενδονήτης, -ου, ὁ: a slinger
ὑστερίζω: to come after, come later
Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon
χράομαι: to use + dat.

τὸ πλῆθος: acc. of respect, “in number”
ἐκλήθησαν: ao. pas. 3 pl. of καλέω, “they were called”
μυκητίναις, καυλίνοις: dat. after ἐχρῶντο, “they used mushrooms, stalks”
ἀσπίσι, δόρασι: dat. predicates, “for shields,” “for spears”
ἔστησαν: ao. intr. of ἵστημι, “they stood”
οὓς ἔπεμψαν: “whom they sent”
κἀκείνῳ (= καὶ ἐκείνῳ): “also to that one”
τῶν συμμάχων (sc. οἱ μὲν): “some of his allies”
μετεπέμπετο: impf. mid. “whom he sent for”
ἀφίκοντο: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, “they arrived”
ὥς μήποτε (sc. ἀφίκεσθαι) ᾤφελον: 2nd aor, in past unfulfilled wish, “Would that they had not (arrived)!”
ὀργισθέντα: ao. part. pas. acc. s. of ὀργίζομαι, modifying Φαέθοντα, “being made angry at them”
Φαέθοντα πυρπολῆσαι: ao. inf in ind. statement after φασὶν, “that Phaethon burned...”

[17] Τοιαύτη μὲν καὶ ὁ Φαέθων ἐπῆει παρασκευῇ. συμμίζαντες δὲ ἐπειδὴ τὰ σημεῖα ἦρθη καὶ ὠγκήσαντο ἐκατέρων οἱ ὄνοι - τούτοις γὰρ ἀντὶ σαλπιστῶν χρῶνται - ἐμάχοντο. καὶ τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἡλιωτῶν αὐτίκα ἔφυγεν οὐδ' εἰς χεῖρας δεξιόμενον τοὺς Ἱππογύπους, καὶ ἡμεῖς εἰπόμεθα κτείνοντες· τὸ δεξιὸν δὲ αὐτῶν ἐκράτει τοῦ ἐπὶ τῷ ἡμετέρῳ εὐωνύμου, καὶ ἐπεξῆλθον οἱ Ἀεροκώνωπες διώκοντες ἄχρι πρὸς τοὺς πεζοὺς. ἐνταῦθα δὲ κάκείνων ἐπιβοηθούντων ἔφυγον ἐγκλίναντες, καὶ μάλιστα ἐπεὶ ἦσθοντο τοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ σφῶν νενικημένους.

Ἀεροκώνωψ, ὁ: a Sky-mosquito
αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, feel
ἀραρίσκω: to fasten, make ready
ἄχρι: all the way

δέχομαι: to take, accept, receive
διώκω: to pursue, chase
ἐγκλίνω: to bend in, incline
ἐκάτερος: each of two, either, each singly
ἐνταῦθα: here, there
ἐπεξέρχομαι: to go out against, march on
ἐπιβοηθέω: to come to aid, to help
ἔπομαι: to follow
εὐώνυμος, ἡ: on the left

Ἡλιώτης, ὁ: Sunite
Ἱππόγυποι, οἱ: vulture-cavalry
κρατέω: to be strong, defeat
κτείνω: to kill, slay
νικάω: to conquer, defeat, prevail
ὀγκάζομαι: to bray
ὄνος, ὁ: an ass
παρασκευή, ἡ: preparation
πεζός, ὁ: a footsoldier
σαλπίστος, ὁ: a trumpeter
σημεῖον, τό: a sign, a mark
συμμίγνυμι: to mix together, commingle
φεύγω: to flee

The signals are given and the forces join battle. The sun people are routed, but when reinforcements arrive, the moon people are beaten back.

ἐπῆει: impf. of ἐπέρχομαι, "he was attacking"
ἦρθη: ao. pas. of ἀραρίσκω, "were made ready"
ὠγκήσαντο: ao. mid. of ὀγκέω, "brayed"

ἔφυγεν: ao. of φεύγω

οὐδέ δεξιόμενον: ao. part. nom. s. of δέχομαι, "nothing recieved into hands," i.e., before having made contact

εἰπόμεθα: impf. of ἔπομαι, "we began pursing"

ἐκράτει: impf. of κρατέω, "their right was defeating our left"

ἐπεξῆλθον: ao. of ἐπι-ἐκ-έρχομαι, "they advanced"

κάκείνων (=καὶ ἐκείνων) ἐπιβοηθούντων: gen. abs., "with these (the infantry) coming to the rescue"

ἐγκλίναντες: ao. part. of ἐγκλίνω, "having broken"

ἦσθοντο: ao. of αἰσθάνομαι, "they perceived"

νενικημένους: perf. part. in ind. st. after ἦσθοντο, "that those on their left had been defeated"

τῆς δὲ τροπῆς λαμπρᾶς γεγεννημένης πολλοὶ μὲν ζῶντες ἡλίσκοντο, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἀνηροῦντο, καὶ τὸ αἷμα ἔρρει πολὺ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν νεφῶν, ὥστε αὐτὰ βάπτεσθαι καὶ ἐρυθρὰ φαίνεσθαι, οἷα παρ' ἡμῖν δυομένου τοῦ ἡλίου φαίνεται, πολὺ δὲ καὶ εἰς τὴν γῆν κατέσταζεν, ὥστε με εἰκάζειν μὴ ἄρα τοιούτου τινὸς καὶ πάλαι ἄνω γενομένου Ὅμηρος ὑπέλαβεν αἵματι ὕσαι τὸν Δία ἐπὶ τῷ τοῦ Σαρπηδόνος θανάτῳ.

αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood
ἡλίσκομαι: to be taken, conquered
βάπτω: to dip in water, dye
δύομαι: (of the sun) to set
εἰκάζω: to make like, speculate
ἐρυθρός, -ά, -όν: red
Ζεὺς, Διός, ό: Zeus
θάνατος, ό: death
καταστάζω: to let fall in drops

λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, radiant
νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud
Ὅμηρος, -ου, ό: Homer
πάλαι: long ago
Σαρπηδών, -ονος, ό: Sarpedon
τροπή, ή: a turning, victory
ὑπολαμβάνω: to believe, suppose
ὑω: to rain
φαίνομαι: to appear, seem

τῆς δὲ τροπῆς λαμπρᾶς γεγεννημένης: pf. part. in gen. abs., “the victory having been brilliant”

ἡλίσκοντο: impf. of ἡλίσκομαι, “were captured”

ἀνηροῦντο: impf. of ἀναιρέω, “were slain”

ἔρρει impf. of ῥέω, “was flowing”

ὥστε βάπτεσθαι...φαίνεσθαι: result clauses

δυομένου τοῦ ἡλίου: gen abs., “the sun setting”

κατέσταζεν: impf., “was dripping down”

ὥστε με εἰκάζειν: result clause, “so that I speculated...”

μὴ ἄρα...ὑπέλαβεν: indirect question after εἰκάζειν, “whether Homer supposed”

τοιούτου τινὸς...γενομένου: gen. abs., “when such a thing happened”

ὑσαι τὸν Δία: ind. st. after ὑπέλαβεν, “supposed that Zeus was causing rain...” Zeus’ weeping blood at the death of Sarpedon occurs in Iliad 16.

τάσσω (Att. τάττω): “I arrange”

Verbs ending in a glottal stem (κ, γ, χ) often form their present stem with a -σσω (Attic -ττω): φυλλάττω (φυλακ), ταρράττω (ταρραγ), αἰνίσσομαι (αἰνιγ), πράσσω (πραγ). The conjugation of τάσσω is typical:

imperfect: ἔτασσον/ἔταττον: they were arranging

fut.	τάξω: I will arrange
ao. act.	ἔταξε: he arranged
ao. mid.	ἐτάξαντο: they arranged themselves
ao. pas.	ἐτάχθησαν: they were arranged
perf. mid.	τέταγμαi: I arranged myself/ was arranged
plupf. mid/pas:	(ἐ)τετάχατο: they had arranged themselves/ had been arranged

[18] Ἀναστρέψαντες δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς διώξεως δύο τρόπαια ἐστήσαμεν, τὸ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀραχνίων τῆς πεζομαχίας, τὸ δὲ τῆς ἀερομαχίας ἐπὶ τῶν νεφῶν. ἄρτι δὲ τούτων γινομένων ἡγγέλλοντο ὑπὸ τῶν σκοπῶν οἱ Νεφελοκένταυροι προσελαύνοντες, οὓς ἔδει πρὸ τῆς μάχης ἐλθεῖν τῷ Φαέθοντι. καὶ δὴ ἐφαίνοντο προσιόντες, θέαμα παραδοξότατον, ἐξ ἵππων πτερωτῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων συγκείμενοι· μέγεθος δὲ τῶν μὲν ἀνθρώπων ὅσον τοῦ Ῥοδίων κολοσσοῦ ἐξ ἡμισείας ἐς τὸ ἄνω, τῶν δὲ ἵππων ὅσον νεῶς μεγάλης φορτίδος. τὸ μέντοι πλήθος αὐτῶν οὐκ ἀνέγραψα, μὴ τῷ καὶ ἄπιστον δόξῃ - τοσοῦτον ἦν. ἡγείτο δὲ

ἀγγέλλω: to bear a message
ἀερομαχία, ἡ: an air battle
ἀναγράφω: to write down, record
ἀναστρέφω: to turn back, return
ἄπιστος, -ον: unbelievable
ἀράχνιον, τό: a spider's web
ἄρτι: just then
δίωξις, -εως, ἡ: chase, pursuit
θέαμα, -ατος, τό: a sight, spectacle
ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, mare
κολοσσός, ὁ: a colossus
μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight
ναῦς, νεῶς, ἡ: a ship
Νεφελοκένταυρος, ὁ: a Cloud-centaur

νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud
παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical
πεζομαχία, ἡ: an infantry battle
πλήθος, -εος, τό: size
προσελαύνω: to drive, advance
πτερωτός, -ή, -όν: feathered
Ῥόδιος, -α, -ον: Rhodian, from Rhodes
σκοπός, ὁ: a lookout, watcher
σύγκειμαι: to combine
τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οὔτο: so large, so much
τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy
φορτίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a ship of burden, merchantman

ἐστήσαμεν: ao. act. of ἵστημι, "we set up"

δύο τρόπαια: "two trophies." Trophies were piles of weapons that marked the turning point (τρόπος) of the battle.

ἄρτι δὲ τούτων γινομένων: gen. abs., "these things were just happening"

ἡγγέλλοντο: impf. pas. of ἀγγέλλω, "they were reported to be advancing"

οὓς ἔδει...ἐλθεῖν: "for whom it was necessary to come"

προσιόντες: pr. part. of προσέρχομαι, "approaching they came into sight"

συγκείμενοι: pr. part., "being composed"

ὅσον τοῦ Ῥοδίων κολοσσοῦ: "as big as the Colossus of Rhodes," an enormous statue straddling the entrance to the harbor at Rhodes, one of the ancient wonders of the world.

τῶν μὲν ἀνθρώπων: "of the human part"

ἐξ ἡμισείας: "from the waist"

οὐκ ἀνέγραψα: ao. 1. s. of ἀνα-γράφω, "I didn't write down"

μὴ τῷ (=τινι)...δόξῃ: neg. purpose clause, "lest it seem to anyone"

αὐτῶν ὁ ἐκ τοῦ ζῳδιακοῦ τοξότης. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθοντο τοὺς φίλους
νενικημένους, ἐπὶ μὲν τὸν Φαέθοντα ἔπεμπον ἀγγελίαν αὐθις
ἐπιέναι, αὐτοὶ δὲ διαταξάμενοι τεταραγμένοις ἐπιπίπτουσι τοῖς
Σεληνίταις, ἀτάκτως περὶ τὴν δῖωξιν καὶ τὰ λάφυρα
διεσκεδασμένοις· καὶ πάντας μὲν τρέπουσιν, αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν βασιλέα
καταδιώκουσι πρὸς τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὰ πλείστα τῶν ὀρνέων αὐτοῦ
κτείνουσιν· ἀνέσπασαν δὲ καὶ τὰ τρόπαια καὶ κατέδραμον ἅπαν
τὸ ὑπὸ τῶν ἀραχνῶν πεδῖον ὑφασμένον, ἐμὲ δὲ καὶ δύο τινὰς τῶν
ἐταίρων ἐζώγρησαν. ἤδη δὲ παρῆν καὶ ὁ Φαέθων καὶ αὐθις ἄλλα
τρόπαια ὑπ' ἐκείνων ἵστατο.

ἀγγελία, ἡ: a message, tidings, news
αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, see
ἀνασπάω: to pluck up, take up
ἅπας: whole, all, entire
ἀράχνης, -ου, ὁ: a spider
ἄτακτος, -ον: not in battle-order
βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
διασκεδάννυμι: to scatter, disperse
διατάσσω: to draw up, arrange
δίωξις, -εως, ἡ: chase, pursuit
ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon
ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate
ζωγρέω: to take alive, take captive
ζωδιακός, ὁ: the zodiac
καταδιώκω: to pursue closely

κατατρέχω: to run down
κτείνω: to kill, slay
λάφυρα, τά: spoils
νικάω: to conquer, prevail
ὄρνειον, τό: a bird
πεδῖον, τό: a plain, flat
πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
Σεληνίτης, ὁ: Moonite
ταράσσω: to stir up, trouble
τοξότης, -ου, ὁ: a bowman, archer
τρέπω: to turn
τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy
ὑφαίνω: to weave
Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon
φίλος, ὁ: a friend

ὁ ἐκ τοῦ ζῳδιακοῦ τοξότης: i.e. the constellation Sagittarius
ἦσθοντο: ao. of αἰσθάνομαι, "they perceived"
τοὺς φίλους νενικημένους: pf. part. in ind. st., "that their friends were defeated"
ἔπεμπον...ἐπιέναι: indirect command, "sent a message to attack"
ἐπιέναι: pr. inf. of ἐπέρχομαι
διαταξάμενοι: ao. part. mid. of δια-τάσσω, "having arrayed themselves"
ἐπιπίπτουσι: vivid present, "they fall upon"
τεταραγμένοις: perf. part. dat. pl. of ταραττω, "disordered," modifying
Σεληνίταις
διεσκεδασμένοις: perf. part. pas. dat. pl. of διασκεδάννυμι, "scattered"
αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν βασιλέα: "the king himself"
ἀνέσπασαν: ao. 3 pl. of ἀνασπάω, "they plucked up"
κατέδραμον: ao. 3 pl. of κατατρέχω, "they overran"
ὑφασμένον: perf. part. pas. of ὑφαίνω, "woven field"
ἐζώγρησαν: ao. 3 pl. of ζωγρέω, "they captured alive"
ἵστατο: impf. pas. of ἵστημι, "were being set up"

Ἡμεῖς μὲν οὖν ἀπηγόμεθα ἐς τὸν ἥλιον αὐθήμερον τῷ χεῖρε
ὀπίσω δεθέντες ἀραχνίου ἀποκόμματι. [19] οἱ δὲ πολιορκεῖν μὲν
οὐκ ἔγνωσαν τὴν πόλιν, ἀναστρέψαντες δὲ τὸ μεταξὺ τοῦ ἀέρος
ἀπετείχιζον, ὥστε μηκέτι τὰς αὐγὰς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου πρὸς τὴν
σελήνην διήκειν. τὸ δὲ τεῖχος ἦν διπλοῦν, νεφελωτόν· ὥστε σαφὴς
ἔκλειψις τῆς σελήνης ἐγεγόνει καὶ νυκτὶ διηνεκεῖ πᾶσα κατείχετο.
πιεζόμενος δὲ τούτοις ὁ Ἐνδυμίων πέμψας ἰκέτευε καθαιρεῖν τὸ
οἰκοδόμημα καὶ μὴ σφᾶς περιορᾶν ἐν σκότῳ βιοτεύοντας,

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
ἀναστρέφω: to turn back
ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off
ἀπόκομμα, -ατος, τό: a splinter, shred
ἀποτειχίζω: to wall off
ἀράχνιον, τό: a spider's web
αὐγή, ἡ: sunlight
αὐθήμερος, -ον: on the very day
βιοτεύω: to live
γινώσκω: to know
διήκω: to extend, reach
διηνεκῆς, -ές: continuous, unbroken
διπλός, -η, -ον: twofold, double
ἔκλειψις, -εως, ἡ: eclipse
Ἐνδυμίων, ὁ: Endymion
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun
ἰκετεύω: to beg

καθαίρω: to take down
κατέχω: to hold fast, enshroud
μηκέτι: no longer
νεφελωτός, -ή, -όν: made of clouds
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ: night
οἰκοδόμημα, -ατος, τό: a building,
structure
ὀπίσω: backwards
πέμπω: to send, dispatch
πιέζω: to press
πολιορκέω: to besiege
σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon
σκότος, -εος, ὁ: darkness, gloom
τεῖχος, -εος, τό: a wall
χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ: a hand

τῷ χεῖρε: dual acc. of respect, "by the hands"
δεθέντες: ao. part. pas. of δέω, "bound"
ἀποκόμματι: dat. of means, "with a piece of web"
ἔγνωσαν: aor. of γινώσκω, "they decided"
ἀπετείχιζον: impf. of ἀποτειχίζω, "they built"
ὥστε...διήκειν: result clause, "so that they didn't reach through (to)"
διήκειν: from δια-ἦκω
ὥστε...ἐγεγόνει...κατείχετο: result clauses with the indicative emphasize the
actual result
ἐγεγόνει: pluperf. of γίγνομαι, "there was an eclipse"
κατείχετο: impf. of κατα-έχω, "everything was enshrouded"
πέμψας: ao. part. instrumental, "by sending"
καθαιρεῖν: inf. of κατα-αἰρέω, in ind. com. after ἰκέτευε, "to pull down"
σφᾶς: acc. pl., "them"
περιορᾶν: inf. of περι-ὀράω, also after ἰκέτευε, "not to overlook" and hence "not
to allow"

ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ καὶ φόρους τελέσειν καὶ σύμμαχος ἔσεσθαι καὶ μηκέτι πολεμήσειν, καὶ ὁμήρους ἐπὶ τούτοις δοῦναι ἤθελεν. οἱ δὲ περὶ τὸν Φαέθοντα γενομένης δις ἐκκλησίας τῇ προτεραίᾳ μὲν οὐδὲν παρέλυσαν τῆς ὀργῆς, τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ μετέγνωσαν, καὶ ἐγένετο ἡ εἰρήνη ἐπὶ τούτοις·

[20] Κατὰ τάδε συνθήκας ἐποιήσαντο Ἡλιῶται καὶ οἱ σύμμαχοι πρὸς Σεληνίτας καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους, ἐπὶ τῷ καταλύσαι μὲν Ἡλιώτας τὸ διατείχισμα καὶ μηκέτι ἐς τὴν σελήνην ἐσβάλλειν, ἀποδοῦναι δὲ καὶ τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ῥήτου ἕκαστον χρήματος, τοὺς δὲ Σεληνίτας ἀφείναι μὲν αὐτονόμους τοὺς γε

αἰχμάλωτος, -ον: taken prisoner
ἀποδίδωμι: to give back, return
αὐτόνομος, -ον: independent, autonomous
ἀφίημι: to release, allow
διατείχισμα, -ατος, τό: a dividing wall
δίδωμι: to give
δῖς: twice, doubly
ἐθέλω: to wish
εἰρήνη, ἡ: peace
εἰσβάλλω: to throw into, invade
ἐκκλησία, ἡ: an assembly
Ἡλιώτης, ὁ: Sunite
καταλύω: to put down, destroy
μεταγινώσκω: to change one's mind,
repent
μηκέτι: no more, no longer

ὄμηρος, ὁ: a hostage
ὀργή, ἡ: anger
παρὰλύω: to loose, slacken
προτεραῖος, -α, -ον: on the first day
ῥήτος, -ή, -όν: stated, specified
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon
Σεληνίτης, ὁ: Moonite
σύμμαχος, ὁ: an ally
σύμμαχος, ὁ: an ally
συνθήκη, ἡ: an agreement, treaty
τελέω: to complete, fulfill, accomplish
ὑπισχνέομαι: to promise
ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον: on the next day
φόρος, ὁ: a tribute
χρήμα, -ατος, τό: an amount of money,
ransom

ὑπισχνεῖτο: impf. of ὑπισχνέομαι, "he promised," taking the future infinitives
τελέσειν, ἔσεσθαι, πολεμήσειν

A treaty is arranged between the two parties.

γενομένης δις ἐκκλησίας: ao. part. in gen abs. "the assembly having met twice."

For the change of heart, compare the Mytilenian debate in Thucydides (3, 36).

Particulars of the settlement recall the Athenian-Spartan treaty in Thucydides 5, 18.

παρέλυσαν: ao. of παρα-λύω, "they destroyed"

μετέγνωσαν: ao. from μετα-γινώσκω, "they relented"

κατὰ τάδε: "according to the following terms"

ἐπὶ τῷ + infinitive: "on the condition that," governing all the infinitives that follow

ἀποδοῦναι: ao. inf. of ἀποδίδωμι "that they hand over"

ἀφείναι: pr. inf. of ἀφίημι, "that they allow"

αὐτονόμους: pred. adj., "to be autonomous"

ἄλλους ἀστέρας, ὅπλα δὲ μὴ ἐπιφέρειν τοῖς Ἡλιώταις, συμμαχεῖν δὲ τῇ ἀλλήλων, ἣν τις ἐπίη· φόρον δὲ ὑποτελεῖν ἐκάστου ἔτους τὸν βασιλέα τῶν Σεληνιτῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ τῶν Ἡλιωτῶν δρόσου ἀμφορέας μυρίους, καὶ ὁμήρους δὲ σφῶν αὐτῶν δοῦναι μυρίους, τὴν δὲ ἀποικίαν τὴν ἐς τὸν Ἑωσφόρον κοινῇ ποιεῖσθαι, καὶ μετέχειν τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον· ἐγγράψαι δὲ τὰς συνθήκας στήλῃ ἡλεκτρίνῃ καὶ ἀναστήσαι ἐν μέσῳ τῷ ἀέρι ἐπὶ τοῖς μεθορίοις. ὤμοσαν δὲ Ἡλιωτῶν μὲν Πυρωνίδης καὶ Θερεΐτης καὶ Φλόγιος, Σεληνιτῶν δὲ Νύκτωρ καὶ Μήνιος καὶ Πολυλάμψης.

ἀμφορεύς, -έως: an amphora, jar
ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up
ἀποικία, ἡ: a settlement, colony
ἀστήρ, -έρος, ὁ: a star
βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
δίδωμι: to give
δρόσος, ἡ: dew
ἐγγράφω: to inscribe
ἐπέρχομαι: to attack
ἐπιφέρω: bear up, carry upon
ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
Ἑωσφόρος, ὁ: Morning Star
ἡλεκτρίνος, -η, -ον: made of amber
Ἡλιώτης, ὁ: Sunite

κοινός, -ή, -όν: in common
μεθόριος, -α, -ον: lying between as a boundary
μετέχω: to share in
μυρίος, -ος, -ον: ten thousand
ὄμηρος, ὁ: a hostage
ὄμνυμι: to swear
ὄπλον, τό: a tool, weapon
Σεληνίτης, ὁ: Moonite
στήλῃ, ἡ: a block of stone
συμμαχέω: to be an ally with (+ gen.)
συνθήκη, ἡ: a composition, term
ὑποτελέω: to pay
φόρος, ὁ: a tribute

συμμαχεῖν τῇ (sc. γῆ): “that they be allies on the (land)”

ἣν τις ἐπίη: general condition, “if anyone attacks”

ἐπίη: pr. subj. 3. s of ἐπέρχομαι

ἐκάστου ἔτους: “each year”

δρόσου ἀμφορέας μυρίους: “10,000 jars of dew”

δοῦναι: ao. inf., “that they give”

κοινῇ ποιεῖσθαι: “that they make in common”

ἀναστήσαι: ao. act. inf. of ἀνα-ίστημι, “that they set up”

ὤμοσαν: ao. 3 pl. of ὄμνυμι, “they swore”

For the Sunnites: Firebrace, Parcher and Burns

For the Moonites : Darkling, Moony and Allbright

Result clauses

ὥστε introduces result clauses either with an infinitive or with a finite verb.

ὥστε + infinitive indicates a possible or intended result, without emphasizing its actual occurrence. The infinitive does not express time, but only aspect.

ὥστε + indicative indicates that the result actually occurred as a fact. Both time and aspect are indicated by the form of the verb. Any form of the verb that can be used in a main clause (e.g., potential optative) can be used with ὥστε.

[21] Τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο· εὐθὺς δὲ τὸ τεῖχος καθηρέϊτο καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ἀπέδωσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικόμεθα ἐς τὴν σελήνην, ὑπηντίαζον ἡμᾶς καὶ ἡσπάζοντο μετὰ δακρῶν οἳ τε ἑταῖροι καὶ ὁ Ἐνδυμίων αὐτός. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἡξίου με μείναι τε παρ' αὐτῷ καὶ κοινωνεῖν τῆς ἀποικίας, ὑπισχνούμενος δώσειν πρὸς γάμον τὸν ἑαυτοῦ παῖδα· γυναῖκες γὰρ οὐκ εἰσὶ παρ' αὐτοῖς. ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδαμῶς ἐπειθόμην, ἀλλ' ἡξίου ἀποπεμφθῆναι κάτω ἐς τὴν θάλατταν. ὥς δὲ ἔγνων ἀδύνατον ὄν πείθειν, ἀποπέμπει ἡμᾶς ἐστιάσας ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας.

ἀδύνατος, -ον: unable, impossible
αἰχμάλωτος, -ον: taken prisoner
ἀξιόω: to think worthy, expect
ἀποδίδωμι: to give back, return
ἀποικία, ἡ: a settlement, colony
ἀποπέμπω: to send away, to dismiss
ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet, bid
farewell
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
γάμος, ὁ: a wedding
γινώσκω: to know
γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman
δάκρυον, τό: a tear
δίδωμι: to give
εἰρήνη, ἡ: peace
ἑπτὰ: seven

ἐστιάω: to entertain as a guest
ἑταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion
εὐθὺς: immediately, at once
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea
καθαίρω: to take down
κάτω: down
κοινωνέω: to have a share in, take part in
οὐδαμῶς: in no way
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a son
πείθω: to win over, persuade
σελήνη, ἡ: the moon
τεῖχος, -εος, τό: a wall
ὑπαντιάζω: to encounter
ὑπισχνέομαι: to promise

καθηρέϊτο: impf. of κατα-αίρέω, “was torn down”
ἀπέδωσαν: ao. 3 pl. of ἀποδίδωμι, “they returned”
ἀφικόμεθα: ao. “we arrived”
ὑπηντίαζον: impf. of ὑπο-ἀντιάζω, “they greeted”
ἡξίου: impf. 3 s. of ἀξιόω, “he requested” + inf.
δώσειν: fut. inf of δίδωμι after ὑπισχνούμενος, “promising to give”
τὸν ἑαυτοῦ παῖδα: “his own son”
οὐ ἐπειθόμην: impf. pas. “I was not persuaded”
ἡξίου: impf. 1 s. of ἀξιόω, “I requested” + inf.
ἀποπεμφθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. of ἀποπέμπω, “to be sent away”
ἔγνων: ao. 3 s. of γινώσκω, “he realized”
ἀδύνατον ὄν: pr. part. in ind. st. after ἔγνων, “that it was impossible”
ἐστιάσας: ao. part. nom. s. of ἐστιάω, “having entertained as a guest”

[22] Ἄ δὲ ἐν τῷ μεταξύ διατρίβων ἐν τῇ σελήνῃ κατενόησα καινὰ καὶ παράδοξα, ταῦτα βούλομαι εἰπεῖν. πρῶτα μὲν τὸ μὴ ἐκ γυναικῶν γεννᾶσθαι αὐτούς, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τῶν ἀρρένων· γάμοις γὰρ τοῖς ἄρρεσι χρώνται καὶ οὐδὲ ὄνομα γυναικὸς ὅλως ἴσασι. μέχρι μὲν οὖν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι ἐτῶν γαμεῖται ἕκαστος, ἀπὸ δὲ τούτων γαμεῖ αὐτός· κύουσι δὲ οὐκ ἐν τῇ νηδύϊ, ἀλλ' ἐν ταῖς γαστροκνημίαις· ἐπειδὴν γὰρ συλλάβῃ τὸ ἔμβρυον, παχύνεται ἡ κνήμη, καὶ χρόνῳ ὕστερον ἀνατεμόντες ἐξάγουσι νεκρά, θέντες δὲ αὐτὰ πρὸς τὸν ἄνεμον κεχηνότα ζωοποιοῦσιν. δοκεῖ δέ μοι καὶ

ἀνατέμνω: to cut open

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind

ἄρσιν, ὁ: male

γαμέομαι: to be married

γάμος, ὁ: a wedding

γαστροκνημία, ἡ: calf

γεννάω: to beget, give birth

γυνή, -αῖκος, ἡ: a woman

διατρίβω: to spend time

ἔμβρυον, τό: a young one

ἐξάγω: to lead out

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year, age

ζωοποιέω: to give life

καινός, -ή, -όν: new, strange

κατανοέω: to observe

κνήμη, ἡ: the shin

κύω: to conceive

μεταξύ: between + gen.

νεκρός, ὁ: a corpse, dead body

νηδύς, -ύος, ἡ: the belly

οἶδα: to know

ὅλως: completely

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name

παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical

παχύνω: to thicken, fatten

σελήνη, ἡ: the moon

συλλαμβάνω: to collect, conceive

χάσκω: to have one's mouth open, yawn

χράομαι: to use

χρόνος, ὁ: time

The author gives an ethnographical report reminiscent of Ctesias and Herodotus.

ἃ δὲ ἐν τῷ μεταξύ: "as for what happened in the interval"

κατενόησα: ao. of κατανοέω, "I observed"

τὸ μὴ γεννᾶσθαι: ao. pas. articular inf. of γεννάω, "the fact that they are not born"

ἄρρεσι: dat. pl. with χρώνται, "they use males"

ἴσασι: pr. 3 pl. of οἶδα, "they know"

γαμεῖται: "is married" vs. γαμεῖ "marries"

γαστροκνημία: "calf," lit. "the belly of the shin"

ἐπειδὴν (ἐπειδὴ + ἄν) συλλάβῃ: ao. subj. of συλλαμβάνω in general temporal clause, "whenever he conceives"

ἀνατεμόντες: ao. part. nom. pl. of ἀποτέμνω, "having cut"

θέντες: ao. part. of τίθημι, "having placed"

κεχηνότα: perf. part. acc. pl. n. of χάσκω, modifying αὐτὰ (νεκρά), "(with mouths) gaping"

ἐς τοὺς Ἑλλήνας ἐκείθεν ἦκειν τῆς γαστροκνημίας τοῦνομα, ὅτι παρ' ἐκείνοις ἀντὶ γαστρὸς κυοφορεῖ. μείζον δὲ τούτου ἄλλο διηγῆσομαι. γένος ἐστὶ παρ' αὐτοῖς ἀνθρώπων οἱ καλούμενοι Δενδρίται, γίνεται δὲ τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον. ὄρχιν ἀνθρώπου τὸν δεξιὸν ἀποτεμόντες ἐν γῇ φυτεύουσιν, ἐκ δὲ αὐτοῦ δένδρον ἀναφύεται μέγιστον, σάρκινον, οἷον φαλλός· ἔχει δὲ καὶ κλάδους καὶ φύλλα· ὁ δὲ καρπὸς ἐστὶ βάλανοι πηχυαῖοι τὸ μέγεθος.

αναφύομαι: to grow out, produce
ἀποτέμνω: to cut off, sever
βάλανος, ἡ: an acorn
γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: the belly
γαστροκνημία, ἡ: calf
γένος, -οῦς, τό: race, kind
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth, land
Δενδρίτης, ὁ: Arboreal
δένδρον, τό: a tree
ἐκείθεν: from that place, thence
Ἑλλήνος: Greek
ἦκω: to come
καλέω: to call

καρπός, ὁ: fruit
κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a branch
κυοφορέω: to be pregnant
μείζων, ον: greater
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name
ὄρχις, -ιος, ὁ: a testicle
πηχυαῖος, -α, -ον: a cubit long
σάρκινος, -η, -ον: of flesh
τρόπος, ὁ: a way, manner
φαλλός, ὁ: a phallus
φύλλον, τό: a leaf
φυτεύω: to plant

τούτου: gen. of comparison after μείζον, "greater than this"

διηγῆσομαι: fut. "I will narrate"

τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον: acc. of respect, "in the following manner"

ἀποτεμόντες: ao. part., "having cut off"

τὸ μέγεθος: aacc. of respect, "in size"

Indirect statement after verbs of knowing, perceiving, hearing or showing

Some verbs take the accusative + participle construction for indirect speech instead of accusative + infinitive. If the subject of the participle is the same as the subject of the main clause that governs the indirect discourse, the nominative is used instead of the accusative (if it is expressed) and the participle will agree with it. No matter which construction is used, translate indirect statement with "that" plus a finite verb.

ἤσθοντο τοὺς φίλους νενικημένους: they saw that their friends had been captured.

ἤσθοντο (αὐτοί) νενικήμενοι: they saw that they (themselves) had been captured.

ἐπειδὴν οὖν πεπανθῶσιν, τρυγήσαντες αὐτὰς ἐκκολάπτουσι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. αἰδοῖα μέντοι πρόσθετα ἔχουσιν, οἱ μὲν ἐλεφάντινα, οἱ δὲ πένητες αὐτῶν ξύλινα, καὶ διὰ τούτων ὀχεύουσι καὶ πλησιάζουσι τοῖς γαμέταις τοῖς ἐαυτῶν. [23] ἐπειδὴν δὲ γηράσῃ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, οὐκ ἀποθνήσκει, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ καπνὸς διαλυόμενος ἀήρ γίνεται. τροφή δὲ πᾶσιν ἡ αὕτη· ἐπειδὴν γὰρ πῦρ ἀνακαύσωσιν, βατράχους ὀπτῶσιν ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνθράκων· πολλοὶ δὲ παρ' αὐτοῖς εἰσιν ἐν τῷ ἀέρι πετόμενοι· ὀπτωμένων δὲ περικαθεσθέντες ὥσπερ δὴ περὶ τράπεζαν κάπτουσι τὸν ἀναθυμιώμενον καπνὸν

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals
ἀναθυμιάω: to rise
ἀνακαίω: to light up
ἄνθραξ, -ακος, ὁ: charcoal, coal
ἀποθνήσκω: to die
βάτραχος, ὁ: a frog
γαμέτης, -ου, ὁ: a spouse
γηράσκω: to grow old, become old
διαλύω: to disperse
ἐκκολάπτω: to scrape out
ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: ivory
καπνός, ὁ: smoke

κάπτω: to gulp down
ξύλινος, -η, -ον: wooden
ὀπτάω: to roast, broil
ὀχεύω: to mount
πένης, -ητος, ὁ: a poor man
πεπαίνω: to ripen
πέτομαι: to fly
πλησιάζω: to bring near, complete
πρόσθετος, -ον: added on
τράπεζα, -ης, ἡ: a table
τροφή, ἡ: nourishment, food
τρυγάω: to gather

ἐπειδὴν πεπανθῶσιν: ao. pas. subj. of πεπαίνω in general temporal clause, “whenever they have bloomed”

τρυγήσαντες: ao. part. of τρυγάω, “having harvested”

ὀχεύουσι: “they mount”

πλησιάζουσι: “they have intercourse”

ἐπειδὴν γηράσῃ: general temporal clause, “whenever they grow old”

γηράσῃ: ao. subj. of γηράω

ὁ ἄνθρωπος: the definite article is generic rather than particular, i.e. “men” as a class, not “the man”

διαλυόμενος: pr. part. mid., “dissolved”

ἀνακαύσωσιν: aor. subj. of ἀνακαίω, in gen. temp. clause, “whenever they burn”

εἰσιν πετόμενοι: periphrastic, “are flying”

ὀπτωμένων (sc. αὐτῶν): gen. abs., “while they are cooking”

περικαθεσθέντες: ao. part. pas. of περι-κατα-ἕζομαι, “sitting down around”

ἀναθυμιώμενον: pr. part. acc. s. of ἀναθυμιάω, “rising”

καὶ εὖωχούνται. σίτω μὲν δὴ τρέφονται τοιούτω· ποτὸν δὲ αὐτοῖς
ἐστὶν ἀήρ ἀποθλιβόμενος εἰς κύλικά καὶ ὕγρον ἀνιείς ὥσπερ
δρόσον. οὐ μὴν ἀπουροῦσιν γε καὶ ἀφοδεύουσιν, ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ
τέτρηνται ἥπερ ἡμεῖς, οὐδὲ τὴν συνουσίαν οἱ παῖδες ἐν ταῖς
ἔδραις παρέχουσιν, ἀλλ’ ἐν ταῖς ἰγνύαις ὑπὲρ τὴν γαστροκνημίαν·
ἐκεῖ γάρ εἰσι τετρημένοι.

Καλὸς δὲ νομίζεται παρ’ αὐτοῖς ἣν πού τις φαλακρὸς καὶ
ἄκομος ἦ, τοὺς δὲ κομήτας καὶ μυσάττονται. ἐπὶ δὲ τῶν κομητῶν
ἀστέρων τοῦναντίον τοὺς κομήτας καλοὺς νομίζουσιν· ἐπεδήμουν
γάρ τινες, οἳ καὶ περὶ ἐκείνων διηγούντο. καὶ μὴν καὶ γένεια

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
ἄκομος, -ον: hairless
ἀνήμι: to send forth, produce
ἀποθλίβω: to press, squeeze out
ἀπουρέω: pass urine
ἀστήρ, -έρος, ὁ: a star
ἀφοδεύω: to discharge excrement
γαστροκνημία, ἡ: calf
γένειον, τό: a chin, beard
δρόσος, ἡ: dew
ἔδρα, ἡ: the rear
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place
ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite
ἐπιδημέω: to be at home, live
εὖωχέω: to eat abundantly
ἥπερ: in the same way as

ἰγνύς: the back of the knee
καλός, ὁ: beauty
κομήτης, -ου, ὁ: long-haired
κύλιξ, -ικος, ἡ: a drinking cup
μυσάττομαι: to feel disgust at
νομίζω: to believe, hold as a custom
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a boy
παρέχω: to furnish, provide
ποτόν, τό: a drink
σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions
συνουσία, ἡ: intercourse
τετραίνω: to perforate
τρέφω: to nourish
ὕγρός, -ά, -όν: wet, fluid
φαλακρός, -ά, -όν: bald

ἀποθλιβόμενος: pr. part. modifying ἀήρ, “being squeezed”
ἀνιείς: pr. part. nom. s. ἀνα-ΐημι, modifying ἀήρ, “producing”
ἀπουροῦσιν: from ἀπο-ουρέω, “they do not urinate”
ἀφοδεύουσιν: “they do not poop”
τέτρηνται: perf. 3 pl. pas. of τετραίνω, “they are perforated”
ἥπερ ἡμεῖς: “where we are”
ἐν ταῖς ἔδραις: “in their rears”
εἰσι τετρημένοι: periphrastic perf. “they are perforated”
ἣν πού τις...ἦ: pres. general condition, “if anyone is...”
κομητῶν ἀστέρων: “long-haired stars,” i.e., “comets”
τοῦναντίον (τὸ ἐναντίον): “(it is) the opposite”
ἐπεδήμουν: impf. of ἐπι-δημέω, “some traveled”
διηγούντο: impf. of διηγέομαι, “they told me”

φύουσιν μικρὸν ὑπὲρ τὰ γόνατα. καὶ ὄνυχας ἐν τοῖς ποσὶν οὐκ ἔχουσιν, ἀλλὰ πάντες εἰσὶν μονοδάκτυλοι. ὑπὲρ δὲ τὰς πυγὰς ἐκάστω αὐτῶν κράμβη ἐκπέφυκε μακρὰ ὥσπερ οὐρά, θάλλουσα ἐς αἰὲ καὶ ὑπτίου ἀναπίπτοντος οὐ κατακλωμένη. [24] ἀπομύττονται δὲ μέλι δριμύτατον· κάπειδαν ἢ πονῶσιν ἢ γυμνάζονται, γάλακτι πᾶν τὸ σῶμα ἰδρῶσιν, ὥστε καὶ τυροὺς ἀπ' αὐτοῦ πῆγνυσθαι, ὀλίγον τοῦ μέλιτος ἐπιστάξαντες· ἔλαιον δὲ

αἰὲ: always, forever

ἀναπίπτω: to fall back

ἀπομύττω: to have a runny nose

γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk

γόνυ, τό: the knee

γυμνάζω: to train naked, take exercise

δριμύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sharp, pungent

ἐκφύω: to grow from

ἔλαιον, -ον, τό: olive-oil

ἐπειδάν: whenever

ἐπιστάζω: to let fall in drops, instill

θάλλω: to bloom

ιδρῶω: to sweat, perspire

κατακλάω: to break, snap off

κράμβη, ἡ: cabbage

μέλι, -ιτος, τό: honey

μονοδάκτυλος, -ον: one-fingered

ὄνυξ, -υχος, ό: a nail, claw

οὐρά, ἡ: the tail

πῆγνυμι: to form together, congeal

πονέω: to work hard, do work

πούς, ποδός, ό: a foot

πυγή, -ῆς, ἡ: the rump, buttocks

σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body

τυρός, ό: cheese

ὑπτίος, -α, -ον: backward

φύω: to produce, grow

ὑπὲρ δὲ τὰς πυγὰς: “over the rump”

ἐκπέφυκε: perf. 3 s. of ἐκ-φύω, “has grown out”

ὥσπερ οὐρά: “like a tail”

ἐς αἰὲ: “forever”

ὑπτίου ἀναπίπτοντος: gen abs. with conditional force, “if falling down on the back”

κατακλωμένη: pr. part. of κατακλάω, “breaking”

κάπειδαν ἢ πονῶσιν ἢ γυμνάζονται: pr. subj. in general temporal clauses, “whenever they work or exercise”

πᾶν τὸ σῶμα: acc. of respect, “the whole body”

ὥστε...πῆγνυσθαι: result clause, “so that cheese can be made”

ἐπιστάξαντες: ao. part. act. of ἐπιστάζω, with instrumental force, “by letting drip”

General conditions and temporal clauses

A present general condition has ἐάν (Attic ἤν) + subj. in the protasis; present indicative in the apodosis.

A general or indefinite temporal clause in the present has the same form, with **δταν** or **ἐπειδάν** (whenever) instead of ἐάν.

ἐπειδάν γηράσῃ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, οὐκ ἀποθνήσκει: When(ever) men become old, they do not die.

ἐάν γηράσῃ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, οὐκ ἀποθνήσκει: If (ever) men become old, they do not die.

ποιοῦνται ἀπὸ τῶν κρομμύων πάννυ λιπαρόν τε καὶ εὐώδες ὥσπερ
 μύρον. ἀμπέλους δὲ πολλὰς ἔχουσιν ὑδροφόρους· αἱ γὰρ ῥᾶγες
 τῶν βοτρυῶν εἰσὶν ὥσπερ χάλαζα, καί, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, ἐπειδὴν
 ἐμπεσὼν ἄνεμος διασειῇ τὰς ἀμπέλους ἐκείνας, τότε πρὸς ἡμᾶς
 καταπίπτει ἢ χάλαζα διαρραγόντων τῶν βοτρυῶν. τῇ μέντοι
 γαστρὶ ὅσα πήρα χρῶνται τιθέντες ἐν αὐτῇ ὅσων δέονται·
 ἀνοικτὴ γὰρ αὐτοῖς αὕτη καὶ πάλιν κλειστή ἐστίν· ἐντέρων δὲ
 οὐδὲν ὑπάρχειν αὐτῇ φαίνεται, ἢ τοῦτο μόνον, ὅτι δασεῖα πᾶσα
 ἔντοσθε καὶ λάσιός ἐστιν, ὥστε καὶ τὰ νεογνά, ἐπειδὴν ῥιγῶσι, ἐς
 ταύτην ὑποδύεται.

ἄμπελος, ἡ: a vine

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind

ἀνοικτός, -ή, -όν: opened

βότρυον, τό: a cluster of grapes

γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: the belly

δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: hairy, shaggy

διαρρήγνυμι: to burst, break apart

διασειώ: to shake violently

ἐμπίτνω: fall upon

ἐντερον, τό: an intestine

ἐντοσθε: within, inside

εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant

καταπίπτω: to fall or drop down

κλειστός, -ή, -όν: closed

κρόμμυον, -ου, τό: onion

λάσιος, -ος, -ον: furry, woolly

λιπαρός, -ά, -όν: clear, shiny

μύρον, -ου, τό: sweet-oil, myrrh

νεογνός, -ή, -όν: a newborn

πάλιν: again

πήρα, ἡ: a pocket, pouch

ῥάξ, ῥαγός, ἡ: a grape

ῥιγώω: to be cold

τίθημι: to set, put, place

ὑδροφόρος, -ον: carrying-producing

ὑπάρχω: to begin, make a beginning

ὑποδύομαι: to plunge in to

χάλαζα, -ης, ἡ: hail

ὑδροφόρους: modifying ἀμπέλους, “water-producing vines”

ἐπειδὴν...διασειῇ: ao. subj. of διασειώ in general temporal clause, “whenever the wind shakes”

ἐμπεσὼν: ao. part. act. of ἐμ-πίπτω, “falling upon”

διαρραγόντων τῶν βοτρυῶν: pr. part. in gen. abs., “the bunches bursting”

ὅσα πήρα: “just like a purse”

ἐντέρων οὐδὲν: “nothing of entrails”

ὑπάρχειν αὐτῇ φαίνεται: “appears to be in it”

ἢ τοῦτο μόνον, ὅτι: “except only this, that...”

ὥστε...ὑποδύεται: result clause, “so that they plunge into this”

ἐπειδὴν ῥιγῶσι: ao. subj. in general clause, “whenever they are cold”

[25] Ἐσθὴς δὲ τοῖς μὲν πλουσίοις ὑαλίνῃ μαλθακῇ, τοῖς πένησι δὲ χαλκῇ ὑφαντῇ· πολύχαλκα γὰρ τὰ ἐκεῖ χωρία, καὶ ἐργάζονται τὸν χαλκὸν ὕδατι ἀποβρέξαντες ὥσπερ τὰ ἔρια. περὶ μέντοι τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν, οἷους ἔχουσιν, ὁκνῶ μὲν εἰπεῖν, μή τίς με νομίσῃ ψεύδεσθαι διὰ τὸ ἄπιστον τοῦ λόγου. ὅμως δὲ καὶ τοῦτο ἐρῶ· τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς περιαιρετοὺς ἔχουσι, καὶ ὁ βουλόμενος ἐξελὼν τοὺς αὐτοῦ φυλάττει ἕστ' ἂν δεηθῇ ἰδεῖν· οὕτω δὲ ἐνθέμενος ὁρᾷ· καὶ πολλοὶ τοὺς σφετέρους ἀπολέσαντες παρ' ἄλλων χρησάμενοι ὁρῶσιν. εἰσὶ δ' οἱ καὶ πολλοὺς ἀποθέτους

ἄπιστος, -ον: unbelievable

ἀποβρέχω: to wet

ἀπόθετος, -ον: stored up

ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy, lose

ἐκεῖ: there, in that place

ἐντίθημι: to put in

ἐξαιρέω: to take out

ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor

ἔριον, τό: wool

ἐσθῆς, -ῆτος, ῆ: dress, clothing

ἕσται: up to the time that, until

λόγος, ό: a tale, account

μαλθακός, -ή, -όν: soft

νομίζω: to think

ὁκνέω: to shrink from, hesitate

ὀφθαλμός, ό: the eye

πένης, -ητος, ό: poor

περιαιρετός, -ή, -όν: removable

πλούσιος, -α, -ον: rich, wealthy, opulent

πολύχαλκος, -ον: abounding in bronze

σφέτερος, -α, -ον: their

ὑάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

ὑφαντός, -ή, -όν: woven, spun

φυλάττω: to guard, keep safe

χάλκεος, -έα, -εον: bronze

χαλκός, ό: copper

χωρίον, τό: a place, spot

ψεύδω: to lie

ὑαλίνῃ μαλθακῇ: "soft glass"

χαλκῇ ὑφαντῇ: "spun bronze"

τὰ ἐκεῖ χωρία: the def. article makes the adverb an attributive adjective, "the places there"

ἐργάζονται: "they work it"

ἀποβρέξαντες: ao. part. of ἀποβρέχω with instrumental force, "by soaking"

ὥσπερ τὰ ἔρια: "just like wool"

οἷους ἔχουσιν: "what sort (of eyes) they have"

μή τίς με νομίσῃ: ao. subj. of νομίζω in negative purpose clause, "lest anyone think"

ἐρῶ: future of λέγω, "I will say"

ὁ βουλόμενος: "he who wishes"

ἐξελὼν: ao. part. nom. s. of ἐξ-αίρέω, "having removed"

ἕστ' ἂν δεηθῇ: ao. pas. subj. of δέω, indefinite, "until he needs to see" (whenever that may be)

ἐνθέμενος: ao. part. mid. of ἐντίθημι, "having put it in"

ἀπολέσαντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-δύμι, "having lost"

χρησάμενοι: ao. part. of χράομαι, "having borrowed"

εἰσὶ δ' οἱ: "the rich are those who..."

ἔχουσιν, οἱ πλούσιοι. τὰ ὦτα δὲ πλατάνων φύλλα ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς
 πλήν γε τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν βαλάνων· ἐκείνοι γὰρ μόνοι ξύλινα ἔχουσιν.
 [26] καὶ μὴν καὶ ἄλλο θαῦμα ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις ἐθεασάμην·
 κάτοπτρον μέγιστον κεῖται ὑπὲρ φρέατος οὐ πάννυ βαθέος. ἂν μὲν
 οὖν εἰς τὸ φρέαρ καταβῇ τις, ἀκούει πάντων τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν ἐν τῇ
 γῇ λεγομένων, ἐὰν δὲ εἰς τὸ κάτοπτρον ἀποβλέψῃ, πάσας μὲν
 πόλεις, πάντα δὲ ἔθνη ὁρᾷ ὥσπερ ἐφεστῶς ἐκάστοις· τότε καὶ
 τοὺς οἰκείους ἐγὼ ἐθεασάμην καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν πατρίδα, εἰ δὲ
 κἀκεῖνοι ἐμὲ ἐώρων, οὐκέτι ἔχω τὸ ἀσφαλὲς εἰπεῖν. ὅστις δὲ
 ταῦτα μὴ πιστεύει οὕτως ἔχειν, ἂν ποτε καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκείσε
 ἀφίκηται, εἴσεται ὡς ἀληθῆ λέγω.

ἀποβλέπω: to look into
 ἀσφαλής, -ές: firm, certain
 ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
 βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ: deep or high
 βάλανος, ἡ: an acorn
 βασιλεῖον, τό: a royal dwelling, palace
 γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth, land
 ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a people, country
 ἐκείσε: thither, to that place
 ἐφίστημι: to stand upon or by
 θαῦμα, -ατος, τό: a wonder, marvel
 θεάομαι: to look at, view, behold
 καταβαίνω: to step down, go down

κάτοπτρον, τό: a mirror
 κεῖμαι: to be laid, be placed
 ξύλινος, -η, -ον: wooden
 οἰκείος, ό: a relative
 οὖς, ὠτός, τό: an ear
 πάτρη, -ίδος, ἡ: fatherland
 πιστεύω: to trust, believe
 πλάτανος, ἡ: a plane-tree
 πλούσιος, -α, -ον: rich, wealthy
 πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city
 φρέαρ, τό: a well
 φύλλον, τό: a leaf

πλήν γε τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν βαλάνων: "except the men (born) from acorns"
 ἐθεασάμην: ao. 1 s. of θεάομαι, "I saw"
 ἂν...καταβῇ τις: ao. subj. 3 s. of καταβαίνω in pres. general condition, "if anyone goes down"
 παρ' ἡμῖν: "among us"
 ἐὰν...ἀποβλέψῃ: ao. subj. of ἀποβλέπω in pres. general condition, "if someone looks"
 ὥσπερ ἐφεστῶς: perf. part. act. nom. s. of ἐπι-ἵστημι, "as if standing next to" + dat.
 καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους: "also my household"
 ἐώρων: impf. 3 pl. of ὁράω, "I saw"
 ἔχω: "I am able" + inf.
 ἂν...ἀφίκηται, εἴσεται: fut. more vivid condition, "if he gets there, he will know"
 ἀφίκηται: ao. subj. of ἀφικνέομαι
 εἴσεται: fut. of οἶδα

[27] Τότε δ' οὖν ἀσπασάμενοι τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτόν, ἐμβάντες ἀνήχθημεν· ἐμοὶ δὲ καὶ δῶρα ἔδωκεν ὁ Ἐνδυμίων, δύο μὲν τῶν ὑάλινων χιτῶνων, πέντε δὲ χαλκοῦς, καὶ πανοπλίαν θερμίνην, ἃ πάντα ἐν τῷ κήτει κατέλιπον. συνέπεμψε δὲ ἡμῖν καὶ Ἱππογύνους χιλίους παραπέμψοντας ἄχρι σταδίων πεντακοσίων. [28] ἐν δὲ τῷ παράπλῳ πολλὰς μὲν καὶ ἄλλας χώρας παρημείψαμεν, προσέσχομεν δὲ καὶ τῷ Ἑωσφόρῳ ἄρτι συνοικιζομένῳ, καὶ ἀποβάντες ὑδρευσάμεθα. ἐμβάντες δὲ εἰς τὸν ζῳδιακὸν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ παρήειμεν τὸν ἥλιον, ἐν χρῶ τὴν γῆν

ἀμφί: on both sides, around
 ἀριστερός: on the left, to port
 ἄρτι: just now
 ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet, bid
 farewell
 ἄχρι: up to (+ gen.)
 βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
 δῶρον, τό: a gift, present
 ἐμβαίνω: to embark
 Ἐνδυμίων, -ωνος, ὁ: Endymion
 Ἑωσφόρος, ὁ: Morning Star
 ζῳδιακός, ὁ: the zodiac
 θέρμινος, -η, -ον: of lupines
 Ἱππογυνοί, οἱ: vulture-cavalry
 καταλείπω: to leave behind

πανοπλία, ἡ: a suit of armor
 παραμείβω: to pass by
 παραπέμπω: to convey, escort
 παράπλοος, ὁ: a sailing along, a coasting
 voyage
 προσέχω: to put in
 συμπέμπω: to send with
 συνοικίζω: to colonize
 ὑάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass
 ὑδρεύω: to draw water
 χάλκεος, -έα, -εον: of bronze, brazen
 χίλιοι, -αι: a thousand
 χιτῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: a tunic
 χρῶς, ὁ: the surface, edge

Departing from the Moon, they arrive in Lamptown, descending past Cloud-Cuckooland, finally landing on the sea again.

ἀσπασάμενοι: ao. part. of ἀσπάζομαι, “having bid farewell”
 ἐμβάντες: ao. part. of ἐμβαίνω, “having embarked”
 ἀνήχθημεν: ao. pas. 1 pl. ἀνα-ἄγω, “we put out to sea”
 ἔδωκεν: ao. 1 pl. of δίδωμι, “he gave”
 ἃ πάντα ἐν τῷ κήτει κατέλιπον: “all of which I left behind in the whale,”
 anticipating an episode to be narrated next
 συνέπεμψε: ao. 3 s. of συμπέμπω, “he sent along”
 παραπέμψοντας: fut. part. of purpose, “in order to escort”
 παρημείψαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of παρὰ-ἀμείβω, “we passed by”
 προσέσχομεν: ao. 1 pl. of πρὸς-ἔχω, “we put in”
 ἄρτι συνοικιζομένῳ: pr. part., “just now being colonized”
 ἀποβάντες, ἐμβάντες: ao. part. “having disembarked,” “having boarded”
 παρήειμεν: impf. of παρὰ-ἔρχομαι, “we were passing”
 ἐν χρῶ “close to the surface”

παραπλέοντες· οὐ γὰρ ἀπέβημεν καίτοι πολλὰ τῶν ἐταίρων ἐπιθυμούντων, ἀλλ' ὁ ἄνεμος οὐκ ἐφήκεν. ἐθεώμεθα μέντοι τὴν χώραν εὐθαλή τε καὶ πίονα καὶ εὐυδρον καὶ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν μεστήν. ἰδόντες δ' ἡμᾶς οἱ Νεφελοκένταυροι, μισθοφοροῦντες παρὰ τῷ Φαέθοντι, ἐπέπτησαν ἐπὶ τὴν ναῦν, καὶ μαθόντες ἐνσπόνδους ἀνεχώρησαν. [29] ἤδη δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἰππόγυποι ἀπεληλύθεσαν.

Πλεύσαντες δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν, περὶ ἑσπέραν ἀφικόμεθα ἐς τὴν Λυχνόπολιν καλουμένην, ἥδη τὸν κάτω πλοῦν διώκοντες. ἡ δὲ πόλις αὕτη κεῖται μεταξὺ τοῦ Πλειάδων καὶ

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good
ἀναχωρέω: to go back
ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
ἀποβαίνω: to step off, disembark
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive at
διώκω: to pursue
εἶδον: to see
ἐνσπονδος, -ον: included in a treaty
ἐπιθυμέω: to desire
ἑσπέρα, ἡ: evening
εὐθαλής, -ές: blooming, flourishing
εὐυδρος, -ον: well-watered
ἐφίημι: to permit
ἐφίπταμαι: to fly up
θεάομαι: to look on, view, behold
Ἰππόγυποι, οἱ: vulture-cavalry
καίτοι: and indeed
καλέω: to call

κάτω: down, downward
κεῖμαι: to be laid
Λυχνόπολις, ἡ: Lamptown
μανθάνω: to learn
μεστός, -ή, -όν: full, filled
μεταξύ: between + gen.
μισθοφορέω: to receive wages, be in the service of
ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship
Νεφελοκένταυρος, ὁ: a cloud-centaur
παραπλέω: to sail along
πίων, ονος: fertile
Πλειάδες, -ων, αἱ: the Pleiades (a constellation)
πλέω: to sail, go by sea
πλόος, ὁ: a sailing, voyage
Φαέθων, ὁ: Phaethon

οὐκ ἐφήκεν: ao. 3 s. of ἐπι-ἵημι, “did not allow”
ἐθεώμεθα: impf. of θεάομαι, “we saw”
τὴν χώραν (sc. οὖσαν): ind. st. after θεάομαι, “that the land was”
ἰδόντες: ao. part of εἶδον, “having seen”
μισθο-φοροῦντες: pres. part. “being employed for pay”
ἐπέπτησαν: ao. 3 pl. of ἐπι-πέτομαι, “they flew toward”
μαθόντες: ao. part. of μανθάνω, “once they learned”
ἀνεχώρησαν: ao. of ἀναχωρέω, “they retreated”
ἀπεληλύθεσαν: plupf. of ἀπο-έρχομαι, “they had left”
τὴν ἐπιούσαν νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν: acc. of duration of time, “for the following night and day”
ἀφικόμεθα: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, “we arrived”
τὸν κάτω πλοῦν: “the downward journey”

τοῦ Ὑάδων ἀέρος, ταπεινότερα μέντοι πολὺ τοῦ ζῳδιακοῦ. ἀποβάντες δὲ ἀνθρωπον μὲν οὐδένα εὖρομεν, λύχνους δὲ πολλοὺς περιθέοντας καὶ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ καὶ περὶ τὸν λιμένα διατρίβοντας, τοὺς μὲν μικροὺς καὶ ὥσπερ πένητας, ὀλίγους δὲ τῶν μεγάλων καὶ δυνατῶν πάνυ λαμπροὺς καὶ περιφανεῖς. οἰκήσεις δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ λυχνεῶνες ἰδίᾳ ἐκάστω πεποίηντο, καὶ αὐτοὶ ὀνόματα εἶχον, ὥσπερ οἱ ἀνθρωποι, καὶ φωνὴν προῖεμένων ἠκούομεν, καὶ οὐδὲν ἡμᾶς ἡδίκουν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐπὶ ξένια ἐκάλουν· ἡμεῖς δὲ ὅμως ἐφοβούμεθα, καὶ οὔτε δειπνήσαι οὔτε ὑπνώσαί τις ἡμῶν ἐτόλμησεν. ἀρχεῖα δὲ αὐτοῖς ἐν μέσῃ τῇ πόλει πεποιήται, ἔνθα ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν διὰ νυκτὸς ὅλης κάθεται ὀνομαστὶ καλῶν ἕκαστον·

ἀγορά, -ᾱς, ἡ: the public square

ἀδικέω: to do wrong, harm

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air

ἀποβαίνω: to step off, disembark

ἀρχεῖον, τό: the senate-house, town-hall

ἄρχων, -οντος, ὁ: a ruler, chief

δειπνέω: to eat dinner

διατρίβω: to pass time

δυνατός, -ή, -όν: strong, powerful

εὐρίσκω: to find

ζῳδιακός, -ή, -όν: zodiac

ἴδιος, -ον: one's own

κάθημαι: to sit down

καλέω: to call, summon

λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, radiant

λιμὴν, -ένος, ὁ: a harbor

λυχνεῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: a place to keep lamps
in, sconce

λύχνος, ὁ: a lamp

ξένια, τά: hospitality

οἰκησις, -εως, ἡ: a dwelling, habitation

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name

ὀνομαστί: by name

πένης, -ητος, ὁ: a poor man

περιθέω: to run round

περιφαίνομαι: to be visible all round

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

προίημι: to send out, emit (a sound)

ταπεινός, -ή, -όν: low

τολμάω: to undertake, venture

Ὑάδες, -ων, αἱ: the Hyades
(a constellation)

ὑπνώω: to sleep

φοβέομαι: to be afraid

φωνή, ἡ: a sound, utterance

εὖρομεν (=ἡῦρομεν): ao. of εὐρίσκω, "we found"

περιθέοντας: pr. part. of περιθέω, "lamps running around"

πεποίηντο: plupf. pas. of ποιέω, "had been made"

εἶχον: impf. of ἔχω, "they have names"

φωνὴν προῖεμένων: pr. part. of προ-ίημι, gen. after ἠκούομεν, "we heard them talking"

ἡδίκουν: impf. of ἀδικέω, "they harmed"

ἐκάλουν: impf. of καλέω, "they summoned"

δειπνήσαι, ὑπνώσαι: ao. infinitives after ἐτόλμησεν, "dared to eat, to sleep"

πεποιήται: perf. 3. s. pas. of ποιέω, "was built"

κάθεται: from κατα-ἵμαι, "sits down"

ὅς δ' ἂν μὴ ὑπακούσῃ, καταδικάζεται ἀποθανεῖν ὡς λιπῶν τὴν τάξιν· ὁ δὲ θάνατός ἐστι σβεσθῆναι. παρεστῶτες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἑωρῶμεν τὰ γινόμενα καὶ ἡκούομεν ἅμα τῶν λύχνων ἀπολογουμένων καὶ τὰς αἰτίας λεγόντων δι' ἃς ἐβράδυνον. ἔνθα καὶ τὸν ἡμέτερον λύχνον ἐγνώρισα, καὶ προσεῖπὼν αὐτὸν περὶ τῶν κατ' οἶκον ἐπυνθανόμην ὅπως ἔχοιεν· ὁ δέ μοι ἅπαντα ἐκεῖνα διηγῆσατο. Τὴν μὲν οὖν νύκτα ἐκείνην αὐτοῦ ἐμείναμεν, τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ ἄραντες ἐπλέομεν ἤδη πλησίον τῶν νεφῶν· ἔνθα δὴ καὶ τὴν Νεφελοκοκκυγίαν πόλιν ἰδόντες ἐθαυμάσαμεν, οὐ μέντοι ἐπέβημεν αὐτῆς· οὐ γὰρ εἶα τὸ πνεῦμα. βασιλεύειν μέντοι αὐτῶν

αἶρω: to take up, raise
αἰτία, ἡ: a charge, accusation
ἅμα: at once, at the same time
ἀποθνήσκω: to die
ἀπολογέομαι: to defend oneself
βασιλεύω: to rule, reign
βραδύνω: to delay, be late
γνωρίζω: to discover, recognize
διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full
ἐπιβαίνω: to go into, visit
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our
θάνατος, ὁ: death
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel
καταδικάζω: to pass judgment against

λείπω: to leave, desert
λύχνος, ὁ: a lamp
μένω: to stay, remain
Νεφελοκοκκυγία, ἡ: Cloudcuckootown
νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud
οἶκος, ὁ: a house, dwelling
παρίστημι: to make standing
πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing, wind
προσείπον: to speak to
πυνθάνομαι: to learn
σβέννυμι: to quench, put out
τάξις, -εως, ἡ: a battle line, rank
ὑπακούω: to listen, obey

ὅς ἂν μὴ ὑπακούσῃ: ao. subj. in pr. general condition, “whoever does not obey...”
ὡς λιπῶν τὴν τάξιν: “for deserting”
λιπῶν: ao. part. nom. s. of λείπω
σβεσθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. of σβέννυμι, “to be put out”
παρεστῶτες: perf. part. nom. pl. of περι-ἵστημι, “standing around”
ἑωρῶμεν: impf. of ὁράω, “we saw”
ἐγνώρισα: ao. 1 s. of γνωρίζω, “I recognized”
ὅπως ἔχοιεν: ind. question taking the optative in secondary sequence after ἐπυνθανόμην, “I learned how things were”
ἐμείναμεν: ao. of μένω, “we waited”
τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ (sc. ἡμέρᾳ): “on the following day”
ἄραντες: ao. part. of αἶρω, “having set up (the ships),” i.e. “having got underway”
Νεφελοκοκκυγίαν: Cloud-Cuckooland, a utopian fantasy in Aristophanes’ *The Birds*.
ἐπέβημεν: ao. of ἐπι-βαίνω, “we disembarked onto”
εἶα: impf. 3 s. of εἰάω, “the wind was not allowing”

ἐλέγετο Κόρωνος ὁ Κοττυφίωνος. καὶ ἐγὼ ἐμνήσθην Ἀριστοφάνους τοῦ ποιητοῦ, ἀνδρὸς σοφοῦ καὶ ἀληθοῦς καὶ μάτην ἐφ' οἷς ἔγραψεν ἀπιστουμένον. τρίτη δὲ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἡμέρα καὶ τὸν ὠκεανὸν ἤδη σαφῶς ἑωρῶμεν, γῆν δὲ οὐδαμοῦ, πλὴν γε τῶν ἐν τῷ ἀέρι· καὶ αὐταὶ δὲ πυρώδεις καὶ ὑπεραυγεῖς ἐφαντάζοντο. τῇ τετάρτῃ δὲ περὶ μεσημβρίαν μαλακῶς ἐνδιδόντος τοῦ πνεύματος καὶ συνιζάνοντος ἐπὶ τὴν θάλατταν καθεῖθμεν. [30] ὥς δὲ τοῦ ὕδατος ἐψαύσαμεν, θαυμασίως ὑπερηδόμεθα καὶ ὑπερεχαίρομεν καὶ πᾶσαν ἐκ τῶν παρόντων εὐφροσύνην ἐποιούμεθα καὶ ἀποβάντες ἐνηχόμεθα· καὶ γὰρ ἔτυχε γαλήνη οὖσα καὶ εὐσταθοῦν τὸ πέλαγος.

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
ἀπιστέω: to disbelieve, distrust
Ἀριστοφάνης, ὁ: Aristophanes
γαλήνη, ἡ: still, calm
ἐνδίδωμι: to give out
εὐσταθέω: to be steady, favorable
εὐφρόσυνος, -η, -ον: in good cheer, merry
θαυμασίως: wonderfully
καθίημι: to set down
μαλακῶς: gently
μάτην: in vain, idly, fruitlessly
μεσημβρία, ἡ: mid-day, noon
μιμνήσκω: to remind
νήχομαι: to swim
οὐδαμοῦ: nowhere
πλὴν: except + gen.

πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing, wind
ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet
πυρώδης, -ες: like fire, fiery
σαφής, -ές: clear, plain
σοφός, -ή, -όν: skilled, wise
συνιζάνω: to sink in, collapse
τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth
τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third
τυγχάνω: to happen to (+ part.)
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
ὑπεραυγής, -ές: shining brightly
ὑπερήδομαι: to be happy
ὑπερχαίρω: to rejoice exceedingly at
φαντάζομαι: to appear
ψαύω: to touch (+ gen.)
ὠκεανός, -οῦ, ὁ: the ocean

ἐμνήσθην: ao. pas. 1. s. of *μιμνήσκομαι*, “I remembered” + gen.
μάτην...ἀπιστουμένον: “undeservedly not believed”
ἐφ' οἷς ἔγραψεν: ao. of *γράφω*, “for what he wrote”
ἑωρῶμεν: impf. of *ὁράω*, “we saw”
ἐφαντάζοντο: impf. with inceptive force, “they began to seem fiery”
ἐνδιδόντος τοῦ πνεύματος καὶ συνιζάνοντος: gen. abs., “the wind falling”
καθεῖθμεν: ao. pas. of *κατα-ίημι*, “we were set down”
ἐψαύσαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of *ψαύω*, “we touched” + gen.
ὑπερηδόμεθα: impf. of *ὑπερ-ἡδομαι*, “we were super-pleased”
ἐποιούμεθα: impf. mid. of *ποιέω*, “we were making merry”
ἐνηχόμεθα: impf. of *νήχομαι*, “we went swimming”
οὖσα: pr. part. f. s. after *ἔτυχε*, “happened to be”
ἔτυχε: ao. of *τυγχάνω*

Ἵοικε δὲ ἀρχὴ κακῶν μειζόνων γίνεσθαι πολλάκις ἢ πρὸς τὸ βέλτιον μεταβολή· καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς δύο μόνας ἡμέρας ἐν εὐδία πλεύσαντες, τῆς τρίτης ὑποφαινούσης πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα τὸν ἥλιον ἄφνω ὀρώμεν θηρία καὶ κήτη πολλὰ μὲν καὶ ἄλλα, ἐν δὲ μέγιστον ἀπάντων ὅσον σταδίων χιλίων καὶ πεντακοσίων τὸ μέγεθος· ἐπήει δὲ κεχηγνὸς καὶ πρὸ πολλοῦ ταραττον τὴν θάλατταν ἀφρῶ τε περικλυζόμενον καὶ τοὺς ὀδόντας ἐκφαῖνον πολὺ τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν φαλλῶν ὑψηλοτέρους, ὅξεῖς δὲ πάντας ὥσπερ σκόλοπας καὶ λευκοὺς ὥσπερ ἐλεφαντίνους. ἡμεῖς μὲν οὖν τὸ ὕστατον ἀλλήλους προσειπόντες καὶ περιβαλόντες ἐμένομεν· τὸ δὲ ἤδη παρῆν καὶ

ἀνίσχω: to rise up

ἄφνω: suddenly, unawares

ἀφρός, ὁ: foam

βελτίων, -ον: better

ἐκφαίνω: to show, reveal

ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: ivory

εὐδία, ἡ: fair weather

θηρίον, τό: a wild creature

κάκη, ἡ: an evil, ill

κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster

λευκός, -ή, -όν: bright, shining, white

μένω: to stay, remain

μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing

ὀδών, -όντος, ὁ: a tooth

ὀξύς, -εία, -ύ: sharp, keen

πεντακόσιοι: five hundred

περιβάλλω: to throw around, embrace

περικλύζομαι: to be washed all round

πλέω: to sail, go by sea

προσλέγω: to address, speak to

σκόλοψ, -οπος, ὁ: a pointed object, hook

ταράττω: to stir, stir up

τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third

ὑποφαίνω: to bring to light, (of the sun) to rise

ὕστατος, -η, -ον: last, final

ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, tall

φαλλός, ὁ: phallus

χάσκω: to have one's mouth open, gape

χίλιοι, -αι: a thousand

After sailing a few days, they encounter a whale that swallows them whole. They explore the interior of the whale, coming upon a man and his son who farm a portion of land inside.

Ἵοικε...γίνεσθαι: "seems to be the beginning"

τῆς τρίτης (sc. ἡμέρας) ὑποφαινούσης: gen. abs., "the third day breaking"

ἀνίσχοντα: pr. part. acc., "the sun rising"

τὸ μέγεθος: acc. of respect, "in length"

ἐπήει: impf. of ἐπέρχομαι, "he attacked"

κεχηγνός: perf. part. nom. s. neut. of χάσκω, "with mouth wide open"

ταράττον: pr. part. nom. s. neut., "disturbing the sea"

ἐκφαῖνον: pr. part. nom. s. neut., "showing his teeth"

ὑψηλοτέρους: "teeth more upright than phalluses"

τὸ ὕστατον προσειπόντες: ao. part. of προσ-λέγω, "having said our goodbyes"

περιβαλόντες: ao. part. of περιβάλλω, "having embraced"

παρῆν: impf. 3. s. of παρα-εἶμι, "he was present"

ἀναρροφήσαν ἡμᾶς αὐτῇ νηϊ κατέπιεν. οὐ μέντοι ἔφθη συναράξαι τοῖς ὁδοῦσιν, ἀλλὰ διὰ τῶν ἀραιωμάτων ἢ ναῦς ἐς τὸ ἔσω διεξέπεσεν. [31] ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔνδον ἦμεν, τὸ μὲν πρῶτον σκότος ἦν καὶ οὐδὲν ἑωρῶμεν, ὕστερον δὲ αὐτοῦ ἀναχανόντος εἶδομεν κύτος μέγα καὶ πάντη πλατὺ καὶ ὑψηλόν, ἱκανὸν μυριάνδρῳ πόλει ἐνοικεῖν. ἔκειντο δὲ ἐν μέσῳ καὶ μεγάλοι καὶ μικροὶ ἰχθύες καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ θηρία συγκεκομμένα, καὶ πλοίων ἱστία καὶ ἄγκυραι, καὶ ἀνθρώπων ὀστέα καὶ φορτία, κατὰ μέσον δὲ καὶ γῆ καὶ λόφοι

ἄγκυρα, ἡ:	ἀναρροφέω:	λόφος, ὁ:	μέσος, -η, -ον:
ἀναχάσκω:	ἀναχάσκω:	μυριάνδρος, -ον:	μυριάνδρος, -ον:
ἀραιώμα:	ἀραιώμα:	inhabitants	inhabitants
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ:	γῆ, γῆς, ἡ:	ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ:	ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ:
διεκπίπτω:	διεκπίπτω:	ὀδών, -όντος, ὁ:	ὀδών, -όντος, ὁ:
εἶδον:	εἶδον:	ὀστέον, τό:	ὀστέον, τό:
ἔνδον:	ἔνδον:	πάντη:	πάντη:
ἐνοικέω:	ἐνοικέω:	πλατύς, -εἶα, -ύ:	πλατύς, -εἶα, -ύ:
ἔσω:	ἔσω:	πλοῖον, τό:	πλοῖον, τό:
θηρίον, τό:	θηρίον, τό:	πόλις, -εως, ἡ:	πόλις, -εως, ἡ:
ἱκανός, -ή, -όν:	ἱκανός, -ή, -όν:	σκότος, -εος, τό:	σκότος, -εος, τό:
ἱστίον, τό:	ἱστίον, τό:	συναράσσω:	συναράσσω:
ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὁ:	ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὁ:	ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν:	ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν:
καταπίνω:	καταπίνω:	φθάνω:	φθάνω:
κεῖμαι:	κεῖμαι:	φορτίον, τό:	φορτίον, τό:
κύτος, -εος, τό:	κύτος, -εος, τό:		

ἀναρροφήσαν: ao. part. s. neut. of ἀναρροφέω, “with a gulp”
αὐτῇ νηϊ: dat., “ship and all”
κατέπιεν: ao. 3. s of καταπίνω, “swallowed”
οὐ ἔφθη: ao. 3. s. of φθάνω, with ao. inf. συναράξαι, “he did not first shatter”
τοῖς ὁδοῦσιν: dat. of means, “with his teeth”
διεξέπεσεν: ao. 3. s. of δια-εκ-πίπτω, “fell through the spaces”
ἦμεν: impf. 1 pl. of εἶμι, “we were”
ἑωρῶμεν: impf. 1 pl. of ὁράω, “we were seeing”
αὐτοῦ ἀναχανόντος: ao. part. gen. s. of ἀνα-χάσκω in gen. abs., “with him opening (his mouth)”
ἱκανὸν ἐνοικεῖν: epexegetic infinitive, “a cavity sufficient to dwell in”
συγκεκομμένα: perf. part. nom. pl. neut. of συγκόπτω, “mangled beasts”

ἦσαν, ἐμοὶ δοκεῖν, ἐκ τῆς ἰλύος ἦν κατέπινε συνιζάνουσα. ὕλη γοῦν ἐπ’ αὐτῆς καὶ δένδρα παντοῖα ἐπεφύκει καὶ λάχανα ἐβεβλαστήκει, καὶ ἐώκει πάντα ἐξεργασμένοις· περίμετρον δὲ τῆς γῆς στάδιοι διακόσιοι καὶ τεσσαράκοντα. ἦν δὲ ἰδεῖν καὶ ὄρνεα θαλάττια, λάρους καὶ ἀλκύνους, ἐπὶ τῶν δένδρων νεοττεύοντα.

[32] Τότε μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ πολὺν ἔδακρύνοντο, ὕστερον δὲ ἀναστήσαντες τοὺς ἐταίρους τὴν μὲν ναὺν ὑποστηρίξαμεν, αὐτοὶ δὲ τὰ πυρεῖα συντρίψαντες καὶ ἀνακαύσαντες δεῖπνον ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἐποιούμεθα. παρέκειτο δὲ ἄφθονα καὶ παντοδαπὰ κρέα τῶν ἰχθύων, καὶ ὕδωρ ἔτι τὸ ἐκ τοῦ Ἑωσφόρου εἶχομεν. τῇ

ἀλκύνων, -όνος, ἡ: the kingfisher
ἀνακαίω: to light up
ἀνίστημι: to raise up, rouse
ἄφθονος, -ον: plentiful
βλαστάνω: to bud, sprout
δακρύω: to weep, shed tears
δείπνον, τό: dinner
δένδρον, τό: a tree
διακόσιοι, -αι, -α: two hundred
ἐξεργάζομαι: to work out, manage
ἐταῖρος, ό: a comrade, companion
εἶοκα: to seem
Ἑωσφόρος, ό: Morning Star
θαλάττιος, -α, -ον: of the sea
ἰλὺς, ὕος, ἡ: mud, slime, dirt
ἰχθύς, -ύος, ό: a fish
καταπίνω: to gulp down, swallow
κρέας, τό: flesh, meat

λάρος, ό: a cormorant, seagull
λάχανον, -ον, τό: vegetables, greens
νεοττεύω: to nest
ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
παντοδαπός, -ή, -όν: of all sorts
παντοῖος, -α, -ον: of all sorts or kinds
παράκειμαι: to lie beside or before
περίμετρον, τό: the perimeter
πυρεῖον, τό: a piece of wood, stick
στάδιον, τό: a stade
συνιζάνω: to sink in, settle down
συντρίβω: to rub together
τεσσαράκοντα: forty
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
ὑποστηρίζω: to underprop, shore up
φύω: to produce, grow

ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ: “it seems to me”

ἦν κατέπινε: impf. of κατα-πίνω, “which he was always swallowing”

συνιζάνουσα: pr. part. nom. s. fem. agreeing with γῇ, “settling”

ἐπεφύκει: plupf. of φύω, “had grown”

ἐβεβλαστήκει: plupf. of βλαστάνω, “had sprouted”

ἐώκει: plupf. of εἶοκα + dat., “everything seemed to have been cultivated”

ἐξεργασμένοις: pf. part. pas. of ἐξεργάζω, “cultivated”

ἦν δὲ ἰδεῖν: “it was possible to see”

νεοττεύοντα: pr. part. nom. pl. neut., “birds nesting”

ἀναστήσαντες: ao. part. act. of ἀνα-ίστημι “having roused (our comrades)”

ὑποστηρίξαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of ὑποστηρίζω, “we shored up”

συντρίψαντες: ao. part. of συντρίβω, “having rubbed together”

εἶχομεν: impf. of ἔχω, “we had”

ἐπιούση δὲ διαναστάντες, εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι τὸ κῆτος, ἑωρῶμεν ἄλλοτε μὲν ὄρη, ἄλλοτε δὲ μόνον τὸν οὐρανόν, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ νήσους· καὶ γὰρ ἦσθάνομεθα φερομένου αὐτοῦ ὀξέως πρὸς πᾶν μέρος τῆς θαλάττης. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤδη ἐθάδες τῇ διατριβῇ ἐγενόμεθα, λαβὼν ἐπὶ τῶν ἐταίρων ἐβάδιζον ἐς τὴν ὕλην περισκοπήσασθαι τὰ πάντα βουλόμενος. οὐπω δὲ πέντε ὅλους διελθὼν σταδίους εὖρον ἱερὸν Ποσειδῶνος, ὡς ἐδήλου ἡ ἐπιγραφή, καὶ μετ' οὐ πολὺ καὶ τάφους πολλοὺς καὶ στήλας ἐπ' αὐτῶν πλησίον τε πηγὴν ὕδατος διανογῶς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ κυνὸς ὑλακὴν ἠκούομεν καὶ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο πόρρωθεν καὶ τινα καὶ ἔπαυλιν εἰκάζομεν.

αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, to see
 ἄλλοτε: at some times, at other times
 ἀναχάσκω: to open the mouth, gape wide
 βαδίζω: to go slowly, to walk
 βούλομαι: to will, wish
 δηλόω: to show, exhibit, reveal
 διανίσταμαι: to arise
 διατριβή, ἡ: a passing of time
 διαυγής, -ές: transparent
 διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through
 ἐθάς, -άδος, ὁ: accustomed to
 εἰκάζω: to liken, speculate
 ἔπαυλος, ὁ: a farmhouse
 ἐπιγραφή, ἡ: an inscription
 εὕρισκω: to find
 ἱερὸν, τό: a sanctuary
 καπνός, ὁ: smoke
 κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale
 κύων, ἡ: a dog
 λαμβάνω: to take

μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share
 νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
 ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire
 ὀξέως: swiftly
 ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill
 οὐπω: not yet
 οὐρανός, ὁ: heaven
 περισκοπέω: to look round
 πηγὴ, ἡ: running waters, streams
 πολλάκις: many times, often
 πόρρωθεν: from afar
 Ποσειδῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: Poseidon
 στήλη, ἡ: a block of stone, marker
 τάφος, ὁ: a grave
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
 ὑλακή, ἡ: a barking, howling
 ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
 φαίνομαι: to appear, seem
 φέρω: to bear, carry

τῇ ἐπιούσῃ: dat. of time when, "on the next day"
 διαναστάντες: ao. part. intrans. of δια-ανα-ίστημι, "having arisen"
 εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι: ao. opt. in past general condition, "if ever he opened"
 ἑωρῶμεν: impf. "we saw"
 ἦσθάνομεθα: impf. of αἰσθάνομαι, "we would see" + gen.
 φερομένου: pr. mid. part. "carrying himself"
 περισκοπήσασθαι: ao. inf. of περισκοπέω after βουλόμενος, "wishing to investigate"
 διελθὼν: ao. part. of δια-έρχομαι, "having gone through"
 εὖρον (=ἦδρον): ao. of εὕρισκω, "I found"
 καὶ τινα καὶ ἔπαυλιν εἰκάζομεν: "and something we supposed to be a farmhouse too"

[33] Σπουδῇ οὖν βαδίζοντες ἐφιστάμεθα πρεσβύτῃ καὶ νεανίσκῳ μάλα προθύμως πρασιάν τινα ἐργαζομένοις καὶ ὕδωρ ἀπὸ τῆς πηγῆς ἐπ' αὐτὴν διοχετεύουσιν· ἡσθέντες οὖν ἅμα καὶ φοβηθέντες ἔστημεν· κἀκεῖνοι δὲ ταῦτὸ ἡμῖν ὥς τὸ εἰκὸς παθόντες ἀναυδοὶ παρειστήκεσαν· χρόνῳ δὲ ὁ πρεσβύτης ἔφη, «Τίνες ὑμεῖς ἄρα ἐστέ, ὦ ξένοι; πότερον τῶν ἐναλίων δαιμόνων ἢ ἀνθρωποὶ δυστυχεῖς ἡμῖν παραπλήσιοι; καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἀνθρωποὶ ὄντες καὶ ἐν γῇ τραφέντες νῦν θαλάττιοι γεγόναμεν καὶ συννηχόμεθα τῷ περιέχοντι τούτῳ θηρίῳ, οὐδ' ὃ πάσχομεν ἀκριβῶς εἰδότες·

ἀκριβῶς: exactly, certainly
 ἅμα: at once, at the same time
 ἀναυδος, -ον: speechless, silent
 βαδίζω: to go, walk
 γῇ, γῆς, ἡ: earth, land
 δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ: divine spirit, god
 διοχετεύομαι: to be watered, be irrigated
 δυστυχῆς, -ές: unlucky, unfortunate
 ἐνάλιος, -α, -ον: of the sea
 ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor
 ἐφίστημι: to stand upon, come upon
 ἡδομαι: to enjoy, be delighted, take pleasure
 θαλάττιος, -α, -ον: of or from the sea
 θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast
 ἵστημι: to stand up
 μάλα: very, exceedingly
 νεανίσκος, ὁ: a youth, boy

οἶδα: to know
 παραπλήσιος, -α, -ον: such as, resembling
 παρίστημι: to make to stand, set up
 πάσχω: to receive an impression from without, to suffer
 πάσχω: to suffer, feel
 περιέχω: to encompass, surround
 πηγῇ, ἡ: running waters, streams
 πότερος, -α, -ον: which of the two?
 πρασιά, ἡ: a garden-plot
 πρέσβυς, -εως, ὁ: an old man
 πρόθυμος, -ον: ready, willing, eager, zealous
 σπουδή, ἡ: haste, speed
 συννήχομαι: to swim with
 τρέφω: to breed, rear
 φοβέομαι: to be afraid
 χρόνος, ὁ: time

ἐφιστάμεθα: impf. mid. of ἐπι-ἵστημι, “we encountered” + dat.
 ἐργαζομένοις, διοχετεύουσιν: pr. part. dat. pl., modifying πρεσβύτῃ καὶ νεανίσκῳ
 ἡσθέντες: ao. part of ἡδομαι, “being overjoyed”
 φοβηθέντες: ao. part. pas. of φοβέομαι, “being made afraid”
 ἔστημεν: ao. 1 pl. intrans. of ἵστημι, “we stopped”
 τὸ αὐτὸ παθόντες: ao. part. of πάσχω, “having had the same experience”
 ὥς τὸ εἰκός: “as is likely” εἰκός is the part. of εἰόικα
 παρειστήκεσαν: plupf. 3 pl. of παρα-ἵστημι, “they stood”
 τραφέντες: ao. part. pas. of τρέφω, “having been reared”
 γεγόναμεν: perf. 1 pl. of γίνομαι, “we have become sea creatures”
 συννηχόμεθα: pr. 1 pl. of συν-νήχω, “we swim about with” + dat.
 περιέχοντι: pr. part. dat. s. of περι-έχω, “which encompasses”
 εἰδότες: part. of οἶδα, “knowing”

τεθνάναι μὲν γὰρ εἰκάζομεν, ζῆν δὲ πιστεύομεν.» πρὸς ταῦτα ἐγὼ εἶπον· «Καὶ ἡμεῖς τοι ἄνθρωποι, νεήλυδές μὲν, ὦ πάτερ, αὐτῷ σκάφει πρῶην καταποθέντες, προήλθομεν δὲ νῦν βουλόμενοι μαθεῖν τὰ ἐν τῇ ὕλῃ ὡς ἔχει· πολλή γάρ τις καὶ λάσιος ἐφαίνετο. δαίμων δέ τις, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἡμᾶς ἤγαγεν σέ τε ὀψομένους καὶ εἰσομένους ὅτι μὴ μόνοι ἐν τῷδε καθείργμεθα τῷ θηρίῳ· ἀλλὰ φράσον γε ἡμῖν τὴν σαυτοῦ τύχην, ὅστις τε ὦν καὶ ὅπως δεῦρο εἰσῆλθες.» ὁ δὲ οὐ πρότερον ἔφη ἐρεῖν οὐδὲ πεύσεσθαι παρ' ἡμῶν,

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
 δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ: divine spirit, god
 δεῦρο: hither
 εἰκάζω: to liken, suppose (+ inf.)
 εἰσέρχομαι: to come to, enter into
 ζάω: to live
 θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast
 θνήσκω: to die
 καταπίνω: to gulp, swallow down
 κατείργω: to drive into, shut in
 λάσιος, -ος, -ον: shaggy, rough, overgrown
 μανθάνω: to learn
 μόνος: only
 νέηλυς, -υδος, ὁ: newly come, a new-comer

ὅπως: how?
 ὁράω: to see
 ὅστις: who?
 πατήρ, ὁ: a father, sir
 πιστεύω: to trust, believe
 προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance
 πρώιος: early
 πυνθάνομαι: to learn, enquire
 σκάφος, -εος, τό: (the hull of) a ship
 τύχη, ἡ: fortune
 ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
 φαίνομαι: to appear, seem
 φράζω: to point out, indicate, show

τεθνάναι: perf. inf. of θνήσκω, "we suppose that we are dead"

αὐτῷ σκάφει: dat., "boat and all"

καταποθέντες: ao. part. pas. of κατα-πίνω, "having been swallowed up"

προήλθομεν: ao. of προ-έρχομαι, "we set out"

μαθεῖν: ao. inf. of μανθάνω, "wishing to learn"

ὡς ἔχει: ind. question, "how things are"

ἤγαγεν: ao. of ἄγω, "a god led"

ὀψομένους: fut. part. of ὁράω, expressing purpose, "in order to see you"

εἰσομένους: fut. part. of οἶδα, expressing purpose, "in order to know"

καθείργμεθα: perf. 1 pl. of κατα-ἐργάζω, "we are shut up"

φράσον: ao. imper. of φράζω, "tell us"

ὅστις τε ὦν καὶ ὅπως δεῦρο εἰσῆλθες: ind. quest., "who you are and how you came here"

οὐ πρότερον ἔφη: the negative of φημι means "deny" or "refuse" + inf.

ἐρεῖν: fut. inf. of λέγω

πεύσεσθαι: fut. inf. of πυνθάνομαι, "or to inquire"

πρὶν ξενίων τῶν παρόντων μεταδοῦναι, καὶ λαβὼν ἡμᾶς ἤγεν ἐπὶ τὴν οἰκίαν - ἐπεποίητο δὲ αὐτάρκη καὶ στιβάδας ἐνφοδόμητο καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἐξήρτιστο - παραθεῖς δὲ ἡμῖν λάχανά τε καὶ ἀκρόδρνα καὶ ἰχθῦς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ οἶνον ἐγχεάς, ἐπειδὴ ἱκανῶς ἐκορέσθημεν, ἐπυνθάνετο ἃ πεπόνθοιμεν· καὶ γὰρ πάντα ἐξῆς διηγησάμην, τὸν τε χειμῶνα καὶ τὰ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ καὶ τὸν ἐν τῷ ἀέρι πλοῦν, καὶ τὸν πόλεμον, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα μέχρι τῆς εἰς τὸ κῆτος καταδύσεως.

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
ἀκρόδρνα, τά: fruit-tree produce
αὐτάρκης, -ες: sufficient, independent
διηγέομαι: to set out in detail
ἐγχεώ: to pour out
ἐνοικοδομέω: to build in
ἐξαρτίζω: to complete, furnish
ἐξῆς: one after another, in order
ἱκανῶς: sufficiently, enough
ἰχθῦς, -ύος, ὅ: a fish
κατάδυσις, -εως, ἡ: a going down into, descent
κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale
κορέννυμι: to sate, satisfy

λάχανον, -ου, τό: vegetables, greens
μεταδίδωμι: to give part of, give a share of
μέχρι: up to (+ gen.)
νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
ξένια, τά: hospitality
οἰκία, ἡ: a building, house, dwelling
οἶνος, ὁ: wine
παρατίθημι: to place beside
πάσχω: to suffer, endure
πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, fight, war
πρὶν: before (+ inf.)
πυνθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry, enquire
στιβάς, -άδος, ἡ: a bed of straw, bunk
χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: a storm

πρὶν + inf.: “before”

μεταδοῦναι: ao. inf. of μετα-δίδωμι, “providing” + gen.

λαβὼν: ao. part. of λαμβάνω, “having taken us”

ἤγεν: impf. of ἄγω, “he led”

ἐπεποίητο: plupf. mid. of ποιέω, “he had made it sufficient”

ἐνφοδόμητο: plupf. mid. of ἐν-οικοδομέω, “he had built X (acc.) within”

ἐξήρτιστο: plupf. pas. of ἐξ-ἀρτίζω, “he had furnished”

παραθεῖς: ao. part. act. of παρατίθημι, “having set X (acc.) before Y (dat.)”

ἐγχεάς: ao. part. nom. s. of ἐγ-χέω, “having poured out”

ἐκορέσθημεν: ao. pas. of κορέω, “we were sated”

ἃ πεπόνθοιμεν: ind. quest. with opt. in sec. seq. after ἐπυνθάνετο, “he inquired what we had suffered”

πεπόνθοιμεν: perf. opt. of πάσχω

διηγησάμην: ao. 1 s. mid. of δια-ἡγέομαι, “I narrated”

[34] Ὁ δὲ ὑπερθαυμάσας καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν μέρει τὰ καθ' αὐτὸν διεξήει λέγων, «Τὸ μὲν γένος εἰμί, ὦ ξένοι, Κύπριος, ὁρμηθεὶς δὲ κατ' ἐμπορίαν ἀπὸ τῆς πατρίδος μετὰ παιδός, ὃν ὀράτε, καὶ ἄλλων πολλῶν οἰκετῶν ἔπλεον εἰς Ἰταλίαν ποικίλον φόρτον κομίζων ἐπὶ νεῶς μεγάλης, ἣν ἐπὶ στόματι τοῦ κήτους διαλελυμένην ἴσως ἐωράκατε. μέχρι μὲν οὖν Σικελίας εὐτυχῶς διεπλεύσαμεν· ἐκεῖθεν δὲ ἀρπασθέντες ἀνέμῳ σφοδρῷ τριταῖοι ἐς τὸν ὠκεανὸν ἀπηνέχθημεν, ἔνθα τῷ κήτει περιτυχόντες καὶ

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind

ἀποφέρω: to carry off

ἀρπάζω: to take up, carry off

γένος, -οῦς, τό: race, kind

διαλύω: to break apart, wreck

διαπλέω: to sail across

διεξέρχομαι: to go through, to recount

ἐκεῖθεν: from that place, thence

ἐμπορία, ἡ: commerce, trade

εὐτυχής, -ές: successful, fortunate

ἴσως: equally, in like manner

Ἰταλία, ἡ: Italy

κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale

κομίζω: to take care of, bring

Κύπριος, -α, -ον: of Cyprus, Cyprian

μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share

μέχρι: up to (+ gen.)

ναῦς, νεῶς, ἡ: a ship

οἰκέτης, -ου, ὁ: a house-slave, menial

ὀρμάω: to set in motion, set out

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child

πάτρη, ἰδος, ἡ: fatherland

περιτυγχάνω: to fall in with (+ dat.)

ποικίλος, -η, -ον: many-colored, spotted

Σικελία, -ου, ἡ: Sicily

στόμα, στόματος, τό: a mouth

σφοδρός, -ά, -όν: excessive, violent

τριταῖος, -α, -ον: on the third day

ὑπερθαυμάζω: to wonder exceedingly

φόρτος, ὁ: a load, a ship's freight or cargo

ὠκεανός, -οῦ, ὁ: the ocean

The man tells his story and gives information about the many other inhabitants of the whale.

ὑπερθαυμάσας: ao. part. of ὑπερθαυμάζω, “being amazed”

τὰ καθ' αὐτὸν: “about his own adventures”

διεξήει: impf. of δια-εκ-έρχομαι, “he began relating”

τὸ γένος: acc. of resp., “by race”

ὁρμηθεὶς: ao. part. nom. s. ὀρμάω, “having set out”

ὃν ὀράτε: “whom you see”

διαλελυμένην: perf. part. acc. s. διαλύω, “wrecked”

ἐωράκατε: perf. 2 pl. of ὀράω, “you have seen”

διεπλεύσαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of διαπλέω, “we sailed”

ἀρπασθέντες: ao. part. pas. of ἀρπάζω, “having been taken”

ἀπηνέχθημεν: ao. pas. 1 pl. of ἀπο-φέρω, “we were carried away”

περιτυχόντες: ao. part. of περιτυγχάνω, “falling in with” + dat.

αὐτανδρὸι καταποθέντες δύο ἡμεῖς μόνοι τῶν ἄλλων ἀποθανόντων, ἐσώθημεν. θάψαντες δὲ τοὺς ἐταίρους καὶ ναὸν τῷ Ποσειδῶνι δειμάμενοι τουτονὶ τὸν βίον ζῶμεν, λάχανα μὲν κηπεύοντες, ἰχθῦς δὲ σιτούμενοι καὶ ἀκρόδρνα. πολλή δέ, ὡς ὀράτε, ἡ ὕλη, καὶ μὴν καὶ ἀμπέλους ἔχει πολλὰς, ἀφ' ὧν ἡδύτατος οἶνος γεννᾶται· καὶ τὴν πηγὴν δὲ ἴσως εἶδετε καλλίστου καὶ ψυχροτάτου ὕδατος. εὐνὴν δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν φύλλων ποιούμεθα, καὶ πῦρ ἄφθονον καίομεν, καὶ ὄρνεα δὲ θηρεύομεν τὰ εἰσπετόμενα, καὶ ζῶντας ἰχθῦς ἀγρεύομεν ἐξιόντες ἐπὶ τὰ βραγχία τοῦ θηρίου,

ἀγρεύω: to catch
ἀκρόδρνα, τά: produce
ἄμπελος, ἡ: a grape vine, tendril
αὐτανδρος, -ον: together with the men,
men and all
ἄφθονος, -ον: plentiful
βίος, ὁ: a life
βραγχία, τὰ: the gills
γεννάω: to produce, yield
δέμω: to build
εἶδον: to see
εἰσπέτομαι: to fly in
ἐξέρχομαι: to go into
ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate
εὐνή, ἡ: a bed
ζάω: to live
ἡδύς, -εια, -ύ: sweet, pleasant
θάπτω: to bury, honor with funeral rites
θηρεύω: to hunt, go hunting

θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast
ἴσως: equally, in like manner
ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὁ: a fish
κάλλιστος, -η, -ον: most beautiful
καταπίνω: to gulp down, swallow
κηπεύω: to grow, raise in a garden
λάχανον, -ου, τό: vegetables, greens
ναός, -ώ, ὁ: the dwelling of a god, a temple
οἶνος, ὁ: wine
ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams
Ποσειδῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: Poseidon
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
σιτέομαι: to eat
σώζω: to save
ὑδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
φύλλον, τό: a leaf
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill

καταποθέντες: ao. pas. of καταπίνω, “having swallowed”
τῶν ἄλλων ἀποθανόντων: ao. part. in gen. abs., “the others having died”
ἐσώθημεν: ao. pas. of σώζω, “we were saved”
δειμάμενοι: ao. part. mid. of δέμω, “having built”
εἶδετε: ao. 2 pl. of ὀράω, “you saw”
εἰσπετόμενα: pr. part. acc. pl. neut. of εἰσπέτομαι, “flying around”
ἐξιόντες: pr. part. of ἐξ-έρχομαι, “by going into”

ἐνθα καὶ λουόμεθα, ὁπότεν ἐπιθυμήσωμεν. καὶ μὴν καὶ λίμνη οὐ πόρρω ἐστὶν σταδίων εἴκοσι τὴν περίμετρον, ἰχθύς ἔχουσα παντοδαπούς, ἐν ᾗ καὶ νηχόμεθα καὶ πλέομεν ἐπὶ σκάφους μικροῦ, ὃ ἐγὼ ἐναυπηγησάμην. ἔτη δέ ἐστιν ἡμῖν τῆς καταπόσεως ταῦτα ἑπτὰ καὶ εἴκοσι. [35] καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἴσως φέρειν δυνάμεθα, οἱ δὲ γείτονες ἡμῶν καὶ πάροιχοι σφόδρα χαλεποὶ καὶ βαρεῖς εἰσιν, ἄμικτοί τε ὄντες καὶ ἄγριοι.» «Ἥ γάρ,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς εἰσιν ἐν τῷ κήτει;» «Πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν,» ἔφη, «καὶ ἄξενοι καὶ τὰς μορφὰς ἀλλόκοτοι· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἐσπέρια τῆς ὕλης καὶ οὐραῖα Ταριχᾶνες οἰκοῦσιν, ἔθνος ἐγχελυωπὸν καὶ

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: wild, savage
 ἀλλόκοτος, -ον: of unusual form, strange
 ἄμικτος, -ον: unmingled, unsociable
 ἄξενος, -ον: inhospitable
 βαρύς, -εῖα, -ύ: unpleasant, stern
 γείτων, -ονος, ὅ: a neighbor
 δύναμαι: to be able, capable
 ἐγχελυωπός, -όν: eel-eyed
 ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a people
 ἐπιθυμέω: to desire, wish
 ἐσπέριος, -α, -ον: western
 ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
 ἴσως: equally, in like manner
 ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὅ: a fish
 κατάποσις, -εως, ᾗ: a gulping down, swallowing
 κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale
 λίμνη, ᾗ: a pool, lake

λούω: to wash, bathe
 μορφή, ᾗ: form, shape
 ναυπηγέω: to build ships
 νήχομαι: to swim
 ὁπότεν: whenever
 οὐραῖος, -α, -ον: toward the tail
 παντοδαπός, -ή, -όν: of every kind, of all sorts
 πάροιχος, -ον: dwelling beside or near
 περίμετρον, τό: the circumference
 πόρρω: further
 σκάφος, -εος, τό: (the hull of) a ship, a skiff
 σφόδρα: very, exceedingly
 Ταριχᾶνες, οἱ: Broilers
 ὕλη, ᾗ: a forest
 χαλεπός, -ή, -όν: hard to bear, grievous

λουόμεθα: pr. mid. "we wash ourselves"

ὁπότεν ἐπιθυμήσωμεν: ao. subj. of ἐπιθυμέω in general temporal clause, "whenever we wish"

καὶ μὴν καὶ: "indeed there is even..."

τὴν περίμετρον: "in circumference"

ἐν ᾗ: "in which"

ἐναυπηγησάμην: ao. 1 s. mid. of ναυπηγέομαι, "I built a ship"

τῆς καταπόσεως: gen. of point of origin, "from (the time) of the swallowing"

ἑπτὰ καὶ εἴκοσι: 27 years

ἦ γάρ: "do you mean to tell me that..."

μὲν οὖν: "certainly!"

τὰς μορφὰς: acc. of respect, "in forms"

τὰ οὐραῖα: "the tailward parts"

καρaboπρόσωπον, μάχιμον καὶ θρασὺ καὶ ὠμοφάγον· τὰ δὲ τῆς
 ἐτέρας πλευρᾶς κατὰ τὸν δεξιὸν τοῖχον Τριτωνομένδητες, τὰ μὲν
 ἄνω ἀνθρώποις ἐοικότες, τὰ δὲ κάτω τοῖς γαλεώταις, ἦττον
 μέντοι ἄδικοί εἰσιν τῶν ἄλλων· τὰ λαιὰ δὲ Καρκινόχειρες καὶ
 Θυννοκέφαλοι συμμαχίαν τε καὶ φιλίαν πρὸς ἑαυτοὺς
 πεποιημένοι· τὴν δὲ μεσόγαιαν νέμονται Παγουρίδαι καὶ
 Ψηττόποδες, γένος μάχιμον καὶ δρομικώτατον· τὰ ἐῶα δέ, τὰ
 πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στόματι, τὰ πολλὰ μὲν ἔρημά ἐστι, προσκλυζόμενα
 τῇ θαλάττῃ· ὅμως δὲ ἐγὼ ταῦτα ἔχω φόρον τοῖς Ψηττόποσιν
 ὑποτελῶν ἐκάστου ἔτους ὄστρεια πεντακόσια. [36] τοιαύτη μὲν ἡ

ἄδικος, -ον: unjust, wicked
 γαλεώτης, -ου, ὁ: a catfish
 γένος, -οῦς, τό: race, kind
 δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right
 δρομικός, -ή, -όν: good at running, swift
 ἐρήμος, -ον: desolate, lonely, solitary
 ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
 ἐῶος, -α, -ον: eastern
 ἦττων, -ον: less (than + gen.)
 θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea
 θρασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: bold, courageous
 θυννοκέφαλος, ὁ: Codhead
 καρaboπρόσωπος, -ον: crab-faced
 Καρκινόχειρες, -ων: with crab's claws for
 hands
 κάτω: below
 λαιός, -ά, -όν: on the left

μάχιμος, -ος, -ον: warlike
 μεσογαία, ἡ: the inland parts, interior
 νέμω: to hold, inhabit
 ὄστρειον, τό: an oyster
 Παγουρίδαι, οἱ: Crabmen
 πεντακόσιοι, -αι: five hundred
 πλευρά, -ᾶς, ἡ: a side
 προσκλύζω: to wash with waves
 στόμα, στόματος, τό: a mouth
 συμμαχία, ἡ: an alliance
 τοῖχος, ὁ: a wall
 Τριτωνομένδητες, οἱ: Mergoats
 ὑποτελέω: to pay tribute to (+ dat.)
 φιλία, ἡ: friendship
 φόρος, ὁ: tribute
 Ψηττόποδες, οἱ: Sole-feet
 ὠμοφάγος, -ον: eating raw flesh

τὰ δὲ τῆς ἐτέρας πλευρᾶς: “as for those on each side”

κατὰ τὸν δεξιόν: “on the right”

τὰ λαιὰ: “on the left”

πεποιημένοι: perf. part. mid., “having made to each other”

τὴν δὲ μεσόγαιαν: “in the middle”

τὰ ἐῶα δέ: “the eastern part”

ταῦτα ἔχω: “I inhabit these parts”

ἐκάστου ἔτους: gen. s., “each year”

χώρα ἐστίν· ὑμᾶς δὲ χρή ὁρᾶν ὅπως δυνησόμεθα τοσοῦτοις ἔθνεσι μάχεσθαι καὶ ὅπως βιοτεύσομεν.» «Πόσοι δέ,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «πάντες οὗτοί εἰσιν;» «Πλείους,» ἔφη, «τῶν χιλίων.» «Ὅπλα δὲ τίνα ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς;» «Οὐδέν,» ἔφη, «πλὴν τὰ ὀστᾶ τῶν ἰχθύων.» «Οὐκοῦν,» ἔφην ἐγώ, «ἄριστα ἂν ἔχοι διὰ μάχης ἐλθεῖν αὐτοῖς, ἅτε οὖσιν ἀνόπλοις αὐτοὺς γε ὠπλισμένους· εἰ γὰρ κρατήσομεν αὐτῶν, ἀδεῶς τὸν λοιπὸν βίον οἰκήσομεν.»

ἀδεής, -ές: without fear, fearless

ἀνοπλος, -ον: without weapons

ἄριστος: best

βίος, ό: life

βιοτεύω: to live

δύναμαι: to be able

ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a people

ἰχθύς, -ύος, ό: a fish

κρατέω: to be strong, mighty, powerful

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μάχη, ή: battle, fight, combat

οἰκέω: to inhabit, occupy

ὀπλίζω: to arm

ὄπλον, τό: weapon

ὀστέον, τό: bone

οὐκοῦν: therefore, then, accordingly

πλείων, -ον: more

πόσος, -η, -ον: how many

χίλιος: a thousand

χώρα, ή: land, space

ὅπως δυνησόμεθα...βιοτεύσομεν: fut. indicatives in object clause after ὁρᾶν "to see how we will be able..."

οὐδέν πλὴν: "nothing except..."

οὐκοῦν: anticipating agreement to the proposal

ἄριστα ἂν ἔχοι: potential optative, "it would be best"

ἅτε οὖσιν: ἅτε + participle, indicating the ground for the proposal, "inasmuch as they are unarmed"

αὐτοὺς ὠπλισμένους: pf. part. acc. subj. of ἐλθεῖν, "that we who are armed go"

εἰ κρατήσομεν...: future emotional using the future indicative in the protasis, "if we shall prevail"

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἀπελθόντες ἐπὶ ναῦν παρεσκευαζόμεθα. αἰτία δὲ τοῦ πολέμου ἔμελλεν ἔσεσθαι τοῦ φόρου ἢ οὐκ ἀπόδοσις, ἥδη τῆς προθεσμίας ἐνεστώσης. καὶ δὴ οἱ μὲν ἔπεμπον ἀπαιτοῦντες τὸν δασμόν· ὁ δὲ ὑπεροπτικῶς ἀποκρινάμενος ἀπεδίωξε τοὺς ἀγγέλους. πρῶτοι οὖν οἱ Ψηττόποδες καὶ οἱ Παγουρίδαι χαλεπαίνοντες τῷ Σκινθάρῳ - τοῦτο γὰρ ἐκαλεῖτο - μετὰ πολλοῦ θορύβου ἐπήεσαν. [37] ἡμεῖς δὲ τὴν ἔφοδον ὑποπτεύοντες ἐξοπλισάμενοι ἀνεμένομεν, λόχον τινὰ προτάξαντες ἀνδρῶν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι. προείρητο δὲ τοῖς ἐν τῇ ἐνέδρᾳ, ἐπειδὴν

ἄγγελος, ὁ: a messenger, envoy
αἰτία, ἡ: a cause
ἀναμένω: to wait for, await
ἀπαιτέω: to demand back, demand
ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
ἀποδιώκω: to chase away
ἀπόδοσις, -εως, ἡ: a payment
ἀποκρίνω: to answer
δασμός, ὁ: a sharing of spoil
ἐνέδρα, ἡ: a lying in wait, ambush
ἐνίστημι: to put, set, place in
ἐξοπλίζω: to arm completely
ἐπέρχομαι: to attack
ἔφοδος, ἡ: an approach, attack
θορύβος, ὁ: a noise, uproar, clamor

καλέω: to call
λόχος, ὁ: an ambush
παρασκευάζω: to get ready, prepare
πέμπω: to send, dispatch
πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, fight, war
προερέω: to say beforehand
προθέσμιος: appointed
προτάσσω: to place or post in front
Σκινθάρως, ὁ: Scintharus
ὑπεροπτικός, -ή, -όν: contemptuous, disdainful
ὑποπτεύω: to suspect, anticipate
φόρος, ὁ: that which is brought in, tribute
χαλεπαίνω: to be angry at (+ dat.)
Ψηττόποδες, οἱ: Sole-foot

They decide to join forces and revolt from the masters who demand tribute. They defeat the enemy and dwell in the whale, living a life of ease.

ἔδοξε ταῦτα: “these things seemed agreeable”
ἀπελθόντες: ao. part. of ἀπέρχομαι, “having departed”
ἔμελλεν ἔσεσθαι: fut. inf. of εἶμι, “was to be”
ἢ οὐκ ἀπόδοσις: “the non-payment”
τῆς προθεσμίας (sc. ἡμέρας) ἐνεστώσης: gen. abs., “the appointed day having arrived”

ἐνεστώσης: perf. act. part. of ἐν-ίστημι
καὶ δὴ: introducing a climax, “finally...”
ὁ δὲ: “but he”

ἀπεδίωξε: ao. of ἀπο-διώκω, “he drove off”
ἐπήεσαν: impf. of ἐπέρχομαι, “they attacked”
ἀνεμένομεν: impf. of ἀνα-μένω, “we were waiting”
προτάξαντες: ao. part. of προ-τάσσω, “having stationed”
προείρητο: plupf. 3 s. pas. of προ-λέγω, used impersonally, “it had been directed”

ἴδωσι παρελθούσας τοὺς πολέμιους, ἐπανίστασθαι· καὶ οὕτως
ἐποίησαν. ἐπαναστάντες γὰρ κατόπιν ἔκοπτον αὐτοὺς, καὶ ἡμεῖς
δὲ αὐτοὶ πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι τὸν ἀριθμὸν ὄντες - καὶ γὰρ ὁ
Σκίνθαρος καὶ ὁ παῖς αὐτοῦ συνεστρατεύοντο - ὑπηντιάζομεν, καὶ
συμμίζαντες θυμῷ καὶ ῥώμῃ διεκινδυνεύομεν. τέλος δὲ τροπὴν
αὐτῶν ποιησάμενοι κατεδιώξαμεν ἄχρι πρὸς τοὺς φωλεούς.
ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν μὲν πολέμιων ἑβδομήκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν, ἡμῶν δὲ
εἰς ὁ κυβερνήτης, τρίγλης πλευρᾷ διαπαρεῖς τὸ μετάφρενον.
[38] ἐκείνην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ τὴν νύκτα ἐπηυλισάμεθα

ἀποθνήσκω: to die	μετάφρενον, τό: the part behind the midriff
ἀριθμός: number	
ἄχρι: all the way	παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child
διακινδυνεύω: to hazard all	παρέρχομαι: to go by, to pass by
διαπαρήμι: to pierce through	πλευρά, -ās, ἡ: a rib
ἑβδομήκοντα: seventy	ῥώμη, ἡ: bodily strength, strength, might
ἑκατόν: a hundred	Σκίνθαρος, ὁ: Scintharus
ἐπανίστημι: to fall upon	συμμίγνυμι: to mix together
ἐπαναλίσσομαι: to encamp on the field	συστρατεύω: to join in an expedition
θυμός, ὁ: the soul, emotion	τέλος, -εος, τό: finally
καταδιώκω: to pursue closely	τρίγλη, ἡ: the red mullet
κατόπιν: from behind	τροπή, ἡ: a turning, flight
κόπτω: to strike	ὑπαντιάζω: to encounter
κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὁ: pilot	φωλεός, ὁ: den

ἐπειδὴν ἴδωσι: general temporal clause, “whenever they saw”

ἴδωσι: ao. subj. of εἶδον

παρελθούσας: perf. part. acc. pl. of παρα-έρχομαι, “once they had passed by”

ἐπανίστασθαι: pres. inf. of ἐπι-ανα-ίστημι in ind. command after προεἰρητο: “to fall upon them”

ἐπαναστάντες: ao. part. of ἐπι-ἀνα-ίστημι, “having fallen upon”

καὶ γὰρ...καὶ: “since both he and his son...”

ὑπηντιάζομεν: impf. of ὑπο-ἀντιάζω, “we met them head on”

συμμίζαντες: ao. part. of συμμίγνυμι, “having engaged”

κατεδιώξαμεν: ao. of κατα-διώκω, “we routed”

ἀπέθανον: ao. of ἀποθνήσκω, “170 died”

διαπαρεῖς: ao. part. nom. s. of δια-παρα-ἵημι, “having been run through”

ἐπηυλισάμεθα: ao. of ἐπι-αυλίζω, “we bivouacked”

τῇ μάχῃ καὶ τρόπαιον ἐστήσαμεν ῥάχιν ξηρὰν δελφίνοσ ἀναπήξαντες. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι αἰσθόμενοι παρήσαν, τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν κέρας ἔχοντες οἱ Ταριχᾶνες - ἡγείτο δὲ αὐτῶν Πήλαμος - τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον οἱ Θυννοκέφαλοι, τὸ μέσον δὲ οἱ Καρκινόχειρες· οἱ γὰρ Τριτωνομένδητες τὴν ἡσυχίαν ἦγον οὐδετέροις συμμαχεῖν προαιρούμενοι. ἡμεῖς δὲ προαπαντήσαντες αὐτοῖς παρὰ τὸ Ποσειδώνιον συνεμίξαμεν πολλῇ βοῇ χρώμενοι, ἀντήχει δὲ τὸ κύτος ὥσπερ τὰ σπήλαια. τρεψάμενοι δὲ αὐτούς, ἄτε γυμνήτας ὄντας, καὶ καταδιώξαντες ἐς τὴν ὕλην τὸ λοιπὸν ἐπεκρατοῦμεν τῆς γῆς. [39] καὶ μετ’ οὐ πολὺ κήρυκας

ἄγω: to lead, do	μάχη, ἡ: battle
αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive	ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry
ἀναπήγνυμι: to transfix, impale	οὐδέτερος, -α, -ον: neither of the two
ἀντηχέω: to echo	πάρειμι: to be present
βοή, ἡ: a loud cry, shout	Πήλαμος: Young Tunny
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth	Ποσειδώνιον, τό: Temple of Poseidon
γυμνής, -ήτος, ό: a light-armed footsoldier, slinger	προαιρέω: to choose
δεξιός, -ά, -όν: right	προαπαντάω: to go forth to meet
ἐπικρατέω: to rule over	ῥάχis, -εωs, ό: the lower part of the back
εὐώνυμος, -α, -ον: left	σπήλαιον, τό: a grotto, cave
ἡσυχία, ἡ: quiet	συμμαχέω: to be an ally (+ dat.)
θυννοκέφαλος, ό: tunny-headed	συμμίγνυμι: to mix together
καρκινόχειρες, -ων: with crab's claws for hands	Ταριχᾶνες, οἱ: Broilers
καταδιώκω: to pursue closely	τρέπω: to turn or direct
κέρας, τό: horn, flank of an army	Τριτωνομένδητες, οἱ: Mergoats
κήρυξ, -υκος, ό: a herald	τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy
κύτος, -εος, τό: a hollow	ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest	ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον: on the next day

τῇ μάχῃ: “on the battlefield”
ἐστήσαμεν: ao. act. of ἵστημι, “we set up”
ἀναπήξαντες: ao. part. of ἀνα-πήγνυμι, instrumental, “by impaling”
αἰσθόμενοι: ao. part. of αἰσθάνομαι, “having heard of”
τὴν ἡσυχίαν ἦγον: “they were staying out of the action”
προαπαντήσαντες: ao. part. of προ-απο-αντέω, “having gone out to meet them”
συνεμίξαμεν: ao. 1 pl. of συμμίγνυμι, “we engaged them”
ἀντήχει: impf. of ἀντ-ηχέω, “was resounding”
ἄτε γυμνήτας ὄντας: ἄτε + participle giving the cause of action, “because they were light-armed”
ἐπεκρατοῦμεν: impf. of ἐπι-κρατέω, “we ruled over” + gen.
μετ’ οὐ πολὺ: “after not much (time),” i.e., “soon”

ἀποστείλαντες νεκρούς τε ἀνηροῦντο καὶ περὶ φιλίας διελέγοντο·
 ἡμῖν δὲ οὐκ ἐδόκει σπένδεσθαι, ἀλλὰ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ χωρήσαντες ἐπ’
 αὐτοὺς πάντας ἄρδην ἐξεκόψαμεν πλὴν τῶν Τριτωνομενδῆτων.
 οὗτοι δὲ ὡς εἶδον τὰ γινόμενα, διαδράντες ἐκ τῶν βραγχίων
 ἀφήκαν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. ἡμεῖς δὲ τὴν χώραν ἐπελθόντες
 ἔρημον ἤδη οὖσαν τῶν πολεμίων τὸ λοιπὸν ἀδεῶς κατῴκουμεν,
 τὰ πολλὰ γυμνασίους τε καὶ κυνηγεσίους χρώμενοι καὶ
 ἀμπελουργοῦντες καὶ τὸν καρπὸν συγκομιζόμενοι τὸν ἐκ τῶν
 δένδρων, καὶ ὅλως ἐώκειμεν τοῖς ἐν δεσμωτηρίῳ μεγάλῳ καὶ
 ἀφύκτῳ τρυφῶσι καὶ λελυμένοις.

ἀδεής, -ές: without fear	θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea
ἀμπελουργέω: to dress vines	καρπός, ὁ: fruit
ἀναιρέω: to take up, raise	κυνηγέσιον, τό: a pack of hunting hounds
ἀποστέλλω: to send out	λύω: to loose, free
ἄρδην: wholly	νεκρός, ὁ: corpse
ἀφίημι: to send forth, discharge	οἰκέω: inhabit
ἄφυκτος, -ον: from which none escape	πλὴν: except (+ gen.)
βραγχιον, τό: a gill	σπένδω: to make peace
γυμνάσιον, τό: bodily exercises	συγκομίζω: to gather
δένδρον, τό: a tree	Τριτωνομένδητες, οἱ: Mergoats
δεσμωτήριον, τό: a prison	τρυφάω: to live luxuriously
διαδιδράσκω: to run off, get away, escape	ὑστεραίῳ, -α, -ον: on the day after
διαλέγομαι: to discourse	φιλία, ἡ: friendship
ἐκκόπτω: to cut out, knock out	χώρα, ἡ: space, land
ἐπέρχομαι: to go upon	χωρέω: to advance
ἐρήμος, -ον: desolate, lonely, solitary	

ἀποστείλαντες: ao. part. of ἀποστέλλω, “having sent”
 ἀνηροῦντο: impf. of ἀνα-αἰρέω, “they were seeking back”
 χωρήσαντες: ao. part. of χωρέω, “having marched”
 ἐξεκόψαμεν: ao. of ἐκκόπτω, “we exterminated”
 διαδράντες: ao. part. of δια-διδράσκω, “having run out through”
 αὐτοὺς ἀφήκαν: ao. of ἀφίημι, “they threw themselves”
 ἐπελθόντες: ao. part. of ἐπι-έρχομαι, “having occupied”
 κατῴκουμεν: impf. of κατα-οἰκέω, “we began dwelling”
 ἀμπελουργοῦντες: pr. part. of ἀμπελουργέω, “tending vines”
 καὶ ὅλως: “and generally”
 ἐώκειμεν: plupf. of εἰόικα, “we resembled” + dat.
 τρυφῶσι: pr. part. dat. pl. of τρυφάω after ἐώκειμεν, “those living luxuriously”
 λελυμένοις: perf. part. dat. pl. λύω, “those having been freed”

Ἐνιαντὸν μὲν οὖν καὶ μῆνας ὀκτὼ τοῦτον διήγομεν τὸν τρόπον. [40] τῷ δ' ἐνάτῳ μηνὶ πέμπτῃ ἵσταμένου, περὶ τὴν δευτέραν τοῦ στόματος ἄνοιξιν - ἅπαξ γὰρ δὴ τοῦτο κατὰ τὴν ὥραν ἐκάστην ἐποίει τὸ κῆτος, ὥστε ἡμᾶς πρὸς τὰς ἀνοίξεις τεκμαίρεσθαι τὰς ὥρας - περὶ οὖν τὴν δευτέραν, ὥσπερ ἔφην, ἄφνω βοή τε πολλή καὶ θόρυβος ἠκούετο καὶ ὥσπερ κελεύσματα καὶ εἰρεσίαι· ταραχθέντες οὖν ἀνείρπυσamen ἐπ' αὐτὸ τὸ στόμα τοῦ θηρίου καὶ στάντες ἐνδοτέρῳ τῶν ὀδόντων καθεωρῶμεν ἀπάντων ὧν ἐγὼ εἶδον θαυμάτων παραδοξότατον,

ἀνείρπυζω: to creep up
 ἀνοίξις, -εως, ἡ: an opening
 ἅπαξ: once
 ἅπας: all, the whole
 ἄφνω: suddenly, unawares
 βοή, ἡ: a loud cry, shout
 δεύτερος, -α, -ον: second
 διάγω: to carry over, live
 εἰρεσία, ἡ: rowing
 ἐνατος, -η, -ον: ninth
 ἐνδοτέρῳ: quite within
 ἐνιαυτός, ὁ: year
 θέαμα, -ατος, τό: a sight, spectacle
 θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast

θόρυβος, ὁ: a noise, uproar
 ἵστημι: to stand up
 κελεύσμα, -ατος, τό: a road, path, way
 κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale
 μείς, μήνος, ὁ: a month
 ὀδών, -όντος, ὁ: a tooth
 ὀκτώ: eight
 παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical
 πέμπτος, -η, -ον: the fifth
 στόμα, στόματος, τό: a mouth
 ταρασσώ: to stir, trouble
 τεκμαίρομαι: to estimate
 τρόπος, ὁ: a manner
 ὥρα, ἡ: period of time

From inside the whale they see an incredible sea battle with islands as ships.

πέμπτῃ ἵσταμένου (sc. μηνός): “on the fifth day from the (month) beginning”

ἵσταμένου: pr. part. mid. gen. s. of ἵστημι

ὥστε ἡμᾶς τεκμαίρεσθαι: result clause, “so that we could mark time by the openings”

ἠκούετο: impf. pas. of ἀκούω, “were being heard”

ὥσπερ κελεύσματα: “sounds like commands”

ταραχθέντες: ao. part. of ταραττω, “becoming excited”

ἀνείρπυσamen: ao. of ἀνα-έρπυζω, “we crept up”

στάντες: ao. intr. part. of ἵστημι, “standing”

καθεωρῶμεν: impf. of κατα-ὀράω, “we began observing”

ἀπάντων ὧν: “of all the things I saw,” the relative pronoun is “attracted” into the case of its antecedent, producing ὧν instead of the expected οὓς

ἄνδρας μεγάλους, ὅσον ἡμισταδιαίους τὰς ἡλικίας, ἐπὶ νήσων
 μεγάλων προσπλέοντας ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τριήρων. οἶδα μὲν οὖν
 ἀπίστοις εὐκότα ἱστορήσων, λέξω δὲ ὁμως. νῆσοι ἦσαν ἐπιμήκεις
 μὲν, οὐ πάνυ δὲ ὑψηλαί, ὅσον ἑκατὸν σταδίων ἑκάστη τὸ
 περίμετρον· ἐπὶ δὲ αὐτῶν ἔπλεον τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἐκείνων ἀμφὶ τοὺς
 εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν· τούτων δὲ οἱ μὲν παρ' ἑκάτερα τῆς νήσου
 καθήμενοι ἐφεξῆς ἐκωπηλάτουν κυπαρίττοις μεγάλαις
 αὐτοκλάδοις καὶ αὐτοκόμοις ὥσπερ ἑρετμοῖς, κατόπιν δὲ ἐπὶ τῆς
 πρύμνης, ὡς ἐδόκει, κυβερνήτης ἐπὶ λόφου ὑψηλοῦ εἰστήκει
 χάλκεον ἔχων πηδάλιον πεντασταδιαῖον τὸ μῆκος· ἐπὶ δὲ

ἀπίστος, -ον: unbelievable
 αὐτοκλάδος, -ον: branches and all
 αὐτοκόμος, -ον: shaggy
 ἑκάτερος: each of two
 ἑκατόν: a hundred
 εἰκοσι: it seems to be (+ dat.)
 ἐπιμήκης, -ες: longish, oblong
 ἑρετμόν, τό: an oar
 ἐφεξῆς: in order
 ἡλικία, ἡ: stature
 ἡμισταδιαῖος, -α, -ον: of half a stadium
 ἵστημι: to stand up
 ἱστορέω: to inquire into, relate
 κάθημαι: to be seated
 κατόπιν: behind, after
 κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὁ: a steersman, pilot

κυπαρίττος, ἡ: a cypress
 κωπηλατέω: to pull an oar
 λόφος, ὁ: crest
 μῆκος, -εος: length
 νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
 οἶδα: to know
 ὁμως: all the same, nevertheless, still
 πενταστάδιος, -ον: of five stades
 περίμετρον, τό: the circumference
 πηδάλιον, -ου, τό: a rudder or an oar used
 for steering
 προσπλέω: to sail towards or against
 πρύμνα, -ης, ἡ: the stern, poop
 τριήρης, -εος, ἡ: a trireme
 ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised
 χάλκεος, -έα, -εον: of copper or bronze

προσπλέοντας: pr. part. of προσ-πλέω, “sailing forth”
 οἶδα...ἱστορήσων: ind. statement, “I know that I am about to relate”
 εὐκότα: pf. part. n. pl. acc., “things that seem unbelievable”
 ἱστορήσων: fut. part. nom. s.
 μὲν οὖν...λέξω δὲ ὁμως: “even though...nevertheless I shall say”
 οἱ μὲν παρ' ἑκάτερα: “some on the sides”
 καθήμενοι: pr. part. of κατα-ἤμαι, “sitting”
 ἐκωπηλάτουν impf. of κωπηλατέω, “were rowing”
 αὐτοκλάδοις: = κλάδοις αὐτοῖς, “with branches and all”
 αὐτοκόμοις: = κόμοις αὐτοῖς “with leaves and all”
 εἰστήκει: plupf. of (ἵστημι), “he had set himself up and was standing”
 τὸ μῆκος: acc. of respect, “in length”

τῆς πρῶρας ὅσον τετταράκοντα ὠπλισμένοι αὐτῶν ἐμάχοντο, πάντα ἐοικότες ἀνθρώποις πλὴν τῆς κόμης· αὕτη δὲ πῦρ ἦν καὶ ἐκάετο, ὥστε οὐδὲ κορυθῶν ἐδέοντο. ἀντὶ δὲ ἰστιῶν ὁ ἄνεμος ἐμπίπτων τῇ ὕλῃ, πολλῇ οὕσῃ ἐν ἐκάστῃ, ἐκόλπου τε ταύτην καὶ ἔφερε τὴν νῆσον ἣ ἐθέλοι ὁ κυβερνήτης· κελευστής δὲ ἐφειστήκει αὐτοῖς, καὶ πρὸς τὴν εἰρεσίαν ὁξέως ἐκινούντο ὥσπερ τὰ μακρὰ τῶν πλοίων.

[41] Τὸ μὲν οὖν πρῶτον δύο ἢ τρεῖς ἐωρῶμεν, ὕστερον δὲ ἐφάνησαν ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι, καὶ διαστάντες ἐπολέμουν καὶ ἐναυμάχουν. πολλὰ μὲν οὖν ἀντίπρωροι συνηράσσοντο ἀλλήλαις,

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind	κόρυθος, ὁ: a helmet, helm, casque
ἀντίπρωρος, -ον: with the prow opposed	κυβερνήτης, -ον, ὁ: a steersman, helmsman, pilot
δέομαι: to need (+ gen.)	ναυμαχέω: engage in a naval battle
δίιστημι: to set apart	νῆσος, -ον, ἡ: an island
ἐθέλω: to will, wish	ὀξύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sharp, keen
εἰρεσία, ἡ: rowing	ὀπλίζω: to arm
ἐμπίπτω: fall upon	πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
ἑξακόσιοι, -αι, -α: six hundred	πολεμῶ: to make hostile, make an enemy
ἔοικα: to seem to be (+ dat.)	πρῶρα, ἡ: a prow, bow
ἐφίστημι: to stand on (+ dat.)	πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
ἰστιόν, τό: a sail	συναράσσω: to dash together, dash in pieces
καίω: to kindle, burn	τετταράκοντα: forty
κελευστής, -οῦ, ὁ: the boatswain	ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
κινέω: to set in motion, to move	
κολπῶ: to form into a swelling fold	
κόμη, ἡ: the hair	

ὠπλισμένοι: perf. part. of ὀπλίζω, “having armed themselves”

καὶ ἐκάετο: “and it was burning”

ὥστε οὐδὲ κορυθῶν ἐδέοντο: result clause with indicative indicating actual result, “so they didn’t need helmets”

ἐν ἐκάστῃ (sc. νήσῳ): “on each island”

ἐκόλπου ταύτην: impf. of κολπῶ, “was filling this (i.e., forest) like a sail”

ἣ ἐθέλοι: general relative clause with optative in secondary sequence, “wherever he wished”

ἐφειστήκει: plupf. of ἐπι-ἵστημι, “he had set himself up and was standing over them”

ἐκινούντο: impf. of κινέω, “they were moving”

ὥσπερ τὰ μακρὰ τῶν πλοίων: “like war galleys”

ἐωρῶμεν: impf. of ὁράω, “we saw”

ἐφάνησαν: ao. pas. 3 pl. of φαίνομαι, “appeared”

διαστάντες: ao. part. of δια-ἵστημι, “opposed to each other”

συνηράσσοντο: impf. of συν-ἄράσσω, “dashed together”

πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ ἐμβληθεῖσαι κατεδύοντο, αἱ δὲ συμπλεκόμεναι
 καρτερῶς διηγωνίζοντο καὶ οὐ ῥαδίως ἀπελύοντο· οἱ γὰρ ἐπὶ τῆς
 πρῶρας τεταγμένοι πᾶσαν ἐπεδείκνυντο προθυμίαν ἐπιβαίνοντες
 καὶ ἀναιροῦντες· ἐζώγρει δὲ οὐδεὶς. ἀντὶ δὲ χειρῶν σιδηρῶν
 πολύποδας μεγάλους ἐκδεδεμένους ἀλλήλοις ἐπερρίπτουν, οἱ δὲ
 περιπλεκόμενοι τῇ ὕλῃ κατεῖχον τὴν νῆσον. ἔβαλλον μέντοι καὶ
 ἐτίτρωσκον ὀστρείοις τε ἀμαξοπληθέσι καὶ σπόγγοις πλεθριαίοις.
 [42] ἡγείτο δὲ τῶν μὲν Αἰολοκένταυρος, τῶν δὲ Θαλασσοπότης·

Αἰολοκένταυρος, ὁ: "Gleaming Centaur"
 ἀμαξοπληθής, -ές: large enough to fill a
 wagon
 ἀναιρέω: to take up, raise
 ἀπολύω: to loose from
 βάλλω: to throw
 διαγωνίζομαι: to contend, struggle or
 fight against
 ἐκδέω: to fasten to or on
 ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, ram
 ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon
 ἐπιδείκνυμι: to exhibit as a specimen
 ἐπιρριπτέω: to throw, cast at
 ζωγρέω: to take alive, take captive
 ἡγέομαι: to go before, lead the way
 θαλασσοπότης, ὁ: "Sea-drinker"
 καρτερός, -ά, -όν: strong
 καταδύω: to go down, sink, set
 κατέχω: to hold fast

νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
 ὀστρεῖον, τό: an oyster
 περιπλέκω: to twine or enfold round
 πλεθριαῖος, -α, -ον: broad or long
 πολύπους, -ποδος: octopus
 προθυμία, ἡ: readiness, willingness
 πρῶρα, ἡ: the forepart of a ship, prow,
 bow
 ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready
 σιδήρεος, -η, -ον: made of iron or steel,
 iron
 σπόγγος, ὁ: a sponge
 συμμαχέω: to be an ally
 συμπλέκω: to twine or plait together
 τάσσω: to arrange, put in order
 τιτρώσκω: to wound
 ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ: a hand

ἐμβληθεῖσαι: ao. part. pas. of ἐν-βάλλω, "having been rammed"
 συμπλεκόμεναι: "grappling"
 διηγωνίζοντο: impf. mid. of δια-αγωνίζομαι, "were battling each other"
 τεταγμένοι: perf. part. mid/pas. of τάσσω, "those stationed"
 ἀντὶ χειρῶν σιδηρῶν: "instead of iron hands" (i.e. grappling hooks)
 πολύποδας μεγάλους: "giant octopuses"
 ἐκδεδεμένους: perf. part. of ἐκ-δέω, "having been attached to"
 ἐπερρίπτουν: impf. of ἐπιρρίπτω, "they were throwing at"
 ἐτίτρωσκον: impf., "they were wounding"
 ἀμαξοπληθέσι: dat. pl., "that would fill a wagon"
 σπόγγοις πλεθριαίοις: "with hundred-foot sponges"
 τῶν μὲν...τῶν δέ: gen. after ἡγείτο, "A. was leading these, Th. was leading those"

καὶ μάχη αὐτοῖς ἐγεγένητο, ὥς ἐδόκει, λείας ἔνεκα· ἐλέγετο γὰρ ὁ
Θαλασσοπότης πολλὰς ἀγέλας δελφίνων τοῦ Αἰολοκενταύρου
ἐληλακέναι, ὥς ἦν ἀκούειν ἐπικαλούντων ἀλλήλοις καὶ τὰ
ὀνόματα τῶν βασιλέων ἐπιβοωμένων. τέλος δὲ νικῶσιν οἱ τοῦ
Αἰολοκενταύρου καὶ νήσους τῶν πολεμίων καταδύουσιν ἀμφὶ τὰς
πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν· καὶ ἄλλας τρεῖς λαμβάνουσιν αὐτοῖς
ἀνδράσιν· αἱ δὲ λοιπαὶ πρύμναν κρουσάμεναι ἔφευγον. οἱ δὲ μέχρι
τινὸς διώξαντες, ἐπειδὴ ἑσπέρα ἦν, τραπόμενοι πρὸς τὰ ναυάγια
τῶν πλείστων ἐπεκράτησαν καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν ἀνείλοντο· καὶ γὰρ

ἀγέλη, ἡ: a herd
Αἰολοκένταυρος, ὁ: " Gleaming Centaur"
ἀναιρέω: to take up, raise
ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man
βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
δελφίς, -ίνος, ὁ: a dolphin
διώκω: to pursue
ἑκατόν: a hundred
ἐλαύνω: to drive
ἔνεκα: on account of + *gen.*
ἐπιβοάω: to call upon or to, cry out to
ἐπικαλέω: to call upon
ἐπικρατέω: to rule over
ἑσπέρα, ἡ: evening
Θαλασσοπότης, ὁ: " Sea-drinker"
καταδύω: to go down, sink, set

κρούω: to strike, smite
λαμβάνω: to take
λεία, ἡ: booty, plunder
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat
μέχρι: up to (+ *gen.*)
ναυάγιον, τό: a piece of wreck
νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name
πεντήκοντα: fifty
πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
πρύμνα, -ης, ἡ: the stern, poop
τέλος: finally
τρέπω: to turn
φεύγω: to flee

ἐγεγένητο: plupf. of γίνομαι, "had come about"
ὥς ἐδόκει: "so it seemed"
λείας ἔνεκα: "because of piracy"
δελφίνων: stealing dolphins instead of herds of cattle, a common event in myth
and history
ἐληλακέναι: perf. inf. of ἐλαύνω in ind. statement after ἐλέγετο, "was said to have
driven off"
ὥς ἦν: "since it was possible," explaining the source of his knowledge
ἐπικαλούντων, ἐπιβοωμένων: pr. part. gen. pl. after ἀκούειν, "to hear them calling
and shouting"
αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν: "men and all"
πρύμναν κρουσάμεναι: dat. pl. ao. part., instrumental, "by back watering"
μέχρι τινὸς: "for an indefinite time"
διώξαντες: ao. part. of διώκω, "having chased"
ἐπεκράτησαν: ao. 3 pl. of ἐπι-κρατέω, "they took possession of" + dat.
τὰ (sc. νέκρᾱ) ἑαυτῶν: "their dead"
ἀνείλοντο: ao. 3 pl. of ἀναιρέω, "they picked up"

ἐκείνων κατέδυσαν νῆσοι οὐκ ἐλάττους τῶν ὀγδοήκοντα. ἔστησαν δὲ καὶ τρόπαιον τῆς νησομαχίας ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τοῦ κήτους μίαν τῶν πολεμίων νῆσον ἀνασταυρώσαντες. ἐκείνην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα περὶ τὸ θηρίον ηὐλίσαντο ἐξάψαντες αὐτοῦ τὰ ἀπόγεια καὶ ἐπ' ἀγκυρῶν πλησίον ὀρμισάμενοι· καὶ γὰρ ἀγκύραις ἐχρῶντο μεγάλαις ὑάλιναις καρτεραῖς. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ θύσαντες ἐπὶ τοῦ κήτους καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους θάψαντες ἐπ' αὐτοῦ ἀπέπλεον ἡδόμενοι καὶ ὥσπερ παιᾶνας ᾄδοντες. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὴν νησομαχίαν γενόμενα.

ἄγκυρα, ἡ: anchor

αἰίδω: to sing

ἀνασταυρόω: to impale

ἀπόγειος, -α, -ον: from land

ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off

αὐλίζομαι: to camp

ἐλάττων, -ον: smaller, less

ἐξάπτω: to fasten from

ἡδομαι: to enjoy, take pleasure

θάπτω: to pay the last dues to a corpse

θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast

θύω: to sacrifice

καρτερός, -ά, -όν: strong

καταδύω: to go down, sink

κεφαλή, ἡ: the head

κήτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale

νησομαχία, ἡ: an island-fight

νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

ὀγδοήκοντα: eighty

οἰκείος, ό: a relative

ὀρμίζω: to moor, anchor

παιάν, -άνος, ό: a victory song

τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy

ὑάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass

ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον: on the day after

χράομαι: to use (+ dat.)

ὥσπερ: in the manner of

ἔστησαν: ao. 3 pl. of ἵστημι, “they set up”

ἀνασταυρώσαντες: ao. part. of ἀνασταυρόω, used instrumentally, “by impaling one of the islands on the head of the whale”

ἐξάψαντες: ao. part. of ἐξάπτω, “having attached X (acc.) from Y (gen.)”

τὰ ἀπόγεια: “shore ropes”

θάψαντες: ao. part. of θάπτω, “having buried”

ὥσπερ παιᾶνας: “some sort of victory songs”

ᾄδοντες: pr. part. of ᾄδω, “singing”

γενόμενα: ao. part. of γίνομαι, “the events”

Λουκιανού
Ἀληθῆ Διηγήματα:
βίβλος Β΄

Lucian's
A True Story:
Book 2

Ἀληθῆ Διηγήματα: Β'

[1] Τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου μηκέτι φέρων ἐγὼ τὴν ἐν τῷ κήτει δίαιταν ἀχθόμενός τε τῇ μονῇ μηχανήν τινα ἐζήτουν, δι' ἧς ἂν ἐξελθεῖν γένοιτο· καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἔδοξεν ἡμῖν διορύξασαι κατὰ τὸν δεξιὸν τοίχον ἀποδρᾶναι, καὶ ἀρξάμενοι διεκόπτομεν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ προελθόντες ὅσον πέντε σταδίους οὐδὲν ἠνύομεν, τοῦ μὲν ὀρύγματος ἐπαυσάμεθα, τὴν δὲ ὕλην καῦσαι διέγνωμεν· οὕτω γὰρ ἂν τὸ κῆτος ἀποθανεῖν· εἰ δὲ τοῦτο γένοιτο, ῥαδία ἔμελλεν ἡμῖν ἔσεσθαι ἡ ἔξοδος. ἀρξάμενοι οὖν ἀπὸ τῶν οὐραίων ἐκαίομεν, καὶ

ἀνύω: to effect, accomplish, complete
ἀποδιδράσκω: to run away or off, escape
ἀποθνήσκω: to die
ἄρχω: to begin
ἀχθομαι: to be vexed
δεξιός, -ά, -όν: right
διαγιγνώσκω: to distinguish, discern, resolve
δίαιτα, ἡ: a way of living, mode of life
διακόπτω: to cut in two, cut through
διορύσσω: to dig through or across
ἐξέρχομαι: to go or come out of
ἐξοδος, -ον: promoting the passage

ζητέω: to seek, seek for
καίω: to kindle, burn
κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale
μηκέτι: no more, no longer
μηχανή: an instrument, device
μονή, ἡ: a staying, abiding
ὄρυγμα, -ατος, τό: a trench, ditch, moat
ὅσον: some, approximately
οὐραῖος, ό: the tail-end
παύομαι: to cease
προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance
τοίχος, ό: the wall of a house or court
ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

Tiring of life in the whale, the men escape. After passing the bodies from the Island battle, they come upon a frozen portion of the sea, then the islands of Cheese and Cork.

Τὸ δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου: "the (period of time) from this point"

μηκέτι φέρων...δίαιταν: "no longer able to endure the life"

δι' ἧς: "through which," antecedent is μηχανήν

ἂν γένοιτο: potential opt., "it might be possible" + inf.

ἐξελθεῖν: ao. inf. of ἐξέρχομαι, "to exit"

τὸ μὲν πρῶτον: "while at first"

διορύξασαι: ao. part. dat. pl. of δια-ὀρύσσω, modifying ἡμῖν, "by tunneling"

ἀποδρᾶναι: ao. inf. of ἀποδιδράσκω, with ἔδοξεν, "to escape"

προελθόντες: ao. part. of προ-έρχομαι, "having advanced"

ἠνύομεν: impf. of ἀνύω, "we were accomplishing"

διέγνωμεν: ao. of διαγιγνώσκω, "we resolved" + inf.

ἂν...ἀποθανεῖν: ao. inf. of ἀποθνήσκω, representing a potential optative in implied ind. st. "reasoning that he would die"

εἰ...γένοιτο: ao. opt. of γίνομαι, past general cond. "if (ever) this happened..."

ἔμελλεν ἔσεσθαι, "then escape would have been...."

ἀπὸ τῶν οὐραίων: "from the tail-end"

ἡμέρας μὲν ἑπτὰ καὶ ἴσας νύκτας ἀναισθήτως εἶχε τοῦ καύματος, ὀγδόῃ δὲ καὶ ἐνάτῃ συνίεμεν αὐτοῦ νοσοῦντος· ἀργότερον γοῦν ἀνέχασκεν, καὶ εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι, ταχὺ συνέμυνεν. δεκάτῃ δὲ καὶ ἐνδεκάτῃ τέλεον ἀπενεκροῦτο καὶ δυσώδες ἦν· τῇ δωδεκάτῃ δὲ μόλις ἐνενοήσαμεν ὥς, εἰ μὴ τις χανόντος αὐτοῦ ὑποστηρίξειεν τοὺς γομφίους, ὥστε μηκέτι συγκλείσαι, κινδυνεύσομεν κατακλεισθέντες ἐν νεκρῷ αὐτῷ ἀπολέσθαι. οὕτω δὴ μεγάλοις

ἀναισθητος, -ον: insensate, unfeeling
ἀναχάσκω: to open the mouth, gape wide
ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy utterly, kill, slay
ἀργότερος: more sluggish
γομφίος, ὁ: a grinder-tooth
δέκατος, -η, -ον: tenth
δυσώδης, -ες: ill-smelling
δωδέκατος, -η, -ον: twelfth
ἐνατος, -η, -ον: ninth
ἐνδέκατος, -η, -ον: eleventh
ἐννοέω: to consider, reflect
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day
κατακλείω: to shut in, enclose

καῦμα, -ατος, τό: burning heat
κινδυνεύω: to run the risk
μόλις: little by little
νεκρός, ὁ: corpse
νοσέω: to be sick, ill, to ail
ὀγδοος, -η, -ον: eighth
συγκλείω: to shut or coop up, enclose
συμμύω: to be shut up, to close, be closed
συνίημι: to bring or set together
ταχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: quick, swift, fleet
ὑποστηρίζω: to underprop, sustain
χάσκω: open

ἀναισθήτως εἶχε: “he was insensible to” + gen.
συνίεμεν: impf. of συν-ἵημι, “we began observing”
αὐτοῦ νοσοῦντος: gen. after συνίεμεν, “that he was ill”
ἀνέχασκεν impf. of ἀναχάσκω, “he was yawning”
εἴ ποτε ἀναχάνοι: ao. opt. of ἀναχάσκω, past general cond., “if ever he yawned”
ἀπενεκροῦτο: impf. of ἀπο-νεκρέω, “he began dying”
ἐνενοήσαμεν: ao. of ἐν-νοέω, “we perceived”
ὥς...κινδυνεύσομεν: ind. st. after ἐνενοήσαμεν and also the apodosis of a future more vivid condition, “that we would run the risk”
εἰ μὴ τις...ὑποστηρίξειεν: ao. opt., protasis of a future more vivid condition changed from subjunctive to the optative in ind. st. after ἐνενοήσαμεν, “we perceived that unless someone shored up his jaws...”
χανόντος αὐτοῦ: ao. part. of χάσκω, gen. abs., “as he opened his mouth”
ὥστε μηκέτι συγκλείσαι: ao. inf. of συν-κλείω, result clause with inf. showing intended result, “so that he could no longer close his mouth”
κινδυνεύσομεν...ἀπολέσθαι: ao. inf. of ἀπόλλυμι, with κινδυνεύσομεν, “we would run the risk of dying”
κατακλεισθέντες: ao. part. pas. of κατακλείω, instrumental, “by being closed in”

δοκοῖς τὸ στόμα διερείσαντες τὴν ναῦν ἐπεσκευάζομεν ὕδωρ τε
ὥς ἐνι πλείστον ἐμβαλλόμενοι καὶ τὰλλα ἐπιτήδεια· κυβερνήσειν
δὲ ἔμελλεν ὁ Σκίνθαρος.

διερίδω: to prop up

δοκός, ἡ: a bearing-beam

ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, put in

ἐπισκευάζω: to get ready, to equip, fit out

ἐπιτήδειος, -α, -ον: made for an end or
purpose

κυβερνάω: to act as pilot or helmsman

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

Σκίνθαρος, ὁ: Scintharus

στόμα, στόματος, τό: a mouth

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

διερείσαντες: ao. part. of διερίδω, “having propped apart”

ὥς ἐνι πλείστον: “as much as possible,” ἐνι = ἔνεστι “it is possible”

τὰλλα = τὰ ἄλλα: “the other supplies”

κυβερνήσειν: future inf. with ἔμελλεν, “would be the pilot.” Skintharos replaces
the first pilot who was one of the casualties.

The verb ἵστημι has the following stems, which should be compared to δίδωμι:

strong aorist stem: στη

reduplicated present stem: ἵστη (from σι-στη) with loss of initial σ.

reduplicated perfect stem: ἔστη (from σε-στη) with loss of initial σ.

An *ι*- before the stem is a sure sign of the present system, present indicative (ἵστημι), imperfect (ἵστην), infinitive (ἵσταναι), etc. Prefixes, such as κατὰ, will have aspirated versions of their final consonant (καθίστημι).

An *ἐ*- (rough breathing) before the stem is a sure sign of the perfect system: perf. (ἔστηκα), plupf. (εἰστήκει), inf. (ἐστάναι), optative (ἐσταίην), etc. Compare ἐφ-ειστήκει

An *ἐ*- (smooth breathing) before the stem (ἔστην) is a sure sign of the aorist indicative, again visible in compounds (κατέστην). There is, however, both a strong aorist (ἔστην) and a weak aorist (ἔστησα), which have different meanings. Non-indicative forms of the aorist have no vowel before the stem: στήσαντες, στάντες, σταίην, στήναι, etc. Cf. καταστήσαντες, ἐπιστάντες, ἀποσταίην, καταστήναι. The future (στήσω) is also based on this stem.

The basic meaning of the verb, “to set up,” has many figurative uses. Particularly unusual are the transitive and intransitive uses of the verb, distinguished by form only in the aorist, the weak aorist being transitive, the strong aorist intransitive. However, the 3. pl. form ἔστησαν can be either transitive (they set up something) or intransitive (they stood). The perfect can mean “I have set myself up, and therefore am standing.” So also, the pluperfect εἰστήκει means “he had set himself up, and therefore was standing.”

Time and Aspect: The Indicative

The term “tense” (from the French word for “time”) is a little misleading, since time is only one factor in the Greek verb system. The forms of the indicative tenses are a combination of time and aspect, the latter indicating the character of the action, of which there are three: continuous action, completed action, and simple action. So, for example, there are three time-aspect combinations in the past:

Time-Aspect	Form	Translation	Traditional Name
past continuous action	<u>ἐπαυόμην</u>	“I was ceasing”	imperfect tense
past simple action	<u>ἐπαυσάμην</u>	“I ceased”	aorist tense
past completed action	<u>ἐπεπαύμην</u>	“I had ceased”	pluperfect tense

The traditional names for these “tenses” are also sometimes misleading. In the examples above, the names “imperfect” and “aorist” refer to aspect only. However, the name “present tense” refers only to time. Even worse are terms like “present optative” and “present subjunctive,” both of which are timeless “tenses.” It is too late to change this nomenclature now, but it is important to be aware of the true differences among various verb forms, particularly since the morphology of the Greek verb is based on the three aspect stems, underlined for the verb παύομαι in the example above.

The imperfect tense can have many meanings, but the idea of incompleteness is essential, in contrast to the perfect tenses, which indicate that an action is completed, especially when it produces a new state of affairs. Compare the following:

ἐπαυόμην: I was ceasing, I began ceasing, I was trying to cease (but did he ever cease?)

ἐπεπαύμην: I had ceased (and was no longer doing it)

πέπαυμαι: I have ceased (and am no longer doing it)

The most important difference among the past tenses is between the aorist and imperfect aspects. With the aorist tense an event is regarded as a single fact in the past, and corresponds to the simple past tense in English. The imperfect tense indicates continuous or repeated action in the past, or some part of an action.

1. In passages where multiple verbs occur, the imperfect will often be used to describe ongoing background actions that provide a context for an aorist action, or preliminary actions that lead up to an action described with an aorist: “the moon was shining, the birds were singing, *a shot rang out*.” But the aorist will also be used to describe a sequence of simple actions: “I went home, undressed, turned on the TV and the phone rang.”

Here is an example from VH 2.4 where three imperfect tenses set the stage for an aorist:

Μετ’ ὀλίγον δὲ πολλαὶ νῆσοι ἐφαίνοντο ... καὶ πῦρ πολὺ ἀπ’ αὐτῶν ἀνεκαίετο ... ἤδη δὲ πλησίον ἤμεν, καὶ θαυμαστή τις αὖρα περιέπνευσεν ἡμᾶς.

After a while many islands *began appearing* ... and from them a great fire was *burning* ... and we *were* already near, when a wonderful breeze *fell upon* us.

In this selection from VH 2.2, a combination of aorist indicatives and participles relate a series of actions:

... ἔπειτα βορέου σφοδροῦ πνεύσαντος μέγα κρύος ἐγένετο, καὶ ἀπ' αὐτοῦ πᾶν ἐπάγη τὸ πέλαγος ... φέρειν οὐ δυνάμενοι τοιόνδε τι ἐπενοήσαμεν. σκάψαντες γὰρ ἐν τῷ ὕδατι σπήλαιον μέγιστον ἐν τούτῳ ἐμείναμεν ἡμέρας τριάκοντα, πῦρ ἀνακαίοντες καὶ σιτούμενοι τοὺς ἰχθύς:

... next the wind *blew* strongly, and a great frost *arose*, and the whole sea was *frozen solid* ... and unable to bear it, we *came up with a plan*. We *dug* a cave in the water and *remained* in it for 30 days, all the while *lighting fires* and *eating fish*.

2. The imperfect can be used to indicate that an action started and continued indefinitely: ἔκλαιον “I started crying (and kept on crying).” But the aorist can indicate the point at which a simple action began, especially if it means entering into a state: ἐβασίλευσα “I became king.”

In this selection from VH 2.1, an aorist participle marks the point at which an action began, but the imperfects that follow indicate the beginning of a process or repeated action.

ἀρξάμενοι οὖν ἀπὸ τῶν οὐραίων ἐκαίμεν, καὶ ἡμέρας μὲν ἑπτὰ καὶ ἰσας νύκτας ἀναισθήτως εἶχε τοῦ καύματος, ὁγδόῃ δὲ καὶ ἐνάτῃ συνίμεν αὐτοῦ νοσοῦντος: ἀργότερον γοῦν ἀνέχασκεν καὶ εἰ ποτε ἀναχάνοι ταχὺ συνέμυνεν. δεκάτῃ δὲ καὶ ἐνδεκάτῃ τέλεον ἀπενεκροῦτο καὶ δυσῶδες ἦν.

And so *making a start* from the tail, we *began burning* (the whale), and *he* wasn't *feeling* the heat for seven days and nights, and on the 8th and 9th day, we *began observing* that he was becoming ill; indeed *he started yawning* more sluggishly, and every time he yawned, *he would close his mouth* quickly. On the 10th and 11th day he actually *started dying* and was *beginning to stink*.

3. The imperfect can indicate customary or repeated action: “I usually do this” or “I used to do this.” But the aorist can express a general truth: παθὼν δέ τε νῆπιος ἔγνων, “the fool *learns* by experience.”

Note the imperfects indicating customary action in VH 2.45

ἄλλοι δὲ μετὰ τούτους ἐπὶ φελλῶν καθήμενοι ζεύξαντες δύο δελφίνας ἡλαυνόν τε καὶ ἡνιόχουν: οἱ δὲ προϊόντες ἐπεσύροντο τοὺς φελλούς. οὗτοι ἡμᾶς οὔτε ἡδίκουν οὔτε ἔφευγον, ἀλλ' ἡλαυνον ἀδεῶς τε καὶ εἰρηνικῶς.

Others behind these were sitting on corks, and having yoked two dolphins, *they would drive and charioteer*: And as they advanced *they would drag along* the corks. These would *neither harm us nor flee*, but *they would drive by pleasantly and peacefully*.

[2] Τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ τὸ μὲν ἤδη τεθνήκει, ἡμεῖς δὲ ἀνελκύσαντες τὸ πλοῖον καὶ διὰ τῶν ἀραιωμάτων διαγαγόντες καὶ ἐκ τῶν ὀδόντων ἐξάψαντες ἡρέμα καθήκαμεν ἐς τὴν θάλατταν· ἐπαναβάντες δὲ ἐπὶ τὰ νῶτα καὶ θύσαντες τῷ Ποσειδῶνι αὐτοῦ παρὰ τὸ τρόπαιον ἡμέρας τε τρεῖς ἐπανυλίσσμενοι - νηνεμία γὰρ ἦν - τῇ τετάρτῃ ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. ἔνθα δὴ πολλοῖς τῶν ἐκ τῆς ναυμαχίας νεκροῖς ἀπηντῶμεν καὶ προσωκέλλομεν, καὶ τὰ σώματα καταμετροῦντες ἐθαυμάζομεν. καὶ ἡμέρας μὲν τινὰς ἐπλέομεν εὐκράτῳ ἀέρι χρώμενοι, ἔπειτα βορέου σφοδροῦ πνεύσαντος μέγα κρύος ἐγένετο, καὶ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ πᾶν ἐπάγη

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
 ἀνέλκω: to draw up
 ἀπαντάω: to meet
 ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off
 ἀραιῶμα, -ατος, τό: interstice, crevice
 βορέας, -ου, ὁ: north wind
 διάγω: to carry over or across
 ἐξάπτω: to fasten from
 ἐπαναβαίνω: to get up on, mount
 ἐπανυλίσσομαι: to encamp on the field
 εὐκρατος, -ον: well-mixed, temperate
 ἡρέμα: gently, softly
 θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel
 θνήσκω: to die, be dying
 θύω: to sacrifice
 καθήμι: to send down, let fall
 καταμετρέω: to measure out to

κρύος, -εος, τό: icy cold, chill, frost
 ναυμαχία, ἡ: a sea-fight
 νεκρός, ὁ: corpse
 νηνεμία, ἡ: stillness in the air, a calm
 νῶτον, τό: the back
 ὀδών, -όντος, ὁ: a tooth
 πήγνυμι: to make fast
 πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
 πνέω: to blow
 Ποσειδῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: Poseidon
 προσοκέλλω: to run on to (+ dat.)
 σφοδρός, ἄ, ὄν: violent, excessive
 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body
 τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth
 τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy
 χράομαι: to use, enjoy (+ dat.)

τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ (sc. ἡμέρᾳ): "on the next day"
 τὸ μὲν: "while the whale..."
 ἐτεθνήκει: plupf. of θνήσκω, "had died"
 ἀνελκύσαντες: ao. part of ἀνακλύζω, "having dragged"
 διαγαγόντες: ao. part. of δια-ἄγω, "having carried through"
 ἐξάψαντες: ao. part. of ἐξάπτω, "having tied"
 καθήκαμεν: perf. of κατα-ἵημι, "we were lowered"
 ἐπαναβάντες; ao. part. of ἐπι-ανα-βαίνω, "having gotten up on"
 ἀπηντῶμεν: impf. of ἀπο-αντάω, "we encountered" + dat.
 προσωκέλλομεν: impf. of προσ-οκέλλω, "we ran (a ship) onto" + dat.
 εὐκράτῳ ἀέρι χρώμενοι: "using a moderate breeze"
 πνεύσαντος: ao. part. gen. s. of πνέω, gen. abs. "north wind having blown"
 ἐγένετο: ao. of γίνομαι, "arose"
 ἐπάγη: ao. pas. of πήγνυμι, "was made fast"

A True Story

Indirect statement after verbs of saying:

Verbs of saying can take the accusative + infinitive construction (see p. 85), but also can take **ὅτι** or **ὥς** + the indicative. In this construction **ὅτι** or **ὥς** is just like the English word "that." The only changes from direct speech are changes to the person and number of the verb and subject.

Direct speech:

"I am coming"

ἔρχομαι

Indirect speech:

I say that I am coming.

λέγω ὅτι ἔρχομαι.

He said that he was coming.

εἶπε ὅτι ἔρχεται.

ἐνενοήσαμεν ὥς κινδυνεύσομεν: "we perceived that we would run the risk of..."

Indirect questions are introduced by the direct or indirect form of interrogative words and follow the same rules as indirect speech introduced by **ὅτι** + the indicative.

Direct question

"Where is the fool going?"

ποῖ ὁ μῶρος βαίνει;

Indirect question

He asked where the fool was going.

ἤρετο ὅποι ὁ μῶρος βαίνει.

μαθεῖν τί τὸ τέλος ἐστὶν τοῦ ὠκεανοῦ: "to know what the end of the ocean is"

μαθεῖν ὥς ἔχει: "to learn how things are"

ἠρώτων τί ἐποίησατο: "I asked why he had made"

Note that in English the tense of the verb in indirect discourse or question changes depending on the tense of the main verb, but that in Greek the verb in indirect discourse retains the tense of the original statement or question. Compare the translations of **ὅτι ἔρχομαι** and **ὅτι ἔρχεται** in the examples above.

The tenses of the direct statement or question can also be changed to the corresponding tense of the optative in secondary sequence. See p. 22.

τὸ πέλαγος, οὐκ ἐπιπολῆς μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐς βάθος ὅσον ἕξι ὀργυιάς, ὥστε καὶ ἀποβάντας διαθεῖν ἐπὶ τοῦ κρυστάλλου. ἐπιμένοντος δὲ τοῦ πνεύματος φέρειν οὐ δυνάμενοι τοιόνδε τι ἐπενοήσαμεν - ὁ δὲ τὴν γνώμην ἀποφηνάμενος ἦν ὁ Σκίνθαρος - σκάψαντες γὰρ ἐν τῷ ὕδατι σπήλαιον μέγιστον ἐν τούτῳ ἐμείναμεν ἡμέρας τριάκοντα, πῦρ ἀνακαίοντες καὶ σιτούμενοι τοὺς ἰχθύς· εὐρίσκομεν δὲ αὐτοὺς ἀνορύττοντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤδη ἐπέλειπε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, προελθόντες καὶ τὴν ναῦν πεπηγυῖαν ἀνασπάσαντες καὶ πετάσαντες τὴν ὀθόνην ἐσυρόμεθα ὥσπερ

ἀνακαίω: to light up	κρύσταλλος, ὁ: ice
ἀνασπᾶω: to draw up, pull up	μένω: to stay, remain
ἀνορύττω: to dig up	ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth
ἀποφαίνω: to show forth, display, produce	ὀργυια, -ās, ἡ: a fathom
βάθος: depth or height	πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea
γνώμη, ἡ: a means of knowing, a mark, token	πετάννυμι: to spread out
διαθέω: to run about	πήγνυμι: to make fast
δύναμαι: to be able, capable, strong enough	πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing
ἕξι: six	προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance
ἐπιλείπω: to leave behind	πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
ἐπιμένω: to stay on, tarry	σιτέομαι: to take food, eat
ἐπινοέω: to think on or of, contrive	σκάπτω: to dig, delve
ἐπιπολή, ἡ: a surface	Σκίνθαρος, ὁ: Scintharus
ἐπιτήδειος, -α, -ον: made for an end or purpose	σπήλαιον, τό: a grotto, cave, cavern
εὐρίσκω: to find	σύρω: to draw, drag
ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὁ: a fish	τοιόσδε: such a
	τριάκοντα: thirty
	ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
	ὥσπερ: just as if, even as

οὐκ ἐπιπολῆς μόνον: “not just the surface”
 ὥστε...διαθεῖν: pr. inf. of δια-θέω, result clause, “so that we could even run about”
 ἐπιμένοντος δὲ τοῦ πνεύματος: gen. abs., “the wind holding”
 ἐπενοήσαμεν: ao. of ἐπι-νοέω, “we devised”
 ὁ ἀποφηνάμενος: ao. part. of ἀποφαίνομαι, “the one who proposed”
 σκάψαντες: ao. part. of σκάπτω, “having dug”
 ἐμείναμεν: ao. of μένω, “we remained”
 ἀνορύττοντες: pr. part. of ἀπορύττω, used instrumentally, “by digging”
 ἐπέλειπε: impf. of ἐπι-λείπω, “began running out”
 προελθόντες: ao. of προ-έρχομαι, “having advanced”
 πεπηγυῖαν: perf. part. acc. s. of πήγνυμι modifying ναῦν, “frozen”
 ἀνασπάσαντες: ao. part. of ἀνασπᾶω, “having pulled up (onto shore)”
 πετάσαντες: ao. part. of πετάννυμι, “having spread out”

πλέοντες λείως καὶ προσηνῶς ἐπὶ τοῦ πάγου διολισθάνοντες.
 ἡμέρα δὲ πέμπτη ἀλέα τε ἦν ἤδη καὶ ὁ πάγος ἐλύετο καὶ ὕδωρ
 πάντα αὖθις ἐγίνετο.

[3] Πλεύσαντες οὖν ὅσον τριακοσίους σταδίους νήσω μικρᾷ
 καὶ ἐρήμῃ προσηνέχθημεν, ἀφ' ἧς ὕδωρ λαβόντες - ἐπελελοίπει
 γὰρ ἤδη - καὶ δύο ταύρους ἀγρίους κατατοξεύσαντες
 ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. οἱ δὲ ταῦροι οὗτοι τὰ κέρατα οὐκ ἐπὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς
 εἶχον, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς, ὥσπερ ὁ Μῶμος ἡξίου. μετ' οὐ
 πολὺ δὲ εἰς πέλαγος ἐμβαίνομεν, οὐχ ὕδατος, ἀλλὰ γάλακτος· καὶ
 νῆσος ἐν αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο λευκὴ πλήρης ἀμπέλων. ἦν δὲ ἡ νῆσος

ἀγρίος: wild or savage

ἀλέα, ἡ: an escape

ἄμπελος, ἡ: a vine, tendril

ἀξιόω: to think or deem worthy of

ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off

γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk

διολισθάνω: to slip through, glide

ἐμβαίνω: to step in, enter

ἐπιλείπω: to leave behind

ἐρήμος, -ον: desolate, lonely, solitary

ἔχω: to have, to hold

ἡμέρα, ἡ: day

κατατοξεύω: to strike down with arrows

κέρας, τό: the horn of an animal

κεφαλῇ, ἡ: the head

λείος, -α, -ον: smooth, plain

λευκός, -ή, -όν: light, white

λύω: to loose

μικρός, -ά, -όν: small

νῆσος, -ον, ἡ: an island

ὅσον: approximately

ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: the eye

πάγος, ὁ: that which is fixed, ice

πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea

πέμπτος, -η, -ον: the fifth

πλέω: to sail, go by sea

πλήρης, -ες: full of (+ gen.)

προσηνής, -ές: soft, gentle, kindly

προσφέρω: to bring to, put in (a ship)

στάδιον, τό: a stade

ταῦρος, ὁ: a bull

τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α: three hundred

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

φαίνομαι: to appear

διολισθάνοντες: pr. part. of διολισθάνω, "gliding"

ἐλύετο: impf. pas. of λύω, "melted"

προσηνέχθημεν: ao. pas. of προσφέρω, "we advanced upon" + dat.

λαβόντες: ao. part. of λαμβάνω, "having taken water"

ἐπελελοίπει: plupf. of ἐπι-λείπω, "it had run out"

κατατοξεύσαντες: ao. part. of κατα-τοξεύω, "having slain with arrows"

ὥσπερ ὁ Μῶμος ἡξίου: impf. of ἀξιόω, "just as Momus used to think worthy."

Momus is a personification of mockery. He mocked Poseidon's invention of the bull because of the position of the horns.

ὕδατος, ἀλλὰ γάλακτος: gen. of material, "a sea not of water, but of milk"

τυρὸς μέγιστος συμπεπηγῶς, ὡς ὕστερον ἐμφαγόντες ἐμάθομεν, σταδίων εἴκοσι πέντε τὸ περίμετρον· αἱ δὲ ἄμπελοι βοτρύων πλήρεις, οὐ μέντοι οἶνον, ἀλλὰ γάλα ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀποθλίβοντες ἐπίνομεν. ἱερὸν δὲ ἐν μέσῃ τῇ νήσῳ ἀνωκοδόμητο Γαλατείας τῆς Νηρηίδος, ὡς ἐδήλου τὸ ἐπίγραμμα. ὅσον δ' οὖν χρόνον ἐκεῖ ἐμείναμεν, ὅψον μὲν ἡμῖν καὶ σιτίον ἡ γῆ ὑπῆρχεν, ποτὸν δὲ τὸ γάλα τὸ ἐκ τῶν βοτρύων. βασιλεύειν δὲ τῶν χωρίων τούτων ἐλέγετο Τυρὼ ἡ Σαλμωνέως, μετὰ τὴν ἐντεῦθεν ἀπαλλαγὴν ταύτην παρὰ τοῦ Ποσειδῶνος λαβοῦσα τὴν τιμὴν.

ἄμπελος, ἡ: a vine, tendril
ἀνοικοδομέω: to build up
ἀπαλλαγὴ, ἡ: deliverance, departure
ἀποθλίβω: to press upon, press, squeeze out
βασιλεύω: to be king, to rule, reign
βότρυον, τό: cluster of grapes
γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk
Γαλάτεια, ἡ: Galatea ("Milky-white")
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth
δηλώω: to make visible, show, exhibit
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place
ἐντεῦθεν: from there
ἐπίγραμμα, -ατος, τό: an inscription
μανθάνω: to learn
μένω: to stay at home, remain

Νηρηίς, -ίδος, ἡ: a daughter of Nereus, a Nereid
οἶνος, ό: wine
ὅψον, τό: cooked food
περίμετρον, τό: the circumference
πλήρης, -ες: filled, full of (+ gen.)
Ποσειδῶν, -ῶνος, ό: Poseidon
ποτόν, τό: a drink
σιτίον, -ον, τό: grain, food, provisions
συμπήγνυμι: to congeal
τιμὴ, ἡ: honor
τυρός, ό: cheese
Τυρῶ, ἡ: Tyro ("Cheese")
ὑπάρχω: to already exist, consist
ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, afterward
χωρίον, τό: a place, spot

συμπεπηγῶς: perf. part. nom. s. of συν-πήγνυμι, "curdled"
ἐμφαγόντες: ao. part. of ἐν-έσθίω, with instrumental force, "by eating our fill"
ἐμάθομεν: ao. of μανθάνω, "we learned"
οὐ μέντοι...ἀλλὰ: "certainly not wine, but rather"
ἀποθλίβοντες: pr. part. of ἀποθλίβω, "squeezing out"
ἐπίνομεν: impf. of πίνω, "we began drinking"
ἀνωκοδόμητο: plupf. of ἀνα-οικοδομέω, "had been constructed"
Γαλατείας τῆς Νηρηίδος: a nymph wooed by the Cyclops
ἐμείναμεν: ao. of μένω, "we stayed"
ὅψον: acc. of respect, "food for cooking"
ὑπῆρχεν: impf. of ὑπάρχω, "consisted"
βασιλεύειν...ἐλέγετο: "is said to be queen"
Τυρῶ ἡ Σαλμωνέως: Tyro, the daughter of Salmoneus, was loved by Enipeus and Poseidon
μετὰ τὴν ἐντεῦθεν ἀπαλλαγὴν: "after her departure from there" (home or life)
λαβοῦσα: ao. part. nom. f. s. of λαμβάνω, "having received"

[4] Μείναντες δὲ ἡμέρας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ πέντε, τῇ ἕκτῃ ἐξωρμήσαμεν, αὔρας μὲν τινος παραπεμπούσης, λειοκύμονος δὲ οὔσης τῆς θαλάττης· ὀγδόῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ πλέοντες οὐκέτι διὰ τοῦ γάλακτος, ἀλλ' ἤδη ἐν ἀλμυρῷ καὶ κυανέῳ ὕδατι, καθορώμεν ἀνθρώπους πολλοὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ πελάγους διαθέοντας, ἅπαντα ἡμῖν προσεικότας, καὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ μεγέθη, πλὴν τῶν ποδῶν

ἀλμυρός, -ά, -όν: salt, briny
αὔρα, ἡ: air in motion, a breeze
γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk
διαθέω: to run about
ἕκτος, -η, -ον: sixth
ἐξορμέω: to put out of harbor
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day
καθορώω: to look down
κυανέος, -α, -ον: dark-blue, glossy-blue
λειοκύμων, -ονος: having low waves
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: magnitude, size, height

μένω: to stay at home, stay where one is, not stir
ὀγδοος, -η, -ον: eighth
παραπέμπω: to convey past or through
πλέω: to sail, go by sea
πλὴν: except + gen.
πούς, ποδός, ό: a foot
προσέοικα: to be like, resemble + dat.
σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body
ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

μείναντες: ao. part. of μένω, "having stayed"

ἐξωρμήσαμεν: ao. of ἐξορμάω, "we shoved off"

αὔρας...παραπεμπούσης: gen. abs., "with a breeze propelling us"

λειοκύμονος δὲ οὔσης τῆς θαλάττης: gen. abs., "the sea being gently moving"

διαθέοντας: pr. part. of δια-θέω, "we saw men running over"

προσεικότας: perf. part. of προσ-έοικα, "similar to us"

καὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ μεγέθη: accusatives of respect, "in body and size"

Indirect statement after verbs of thinking and believing:

In this construction the finite verb of direct speech is changed to an infinitive of the same tense of the direct speech. The subject of the verb in direct speech becomes accusative unless the subject of the indirect speech is the same as the subject of the main verb. In that case the subject will be nominative if expressed. This construction can also be used with verbs of saying.

Direct speech: "He is coming"
έρχεται

Indirect speech: She thinks that he is coming.
νομίζει αὐτον έρχεσθαι.
but

He thinks he (himself) is coming
νομίζει (αὐτος) έρχεσθαι

ἐνόμιζον λήσειν: "they thought that they would escape the notice of"

φασίν Φαέθοντα πυρπολήσαι: "they say that Phaethon had him burned"

έλεγον έπείγεσθαι: "they said that they were hastening"

μόνων· ταῦτα γὰρ φέλλινα εἶχον, ἀφ' οὗ δή, οἶμαι, καὶ ἐκαλοῦντο
 Φελλόποδες. ἐθαυμάσαμεν οὖν ἰδόντες οὐ βαπτιζομένους, ἀλλὰ
 ὑπερέχοντας τῶν κυμάτων καὶ ἀδεῶς ὁδοιποροῦντας. οἱ δὲ καὶ
 προσήεσαν καὶ ἡσπάζοντο ἡμᾶς Ἑλληνικῇ φωνῇ· ἔλεγον δὲ καὶ
 εἰς Φελλῶ τὴν αὐτῶν πατρίδα ἐπείγεσθαι. μέχρι μὲν οὖν τινος
 συνωδοιπόρουν ἡμῖν παραθέοντες, εἰτα ἀποτραπόμενοι τῆς ὁδοῦ
 ἐβάδιζον εὐπλοῖαν ἡμῖν ἐπευξάμενοι.

ἀδεής, -ές: without fear, fearless

ἀποτρέπω: to turn

ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet, bid farewell

βαδίζω: to go slowly

βαπτίζω: to dip in or under water

εἰτα: then, next

Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν: Hellenic, Greek

ἐπείγω: to hasten

ἐπεύχομαι: to pray, wish for

εὐπλοῖα, ἡ: a fair voyage

θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel

καλέω: to call

κύμα, -ατος, τό: a wave

μέχρι: up to (+ gen.)

μόνος: only

ὁδοιπορέω: to travel, make one's way

ὁδός, ἡ: a way, path, track, road, highway

οἶομαι: to suppose, think, deem, imagine

παραθέω: to run beside or alongside

πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ: fatherland

συνωδοιπορέω: to travel together

ὑπερέχω: to hold or stay over

φέλλινος, -η, -ον: made of cork

Φελλόπους, ό: Cork-foot

Φελλώ, -οῦς, ἡ: Cork-land

φωνή, ἡ: a sound, voice

ταῦτα: acc. of respect, "they had corks for these"

ἀφ' οὗ δή, οἶμαι, καὶ: "from which very thing, I suppose, also..."

ἰδόντες: ao. part. from ὁράω, "seeing"

ὑπερέχοντας: pr. part. of ὑπερ-έρχομαι, "staying over" + gen.

ὁδοιποροῦντας: pr. part. of ὁδοι-πορέω, "making their way"

προσήεσαν: impf. of προσ-έρχομαι, "they approached"

ἔλεγον...ἐπείγεσθαι: ind. st., "they said they were hastening"

μέχρι μὲν οὖν τινος: "and so up to a certain point"

ἀποτραπόμενοι: ao. part. of ἀποτρέπω, "having turned from" + gen.

Μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ πολλαὶ νῆσοι ἐφαίνοντο, πλησίον μὲν ἐξ ἀριστερῶν ἢ Φελλῶ, ἐς ἣν ἐκεῖνοι ἔσπευδον, πόλις ἐπὶ μεγάλου καὶ στρογγύλου φελλοῦ κατοικουμένη· πόρρωθεν δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον ἐν δεξιᾷ πέντε μέγισται καὶ ὑψηλόταται, καὶ πῦρ πολὺ ἀπ' αὐτῶν ἀνεκαίετο, κατὰ δὲ τὴν πρῶραν μία πλατεῖα καὶ ταπεινὴ, σταδίου ἀπέχουσα οὐκ ἐλάττους πεντακοσίων. [5] ἤδη δὲ πλησίον ἦμεν, καὶ θαυμαστή τις αὔρα περιέπνευσεν ἡμᾶς, ἥδεῖα καὶ εὐώδης, οἷαν φησὶν ὁ συγγραφεὺς Ἡρόδοτος ἀπόζειν τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας. οἷον γὰρ ἀπὸ ρόδων καὶ ναρκίσσων καὶ

ἀνακαίω: to light up

ἀπέχω: to be away from

ἀπόζω: to smell of

Ἀραβία, ἡ: Arabia

ἀριστερός: left, on the left

αὔρα, ἡ: air in motion, a breeze

δεξιὰ, ἡ: the right hand

εἷς, μία, ἓν: one

ἐλάττων: smaller, less (+ gen.)

εὐδαίμων, -ον: blessed

εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant

ἡδύς, -εἶα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant

Ἡρόδοτος, ὁ: Herodotus

θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wondrous, wonderful

κατοικέω: to dwell in

νάρκισσος, ὁ: the narcissus

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small

πεντακόσιοι, -αι: five hundred

περιπνέω: to breathe over or on

πλατύς, -εἶα, -ύ: wide, broad

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

πόρρωθεν: from afar

πρῶρα, ἡ: the forepart of a ship, prow,
bow

πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire

ρόδον, τό: the rose

σπεύδω: to hasten, quicken

στάδιον, τό: a stade

στρογγύλος: round, spherical

συγγραφεὺς, -έως, ὁ: an historian

ταπεινός, -ή, -όν: low

ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised

φελλός, ὁ: the cork-tree

Φελλῶ, -οὺς, ἡ: Cork-land

Beyond the island of Cork the men catch the scent of the Island of the Blessed.

ἐς ἣν: “to which”

κατοικουμένη: pr. part. of κατα-οικέω, “being inhabited”

κατὰ δὲ τὴν πρῶραν: “straight ahead”

ἀπέχουσα: pr. part. of ἀπο-ἔχω, “being away”

περιέπνευσεν: ao. of περι-πνέω, “blew upon”

οἷαν φησὶν: “such as the one Herodotus claims”

ἀπόζειν: pr. inf. of ἀπο-όζω, “to give a scent from” + gen.

τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας: “from blessed Arabia,” the southern part of the peninsula that typically receives more rainfall.

ὑακίνθων καὶ κρίνων καὶ ἴων, ἔτι δὲ μυρρίνης καὶ δάφνης καὶ ἀμπελάνθης, τοιοῦτον ἡμῖν τὸ ἡδὺν προσέβαλλεν. ἡσθέντες δὲ τῇ ὀσμῇ καὶ χρηστὰ ἐκ μακρῶν πόνων ἐλπίσαντες κατ' ὀλίγον ἤδη πλησίον τῆς νήσου ἐγινόμεθα. ἔνθα δὴ καὶ καθεωρῶμεν λιμένας τε πολλοὺς περὶ πᾶσαν ἀκλύστους καὶ μεγάλους, ποταμούς τε διαυγεῖς ἐξιέντας ἡρέμα εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, ἔτι δὲ λειμῶνας καὶ ὕλας καὶ ὄρνεα μουσικά, τὰ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν ἡϊόνων ᾄδοντα, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν κλάδων· ἀήρ τε κοῦφος καὶ εὐπνοὺς περιεκέχυτο τὴν χώραν· καὶ αὖραι δὲ τινες ἡδεῖαι πνέουσai ἡρέμα τὴν ὕλην

αἶδω: to sing	κοῦφος, -η, -ον: light, nimble
ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air	κρίνον, -ου, τό: a lily
ἀκλυστος, -ον: unwashed by waves	λειμών, -ῶνος, ὁ: a meadow
ἀμπελάνθη, ἡ: flower of the wild vine	λιμὴν, -ένος, ὁ: a harbor, haven
αὔρα, ἡ: air in motion, a breeze	μουσικός, -ή, -όν: of or for music, musical
δάφνη, ἡ: the laurel	μυρρίνη, ἡ: a branch or wreath of myrtle
διαυγής, -ές: transparent	ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
ἐλπίζω: to hope for, look for, expect	ὀσμὴ, ἡ: a smell, scent, odor
ἐξίημι: to send out, empty	περιχέω: to pour round or over
εὐπνοὺς: breathing well, sweet-smelling	πνέω: to blow
ἡδομαι: to please, delight	πόνος, ὁ: work
ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet, pleasant	ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream
ἡίων, -όνος, ἡ: a shore, beach	προσβάλλω: to strike against (+ dat.)
ἡρέμα: still, quietly, gently, softly	ὑακίνθος, ὁ, ἡ: a hyacinth (flower)
ἴον, -ου, τό: the violet	ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
καθοράω: to look down over, see	χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful, good of its kind
κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a young shoot, branch	χώρα, ἡ: land, space

τοιοῦτον τὸ ἡδὺν: “such was the sweetness”
 ἡσθέντες: ao. pas. part. of ἡδομαι, “having been delighted by” + dat.
 ἐλπίσαντες: ao. part. of ἐλπίζω, “having been put in hope for” + acc.
 πλησίον ἐγινόμεθα: impf. of γίνομαι, “we drew near to” + gen.
 καθεωρῶμεν: impf. of κατα-όραω, “we saw”
 ἐξιέντας: pr. part. of ἐξέρχομαι, “emptying”
 ᾄδοντα: pr. part. nom. pl. n. agreeing with ὄρνεα, “singing”
 περιεκέχυτο: plupf. of περι-χέω, “was poured around”
 πνέουσai: pr. part. nom. f. pl. of πνέω, “blowing”

διεσάλευον, ὥστε καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν κλάδων κινουμένων τερπνὰ καὶ
 συνεχῇ μέλη ἀπεσυρίζετο, εἰκότα τοῖς ἐπ' ἐρημίας αὐλήμασι τῶν
 πλαγίων αὐλῶν. καὶ μὴν καὶ βοῇ σύμμικτος ἠκούετο ἄθρους, οὐ
 θορυβώδης, ἀλλ' οἷα γένοιτ' ἂν ἐν συμποσίῳ, τῶν μὲν αὐλούντων,
 τῶν δὲ ἐπαδόντων, ἐνίων δὲ κροτούντων πρὸς αὐλὸν ἢ κιθάραν.
 [6] τούτοις ἅπασι κηλούμενοι κατήχθημεν, ὀρμίσαντες δὲ τὴν
 ναῦν ἀπεβαίνομεν, τὸν Σκίνθαρον ἐν αὐτῇ καὶ δύο τῶν ἐταίρων
 ἀπολιπόντες. προϊόντες δὲ διὰ λειμῶνος εὐανθοῦς ἐντυγχάνομεν

ἄθρους, -ουν: in crowds, collective	κατάγω: to lead to shore
ἅπας: all, the whole	κηλέω: to charm, enchant, fascinate
ἀποβαίνω: to step off, disembark	κιθάρα, ἡ: guitar
ἀπολείπω: to leave over or behind	κινέω: to set in motion, to move
ἀποσυρίζω: to whistle aloud	κλάδος, -ου, ὅ: a young shoot, branch
αὐλέω: to play on the flute	κροτέω: to make to rattle
αὐλημα, -ατος, τό: music for the flute	λειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὅ: a meadow
αὐλός, ὅ: flute	μέλος, -εος, τό: a song
βοή, ἡ: a loud cry, shout	ὀρμίζω: bring into harbor
διασαλεύω: to shake violently	πλάγιος, -ος, -ον: placed sideways, slanting, aslant
ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some	Σκίνθαρος, ὅ: Scintharus
ἐντυγχάνω: to light upon, fall in with, meet with (+ dat.)	σύμμικτος, -ον: commingled, promiscuous
εἰοικα: it resembles (+ dat.)	συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium
ἐπαδω: to sing to or in accompaniment	συνεχής, -ές: continuous
ἐρημία, ἡ: a solitude, desert, wilderness	τερπνός, -ή, -όν: delightful, delightful, pleasant, agreeable, glad
ἐταῖρος, ὅ: a comrade, companion, mate	
εὐανθής, -ές: blooming, budding	
θορυβώδης, -ες: noisy, uproarious, turbulent	

διεσάλευον: impf. of διασαλεύω, “caused to move”
 ὥστε...ἀπεσυρίζετο: result clause, “so that they were whistling”
 ἀπεσυρίζετο: impf. of ἀπο-συρίζω
 τοῖς αὐλήμασι: dat. pl. after εἰκότα, “like the flutings”
 τῶν πλαγίων αὐλῶν: “transverse-flutes” or “Pan-pipes”
 καὶ μὴν καὶ: “and indeed also”
 ἠκούετο: impf. pas. of ἀκούω, “a shot was heard”
 ἀλλ' οἷα: “but such as”
 γένοιτο ἂν: potential opt. of γίνομαι, “might occur”
 τῶν μὲν...τῶν δὲ...ἐνίων δὲ: gen. abs., “some playing, some singing, others beating
 time”
 κατήχθημεν: ao. pas. of κατα-άγω, “we put in”
 ἀπολιπόντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-λείπω, “having left behind”
 προϊόντες: pr. part. of προ-έρχομαι, “advancing”

τοῖς φρουροῖς καὶ περιπόλοις, οἱ δὲ δῆσαντες ἡμᾶς ῥοδίνοις στεφάνοις - οὗτος γὰρ μέγιστος παρ' αὐτοῖς δεσμός ἐστιν - ἀνήγον ὡς τὸν ἄρχοντα, παρ' ὧν δὴ καθ' ὁδὸν ἠκούσαμεν ὡς ἡ μὲν νῆσος εἴη τῶν Μακάρων προσαγορευομένη, ἄρχοι δὲ ὁ Κρήης Ῥαδάμανθυς. καὶ δὴ ἀναχθέντες ὡς αὐτὸν ἐν τάξει τῶν δικαζομένων ἕστημεν τέταρτοι. [7] ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν πρώτη δίκη περὶ Αἴαντος τοῦ Τελαμῶνος, εἴτε χρὴ αὐτὸν συνεῖναι τοῖς ἥρωσιν εἴτε καὶ μὴ· κατηγορεῖτο δὲ αὐτοῦ ὅτι μεμήνοι καὶ ἑαυτὸν ἀπεκτόνοι.

Αἴας, -αντος, ὁ: Ajax
ἀποκτείνω: to kill, slay
ἄρχω: to rule
ἄρχων, -οντος, ὁ: a ruler, commander, chief, captain
δεσμός, ὁ: a bond, shackle
δικάζω: to judge, to give judgment on
δίκη, ἡ: a case
εἴτε: whether
ἥρως, ὁ: a hero, warrior
ἵστημι: to make to stand
κατηγορέω: to accuse (+ gen.)

Κρής, -ης, ὁ: a Cretan
μαίνομαι: to rage, be furious
μακάρος, -α, -ον: blessed
ὁδός, ἡ: a way, path, track, road, highway
περίπολος, ὁ: a patrol
προσαγορεύω: to name, call
ῥόδινος, -η, -ον: made of or from roses
στέφανος, ὁ: a garland
τάξις, -εως, ἡ: an arranging
τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth
φρουρός, ὁ: a watcher, guard

δῆσαντες: ao. part. of δέω, “having bound us”
ἀνήγον: impf. of ἀνα-άγω, “they led us”
ὡς τὸν ἄρχοντα: “to the king”
παρ' ὧν: “from whom” (i.e., the guards)
ὡς ἡ μὲν νῆσος εἴη...ἄρχοι δὲ: ind. st. after ἠκούσαμεν, with the optative (εἴη, ἄρχοι) in secondary sequence, “that this island is... that Radamathus rules”
ὁ Κρήης Ῥαδάμανθυς: Rhadamanthys is represented judging disputes among the dead by Homer, as does Lucian here
ἀναχθέντες: ao. part. pas. of ἀνα-άγω, “having been led”
ἐν τάξει τῶν δικαζομένων: “in the line of those waiting judgment”
ἕστημεν: ao. intrans. of ἵστημι, “we were placed”
Αἴαντος τοῦ Τελαμῶνος: Telamonion Ajax (vs. the Locrian Ajax) is a great hero of the Iliad. Odysseus is awarded the armor of Achilles after his death, and Ajax, enraged, kills himself. The story of his madness and death is told in Sophocles' play, Ajax.
εἴτε χρὴ: ind. quest., “whether it was permitted”
αὐτὸν συνεῖναι: pr. inf. of συν-εἶμι after χρὴ, “that he join with” + dat.
κατηγορεῖτο: impf. pas. of κατα-αγορέω, “it was alleged against him that...” followed by ind. st., with perf. indicatives changed to perf. optatives in secondary sequence
μεμήνοι: perf. opt. of μνηῖω, “that he went mad”
ἀπεκτόνοι: perf. opt. of ἀποκτείνω, “that he had killed”

τέλος δὲ πολλῶν ῥηθέντων ἔγνω ὁ Ῥαδάμανθυς, νῦν μὲν αὐτὸν
πιόμενον τοῦ ἑλλεβόρου παραδοθῆναι Ἱπποκράτει τῷ Κῳῳ
ιατρῷ, ὕστερον δὲ σωφρονήσαντα μετέχειν τοῦ συμποσίου.
[8] δευτέρα δὲ ἦν κρίσις ἐρωτική, Θησέως καὶ Μενελάου περὶ τῆς
Ἑλένης διαγωνιζομένων, ποτέρῳ χρή αὐτὴν συνοικεῖν. καὶ ὁ
Ῥαδάμανθυς ἐδίκασε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι αὐτὴν ἅτε καὶ τοσαῦτα
πονήσαντι καὶ κινδυνεύσαντι τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα· καὶ γὰρ αὖ τῷ

γάμος: a wedding, wedding-feast

γινώσκω: to know, realize, decide

δεύτερος, -α, -ον: second

διαγωνίζομαι: to contend, struggle or
fight against

δικάζω: to judge, to give judgment on

ἑλλέβορος, ὁ: hellebore, poison

ἔνεκα: on account of + *gen.*

ἐρωτικός, -ή, -όν: amatory

ιατρός, ὁ: one who heals, physician

κινδυνεύω: take the risk, do a daring thing

κρίσις, -εως, ἡ: a separating, decision

Κῳος, -α, -ον: from the island Cos, Coan

μετέχω: to partake of, enjoy a share of (+
gen.)

παραδίδωμι: to give or hand over to
another, transmit

πίνω: to drink

πονέω: to work hard, do work, suffer toil

πότερος, -α, -ον: whether of the two?

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party,
symposium

συνοικέω: to dwell with (+ *dat.*)

σωφρονέω: to be sound of mind

τέλος: finally

πολλῶν ῥηθέντων (ao. pas. of λέγω): *gen. abs.*, “many things having been said”

ἔγνω: ao. of γινώσκω, taking acc. + inf. form of ind. st. expressing judgment

πιόμενον: fut. part. acc. s. of πίνω modifying αὐτὸν, expressing purpose, “in order
for him to drink...”

ἑλλεβόρου: Hellebore was a drug used to treat madness.

παραδοθῆναι: ao. inf. pas. of παραδίδωμι, “that he should be handed over to” + *dat.*

Ἱπποκράτει: Hippocrates of Kos, 5th c. physician

σωφρονήσαντα μετέχειν: ind. st., “that, after having regained his senses, he
share”

Θησέως: Theseus is the greatest of the Attic heroes, a legendary king who, like
Heracles, rids the world of monsters. He had sought Helen as a wife before she
was awarded to Menelaus. Another story has Theseus and Pirithous abducting
Helen.

Μενελάου: Brother of Agamemnon, who was awarded Helen as a wife. The
abduction of Helen by Paris was the cause of the Trojan War.

διαγωνιζομένων: *gen. abs.*, “with Theseus and Menelaus contending”

ποτέρῳ χρή αὐτὴν συνοικεῖν: ind. quest., “with which of the two it was necessary
for her to live....”

συνεῖναι αὐτὴν: ind. st. after ἐδίκασε, “that she should live with”

ἅτε + part: “on the ground that...”

πονήσαντι: ao. part. dat. s. of πονέω, causal, modifying Μενελάῳ, “that he had
undergone”

καὶ γὰρ αὖ: “and furthermore”

ἄτε and ὥς + participle expressing cause

Both of these particles can express the reasons an action was carried out, but with **ἄτε** the participle states the cause on the authority of the speaker or writer, whereas with **ὥς** the participle indicates an alleged or supposed intention which does not implicate the speaker or writer.

Compare:

ὁ Ῥαδάμανθος ἐδίκησε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι αὐτὴν ἄτε καὶ τοσαῦτα πονήσαντι καὶ κινδυνεύσαντι τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα.

Rhadamanthus decided that she (Helen) should live with Menelaus *on the grounds that he had labored so much and run such risks* for the marriage.

ὁ Ῥαδάμανθος ἐδίκησε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι αὐτὴν ὥς καὶ τοσαῦτα πονήσαντι καὶ κινδυνεύσαντι τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα

Rhadamanthus decided that she (Helen) should live with Menelaus *because, as Rhadamanthus explained, Menelaus had labored so much and run such risks* for the marriage.

In this second version, the implication would be that this may not be the real reason for Rhadamanthus' judgment.

In either construction, the case of the participle will agree with the agent of the action in the sentence. Note how the following changes to the case of the participle change the meaning of these sentences:

ὁ Ῥαδάμανθος ἐδίκησε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι αὐτὴν ἄτε καὶ τοσαῦτα πονήσας καὶ κινδυνεύσας τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα

Rhadamanthus decided that she should live with Menelaus *on the grounds that he (Rhadamanthus) had labored so much and run such risks* for the marriage.

ὁ Ῥαδάμανθος ἐδίκησε Μενελάῳ συνεῖναι αὐτὴν ἄτε καὶ τοσαῦτα πονήσασαν καὶ κινδυνεύσασαν τοῦ γάμου ἔνεκα

Rhadamanthus decided that she should live with Menelaus *on the grounds that she (i.e. Helen) had labored so much and run such risks* for the marriage.

Here are some other examples of **ἄτε** and **ὥς** + participle from *A True Story*:

ἄριστα ἂν ἔχοι διὰ μάχης ἐλθεῖν αὐτοῖς, ἄτε οὖσιν ἀνόπλοις, αὐτοὺς γε ὥπλισμένους.

It would be best for these who are armed to attack in battle *them, since they are unarmed*.

κρίσιν ἐδεδοίκεσαν, ἄτε καὶ τὸ κριτήριον αὐτοὶ ἀνηρηκότες.

They feared his judgment, *because they had disputed* the criterion.

οἱ δὲ καὶ προσήεσαν καὶ ἡσπάζοντο ὥς ἂν καὶ συνήθεις ὑπάρχοντες

These in fact approached and greeted us *as though they were acquaintances* (but they really were not).

Θησεὶ καὶ ἄλλας εἶναι γυναῖκας, τὴν τε Ἀμαζόνα καὶ τὰς τοῦ Μίνωος θυγατέρας. [9] τρίτη δ' ἐδικάσθη περὶ προεδρίας Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τε τῷ Φιλίππῳ καὶ Ἀννίβᾳ τῷ Καρχηδονίῳ, καὶ ἔδοξε προέχειν ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ θρόνος αὐτῷ ἐτέθη παρὰ Κῦρον τὸν Πέρσῃ τὸν πρότερον. [10] τέταρτοι δὲ ἡμεῖς προσήχθημεν· καὶ ὁ μὲν ἤρετο τί παθόντες ἔτι ζῶντες ἱεροῦ χωρίου ἐπιβαίημεν· ἡμεῖς δὲ πάντα ἐξῆς διηγησάμεθα. οὕτω δὲ μετασυστάμενος ἡμᾶς

Ἀμαζών, -όνος, ἡ: an Amazon
 γυνή, -αῖκος, ἡ: a woman, wife
 διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, narrate
 δικάζω: to judge, to give judgment on
 ἐξῆς: in order, in a row
 ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon
 ἐρωτάω: to ask, enquire
 ζάω: to live
 θρόνος, ὁ: a seat, chair
 θυγάτηρ, ἡ: a daughter
 ἱερός, -ά, -όν: sacred
 Καρχηδόνιος, -α, -ον: Carthaginian
 Κῦρος, ὁ: Cyrus

μεθίστημι: to set aside, change places
 πάσχω: to experience, to suffer
 Πέρσης, -ου, ὁ: a Persian
 προεδρία, ἡ: the privilege of the front seats
 προέχω: to hold before, prefer
 προσάγω: to bring to or forth
 πρότερος: first
 τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth
 τίθημι: to set, put, place
 τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third
 χωρίον, τό: a place, spot

εἶναι γυναῖκας: continuation of ind. st. after ἐδίκασε, “that there were wives”
 τὴν Ἀμαζόνα: The Amazon is Hippolyte or Antiope, both of whom Theseus was said to have abducted and made his wife. After bearing a son, Hippolytus, Hippolyte or Antiope was cast aside for Phaedra, the daughter of Minos.
 τὰς τοῦ Μίνωος θυγατέρας: the daughters of Minos are Phaedra and Ariadne, the latter abandoned on an island after having helped Theseus defeat the Minotaur; the former Theseus’ wife who fell in love with her stepson, Hippolytus.
 ἐδικάσθη: ao. pas. of δικάζω, “was judged”
 προεδρίας: gen. s., “precedence,” lit. “front seats”
 Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῷ Φιλίππῳ: Alexander the Great (356 – 323), the Macedonian general who conquered the Persian Empire.
 Ἀννίβᾳ τῷ Καρχηδονίῳ: Hannibal (248–183), the Carthaginian general who led his people against Rome in the second Punic War.
 Κῦρον τὸν πρότερον: “the first Cyrus,” 576–530 BCE
 ἔδοξε προέχειν: “seemed to be superior”
 ἐτέθη: ao. pas. of τίθημι, “was placed”
 προσήχθημεν: ao. pas. of προσάγω, “we were brought forth”
 ἤρετο...ἐπιβαίημεν: ao. opt. of ἐπιβαίνω, ind. quest. with opt. in sec. seq.
 τί παθόντες: ao. pas. of πάσχω, “having experienced what?”
 διηγησάμεθα: ao. of διαηγέομαι, “we narrated”
 οὕτω δὲ: “next, as you would expect”
 μετασυστάμενος: ao. part. trans. of μεταίσθημι, “setting us aside”

ἐπὶ πολὺν χρόνον ἐσκέπτετο καὶ τοῖς συνέδροις ἐκοινοῦτο περὶ ἡμῶν. συνήδρευον δὲ ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ καὶ Ἀριστείδης ὁ δίκαιος ὁ Ἀθηναῖος. ὥς δὲ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ, ἀπεφάναντο, τῆς μὲν φιλοπραγμοσύνης καὶ τῆς ἀποδημίας, ἐπειδὴν ἀποθάνωμεν, δοῦναι τὰς εὐθύνas, τὸ δὲ νῦν ῥητὸν χρόνον μείναντας ἐν τῇ νήσῳ καὶ συνδιαιτηθέντας τοῖς ἥρωσιν ἀπελθεῖν. ἔταξαν δὲ καὶ τὴν προθεσμίαν τῆς ἐπιδημίας μὴ πλεόν μηνῶν ἑπτὰ.

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian

ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from

ἀποδημία, ἡ: a being from home, a going abroad

ἀποθνήσκω: to die

ἀποφαίνω: to display, produce, resolve

δίδωμι: to give, pay (a penalty)

δίκαιος: just, well-ordered

ἐπειδάν: whenever (+ subj.)

ἐπιδημία, ἡ: a stay in a place

ἑπτὰ: seven

εὐθυνα, ἡ: a setting straight, penalty

ἥρως, ὁ: a hero, warrior

κοινῶ: to make common, communicate

μείς, μήνος, ὁ: a month

πλέων, -ον: more (than + gen.)

προθέσμία: fore-appointed time

ῥητός, -ή, -όν: stated, specified

σκέπτομαι: to look about, look carefully

συνδιαιτάομαι: to dwell with (+ dat.)

συνεδρεύω: to sit together, sit in council

σύνεδρος, -ον: councilor

τάσσω: to arrange, determine

φιλοπραγμοσύνη, ἡ: meddlesomeness

χρόνος, ὁ: time

συνήδρευον: impf. 3 pl. of συν-ἐδρεύω, “sat in council with him”

ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ καὶ: “many others, but especially...”

Ἀριστείδης ὁ δίκαιος: Aristides the Just (530 - 468 B.C), whose legendary fairness is recounted by Plutarch.

ὥς δὲ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ: “how it seemed good to him”

ἀπεφάναντο: ao. of ἀπο-φαίνω, “they resolved”

τῆς μὲν φιλοπραγμοσύνης καὶ τῆς ἀποδημίας: gen. indicating the grounds of the sentence, “for the charge of...”

ἐπειδὴν ἀποθάνωμεν: subj. of ἀποθνήσκω, indefinite temporal clause, “whenever we die”

δοῦναι: ao. inf. of δίδωμι, ind. st. after ἀπεφάναντο, “they resolved that we pay a penalty”

τὸ δὲ νῦν: “but for the present”

ῥητὸν χρόνον: acc. of duration, “for a specified time”

μείναντας...συνδιαιτηθέντας: ao. part. acc. pl. modifying the subject of ἀπελθεῖν,

ἀπελθεῖν: ao. inf. of ἀπο-έρχομαι, continuation of ind. st. after ἀπεφάναντο, “that we depart”

ἔταξαν: ao. of τάσσω, “they determined”

[11] Τούντεϋθεν αὐτομάτων ἡμῖν τῶν στεφάνων περιρρυνέντων ἐλελύμεθα καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἡγόμεθα καὶ εἰς τὸ τῶν Μακάρων συμπόσιον. αὕτῃ μὲν οὖν ἡ πόλις πᾶσα χρυσῇ, τὸ δὲ τεῖχος περίκειται σμαράγδινον· πύλαι δὲ εἰσιν ἐπτά, πᾶσαι μονόξυλοι κινναμώμινοι· τὸ μέντοι ἔδαφος τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἡ ἐντὸς τοῦ τείχους γῆ ἐλεφαντίνη· ναοὶ δὲ πάντων θεῶν βηρύλλου λίθου ὠκοδομημένοι, καὶ βωμοὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς μέγιστοι μονόλιθοι ἀμεθύστινοι, ἐφ' ὧν ποιοῦσι τὰς ἐκατόμβας. περὶ δὲ τὴν πόλιν ρεῖ ποταμὸς μύρου τοῦ καλλίστου, τὸ πλάτος πήχεων ἑκατὸν

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
ἀμεθύστινος, -η, -ον: of amethyst
αὐτόματος: acting of one's own will, of oneself

βήρυλλος, ἡ: gem of sea-green color, beryl
βωμός, ὁ: any raised platform, an altar
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth
ἔδαφος, -εος, τό: a bottom, foundation
ἐκατόμβη, ἡ: an offering of a hundred oxen

ἑκατόν: a hundred

ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: ivory

ἐντεϋθεν: hence or thence

ἐντός: within, inside

ἐπτά: seven

θεός, ὁ: a god

κινναμώμινος, -η, -ον: prepared from or with cinnamon

λίθος, -ου, ὁ: a stone

λύω: to loose

μακάρος, -α, -ον: blessed

μονόλιθος, -ον: made out of one stone

μονόξυλος, -ον: made from a solid trunk

μύρον, -ου, τό: sweet-oil, unguent, balsam

ναός, -ώ, ὁ: the dwelling of a god, a temple

οἰκοδομέω: to build a house

περίκειμαι: to lie round about

περιρρέω: to flow round

πήχυς, ὁ: a cubit

πλάτος, τό: breadth, width

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream

πύλη, ἡ: a gate

ρέω: to flow, run, stream, gush

σμαράγδινος, -η, -ον: emerald

στέφανος, ὁ: a garland

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium

τεῖχος, -εος, τό: a wall

χρύσεος, -η, -ον: golden, of gold

They observe the marvelous lifestyle of those on the Isle of the Blessed, their beautiful city, their habits, their food, etc.

τούντεϋθεν (= τὸ ἐντεϋθεν): "thereupon"

στεφάνων περιρρυνέντων: ao. part. in gen. abs., "the garlands having fallen off"

ἐλελύμεθα: plupf. pas. of λύω, "we were released"

περίκειται: "is placed around"

ὠκοδομημένοι: perf. part. of οἰκοδομέω, "having been built"

ἐφ' ὧν ποιοῦσι: "upon which they make"

πήχεων ἑκατὸν βασιλικῶν: "100 royal cubits"

βασιλικῶν, βάθος δὲ [πέντε] ὥστε νεῖν εὐμαρῶς. λουτρὰ δέ ἐστιν αὐτοῖς οἰκοὶ μεγάλοι ὑάλινοι, τῷ κινναμῶμῳ ἐγκαϊόμενοι· ἀντὶ μέντοι τοῦ ὕδατος ἐν ταῖς πυέλοις δρόσος θερμὴ ἔστιν. [12] ἐσθῆτι δὲ χρῶνται ἀραχνίοις λεπτοῖς, πορφυροῖς. αὐτοὶ δὲ σώματα μὲν οὐκ ἔχουσιν, ἀλλ' ἀναφεῖς καὶ ἄσαρκοί εἰσιν, μορφὴν δὲ καὶ ἰδέαν μόνην ἐμφαίνουσιν, καὶ ἀσώματοι ὄντες ὅμως συνεστᾶσιν καὶ κινοῦνται καὶ φρονοῦσι καὶ φωνὴν ἀφιᾶσιν, καὶ ὅλως ἔοικε γυμνὴ τις ἢ ψυχὴ αὐτῶν περιπολεῖν τὴν τοῦ σώματος

ἀναφής, -ές: not to be touched, impalpable	κιννάμωμον, τό: cinnamon
ἀράχνιον, τό: a spider's web	λεπτός, -ή, -όν: fine
ἄσαρκος, -ον: without flesh, lean	λουτρόν, τό: a bath, bathing place
ἀσώματος, -ον: incorporeal	μορφή, ἡ: shape
ἀφίημι: to send forth, discharge	νέω: to swim
βάθος: depth or height	οἶκος, ὁ: a house, abode, dwelling
βασιλικός, -ή, -όν: royal, kingly	ὅλως: wholly, generally
γυμνός, -ή, -όν: naked, unclad	περιπολέω: to go around or about
δρόσος, ἡ: dew	πορφύρεος: purple
ἐγκαίω: to burn or heat in	πυέλος, ἡ: an oblong trough
ἐμφαίνω: exhibit	συνίστημι: to subsist
ἔοικα: it seemed good	σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body
ἐσθής, -ῆτος, ἡ: dress, clothing, raiment	ὑάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass
εὐμαρής, -ές: easy, convenient, without trouble	ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm	φρονέω: to think, to have understanding
ἰδέα, ἡ: form	φωνή, ἡ: a sound, tone
κινέω: to set in motion, to move	χράομαι: to use (+ dat.)
	ψυχή, ἡ: spirit

βάθος δὲ πέντε: acc. of respect, "five in depth"
ὥστε νεῖν: result clause, "so one can swim"
αὐτοὶ δὲ: "as for themselves"
ἀναφεῖς: nom. pl. masc. (ἀν-άφη), "untouchable"
ἐμφαίνουσιν: "they manifest"
καὶ ἀσώματοι ὄντες ὅμως: concessive, "and although being bodiless, still...."
συνεστᾶσιν: perf. of συν-ἵστημι, "they subsist"
φωνὴν ἀφιᾶσιν: pr. of ἀφ-ἵημι, "they speak"
καὶ ὅλως: "and generally"
τὴν...ὁμοιότητα: "the resemblance of" + gen.

ὁμοιότητα περικειμένη· εἰ γοῦν μὴ ἄψαιτό τις, οὐκ ἂν ἐξελέγξειε μὴ εἶναι σῶμα τὸ ὁρώμενον· εἰσὶ γὰρ ὥσπερ σκιαὶ ὀρθαί, οὐ μέλαιναι. γηράσκει δὲ οὐδεὶς, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ἧς ἂν ἡλικίας ἔλθῃ παραμένει. οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ νύξ παρ' αὐτοῖς γίνεται, οὐδὲ ἡμέρα πάνυ λαμπρά· καθάπερ δὲ τὸ λυκαυγὲς ἤδη πρὸς ἔω, μηδέπω ἀνατείλαντος ἡλίου, τοιοῦτο φῶς ἐπέχει τὴν γῆν. καὶ μέντοι καὶ ὦραν μίαν ἴσασιν τοῦ ἔτους· αἰεὶ γὰρ παρ' αὐτοῖς ἔαρ ἐστὶ καὶ εἰς ἄνεμος πνεῖ παρ' αὐτοῖς ὁ ζέφυρος. [13] ἡ δὲ χώρα πᾶσι μὲν

αἰεὶ: always, for ever
ἀνατέλλω: to make to rise up
ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
ἅπτω: to touch
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth
γηράσκω: to grow old, become old
γοῦν: at any rate, any way
ἔαρ, τό: spring
ἐξελέγχω: refute
ἐπιχέω: to pour over
ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
ἔως, ἔω, ἡ: daybreak, dawn
ζέφυρος, ὁ: Zephyrus, the west wind
ἡλικία, ἡ: time of life, age
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun
ἡμέρα, ἡ: day
λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, brilliant, radiant

λυκαυγής, -ές: of or at twilight
μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν: black
μηδέπω: nor as yet, not as yet
νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ: night
οἶδα: to know
ὁμοιότης, -ητος, ἡ: likeness, resemblance
ὁράω: to see
ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: genuine, upright
παραμένω: to stay beside or near, stand by
περίκειμαι: to lie round about
πνέω: to blow
σκιά, -ᾶς, ἡ: a shadow
σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body
φῶς, φωτός, τό: light
χώρα, ἡ: a place, space
ῥα, ἡ: a period, season

περικειμένη: pr. part. nom. s. modifying ψυχῇ, “having put about itself”
εἰ μὴ ἄψαιτό τις: future less vivid cond., “unless someone were to touch”
ἄψαιτό: ao. opt. of ἅπτω
ἐξελέγξειε: ao. opt. of ἐξελέγχω, “he would not refute”
μὴ εἶναι: ind. st. after ἐξελέγξειε, “that what they were seeing was not a body”
ἐφ' ἧς ἂν ἡλικίας ἔλθῃ (ao. subj.): indefinite temporal clause “at whatever age he arrives”
οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ: “there is not even”
μηδέπω ἀνατείλαντος ἡλίου: gen. abs., “sun not yet risen”
ἀνατείλαντος: ao. part. of ἀνατέλλω
ἴσασιν: pr. 3 pl. of οἶδα, “they know”
καὶ μέντοι: “and what's more”

ἄνθειςιν, πᾶσι δὲ φυτοῖς ἡμέροις τε καὶ σκιεροῖς τέθληλεν· αἱ μὲν γὰρ ἄμπελοι δωδεκάφοροί εἰσιν καὶ κατὰ μῆνα ἕκαστον καρποφοροῦσιν· τὰς δὲ ροιάς καὶ τὰς μηλέας καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ὀπώραν ἔλεγον εἶναι τρισκαιδεκάφορον· ἐνὸς γὰρ μηνὸς τοῦ παρ' αὐτοῖς Μινώου δις καρποφορεῖν· ἀντὶ δὲ πυροῦ οἱ στάχυες ἄρτον ἕτοιμον ἐπ' ἄκρων φύουσιν ὥσπερ μύκητας. πηγαὶ δὲ περὶ τὴν πόλιν ὕδατος μὲν πέντε καὶ ἐξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιαι, μέλιτος δὲ ἄλλαι τοσαῦται, μύρου δὲ πεντακόσιαι, μικρότεραι μέντοι αὗται, καὶ ποταμοὶ γάλακτος ἐπτὰ καὶ οἶνου ὀκτώ.

ἄκρον, -ον, τό: the highest or furthest point

ἄμπελος, ἡ: a vine, tendril

ἄνθος, ὁ: a blossom, flower

ἄρτος, ὁ: a cake or loaf of wheat-bread

γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk

δῖς: twice, doubly

δωδεκάφοροι: bearing fruit 12 times a year

ἐξήκοντα: sixty

ἐπτὰ: seven

ἐτοιμος, -ον: at hand, ready, prepared

ἡμερος, -α, -ον: tame, tamed, reclaimed

θάλλω: to bloom

καρποφορέω: to bear fruit

μείς, μήνος, ὁ: a month

μέλι, -ιτος, τό: honey

μηλέα, ἡ: an apple-tree

μικρός, -ά, -όν: small

μύκης, -ητος, ὁ: a mushroom

μύρον, -ου, τό: unguent, balsam

Μινώιος, -α, -ον: of Minos, legendary king of Crete

οἶνος, ὁ: wine

ὀκτώ: eight

ὀπώρα, ἡ: a fruit tree

πεντακόσιοι, -αι: five hundred

πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream

πυρός, ὁ: wheat

ροιά, ἡ: mulberry

σκιερός, -ά, -όν: shady, giving shade

στάχυς, -υος, ὁ: an ear of corn

τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α: three hundred

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

φυτόν, τό: a plant, tree

φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth

ἡμέροις τε καὶ σκιεροῖς: "both cultivated and shady." There is a pun here as though ἡμέροις means "sunny."

τέθληλεν: perf. of θάλλω, "has bloomed with" + dat.

εἶναι τρισκαιδεκάφορον: ind. st. after ἔλεγον, "that they bore fruit 13 times a year"

τοῦ παρ' αὐτοῖς Μινώου: gen. of time, "in the month called Minoan among them"

δῖς καρποφορεῖν: inf. continues ind. st., "that they bear fruit twice"

ὥσπερ μύκητας: "like mushrooms"

ἄλλαι τοσαῦται: "same number of other (rivers)"

[14] Τὸ δὲ συμπόσιον ἔξω τῆς πόλεως πεποίηται ἐν τῷ Ἑλυσίῳ καλουμένῳ πεδίῳ· λειμῶν δέ ἐστιν κάλλιστος καὶ περὶ αὐτὸν ὕλη παντοία πυκνή, ἐπισκιάζουσα τοὺς κατακειμένους. καὶ στρωμνὴν μὲν ἐκ τῶν ἀνθῶν ὑποβέβληται, διακονοῦνται δὲ καὶ παραφέρουσιν ἕκαστα οἱ ἄνεμοι πλήν γε τοῦ οἰνοχοεῖν· τούτου γὰρ οὐδὲν δέονται, ἀλλ' ἔστι δένδρα περὶ τὸ συμπόσιον ὑάλινα μεγάλα τῆς διαυγεστάτης ὑάλου, καὶ καρπὸς ἐστὶ τῶν δένδρων τούτων ποτήρια παντοία καὶ τὰς κατασκευὰς καὶ τὰ μεγέθη. ἐπειδὴ οὖν παρὶ τὴν τις ἐς τὸ συμπόσιον, τρυγῆσας ἐν ἡ καὶ δύο τῶν ἐκπωμάτων παρατίθεται, τὰ δὲ αὐτίκα οἶνου πλήρη γίνεται.

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind

ἄνθος, ὁ: a blossom, flower

δένδρον, τό: a tree

δέομαι: to need (+ gen.)

διακονέω: to minister, serve, do service

διαυγής, -ές: transparent

ἐκπωμα, -ατος, τό: a drinking-cup, beaker

ἔξω: outside of + gen.

ἐπισκιάζω: to throw a shade upon

Ἑλύσιος, -α, -ον: Elysian

καλέω: to call, summon

καρπός, ὁ: fruit

κατάκειμαι: to lie down, lie outstretched

κατασκευή, ἡ: preparation

λειμών, -ῶνος, ὁ: a meadow

οἶνος, ὁ: wine

οἰνοχοέω: to pour out wine for drinking

παντοῖος, -α, -ον: of all sorts or kinds, manifold

παντοῖος, -α, -ον: of all sorts or kinds, manifold

παρατίθωμι: to place beside

παραφέρω: to bring to

πεδίον, τό: a plain, flat

πλήν: except + gen.

πλήρης, -ες: filled, full

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

ποτήριον, τό: a drinking-cup, wine-cup

πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, compact

στρωμνή, ἡ: a bed spread or prepared

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium

τρυγάω: to gather in

ὑάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass

ὑαλος, ἡ: a clear, transparent stone

ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

ὑποβάλλω: to throw, put or lay under

τὸ συμπόσιον: acc. of resp., "as for their symposium"

πεποίηται: perf. mid./pas. of ποιέω, "they are prepared"

ἐπισκιάζουσα: pr. part., "casting shade on"

ὑποβέβληται: perf. mid. of υποβάλλω, "they have laid down under (themselves)"

πλήν γε τοῦ οἰνοχοεῖν: articular infinitive, "except, of course, for pouring wine"

καὶ τὰς κατασκευὰς καὶ τὰ μεγέθη: accusatives of respect, "both in style and size"

ἐπειδὴ οὖν παρὶ τὴν τις: pr. subj. of παρα-έρχομαι, general temporal clause, "whenever someone comes along"

τρυγῆσας: ao, part. nom. s. of τρυγάω, "having plucked"

ἐν ἡ καὶ δύο: "one or even two"

παρατίθεται: pr. mid. of παρα-τίθωμι, "sets beside him"

πλήρη γίνεται: "become full of" + gen.

οὕτω μὲν πίνουσιν, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν στεφάνων αἱ ἀηδόνες καὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ μουσικὰ ὄρνεα ἐκ τῶν πλησίον λειμώνων τοῖς στόμασιν ἀνθολογοῦντα κατανίφει αὐτοὺς μετ' ὥδης ὑπερπετόμενα. καὶ μὴν καὶ μυρίζονται ὧδε· νεφέλαι πυκναὶ ἀνασπάσασαι μύρον ἐκ τῶν πηγῶν καὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐπιστᾶσαι ὑπὲρ τὸ συμπόσιον ἡρέμα τῶν ἀνέμων ὑποθλιβόντων ὕουσι λεπτὸν ὥσπερ δρόσον.

[15] Ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ δείπνῳ μουσικῇ τε καὶ ὥδαῖς σχολάζουσιν· ᾄδεται δὲ αὐτοῖς τὰ Ὅμηρου ἔπη μάλιστα· καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ πάρεστι

ᾄδω: to sing
 ἀηδών, -όνος, ὁ: a nightingale
 ἀνασπάω: to draw up, pull up
 ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
 ἀνθολογέω: to gather flowers
 δείπνον, τό: the principal meal
 δρόσος, ἡ: dew
 ἐπιστάζω: let fall in drops upon or into
 ἔπος, -εος: a word, an epic
 ἡρέμα: stilly, quietly, gently, softly
 κατανίφω: to cover with snow
 λειμών, -ώνος, ὁ: a meadow
 λεπτός, -ή, -όν: a small amount, lightly
 μουσικός, -ή, -όν: musical
 μυρίζω: to rub with ointment or unguent
 μύρον, -ου, τό: sweet-oil, balsam
 νεφέλη, ἡ: a cloud

Ὅμηρος, -ου, ὁ: Homer
 ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
 πηγῇ, ἡ: running waters, streams
 πίνω: to drink
 ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream
 πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, compact
 στέφανος, ὁ: a garland
 στόμα, στόματος, τό: a mouth
 συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium
 σχολάζω: to have leisure for (+ dat.)
 ὑπερπέτομαι: to fly over
 ὑποθλίβω: to press under or gently
 ὕω: to send rain, to rain
 ὧδε: in the following way
 ὥδή, ἡ: a song, lay, ode

ἀνθολογοῦντα: pr. part. nom. pl. n. of ἀνθολογέω, modifying ὄρνεα, “gathering flowers”

κατανίφει: “let them fall like snow”

ὑπερπετόμενα: pr. part. nom. pl. n. of ὑπερπέτομαι, modifying ὄρνεα, “flying around”

καὶ μὴν καὶ: indicating a climax, “moreover”

ἀνασπάσασαι: ao. part. nom. pl. f. of ἀνασπάω, “having drawn up”

ἐπιστᾶσαι: ao. part. intrans. nom. pl. f. of ἐφίστημι, “having stood over”

τῶν ἀνέμων ὑποθλιβόντων: gen. abs., “the winds pressing gently”

ὕουσι: pr. of ὕω, “they rain”

ᾄδεται: pr. of ᾄδω, “are recited”

τὰ Ὅμηρου ἔπη: “the Homeric epics”

καὶ αὐτὸς: “and he himself” (i.e. Homer)

καὶ συνευωχεῖται αὐτοῖς ὑπὲρ τὸν Ὀδυσσεά κατακείμενος. οἱ μὲν οὖν χοροὶ ἐκ παίδων εἰσὶν καὶ παρθένων· ἐξάρχουσι δὲ καὶ συνάδουσιν Εὐνομός τε ὁ Λοκρὸς καὶ Ἀρίων ὁ Λέσβιος καὶ Ἀνακρέων καὶ Στησίχορος· καὶ γὰρ τοῦτον παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐθεασάμην, ἥδη τῆς Ἑλένης αὐτῷ διηλλαγμένης. ἐπειδὴν δὲ οὗτοι παύσωνται ἄδοντες, δεύτερος χορὸς παρέρχεται ἐκ κύκνων καὶ χελιδόνων καὶ ἀηδόνων. ἐπειδὴν δὲ καὶ οὗτοι ἄσσωσιν, τότε ἥδη πᾶσα ἡ ὕλη ἐπαυλεῖ τῶν ἀνέμων καταρχόντων. [16] μέγιστον δὲ

ᾄδω: to sing
ἀηδών, -όνος, ὁ: the nightingale
ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
δεύτερος, -α, -ον: second
διαλλάσσω: to forgive
ἐξάρχω: to make a beginning
ἐπαυλέω: to accompany on the flute
θεάομαι: to look on, gaze at, view, behold
κατάκειμαι: to lie down, lie outstretched
κατάρχω: to lead the way
κύκνος, ὁ: a swan

Ὀδυσσεύς, -έως, ὁ: Odysseus
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child
παρέρχομαι: to go by, come forward
παρθένος, ἡ: a maiden, virgin, girl
παύομαι: to cease (+ part.)
συνάδω: to sing with or together
συνευωχέομαι: to feast together
ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
χελιδών, -όνος, ὁ: the swallow
χορός, ὁ: a chorus

συνευωχεῖται: impf. of συν-εὖ-οἶχομαι, “shares the revelry”

ὑπὲρ...κατακείμενος: “being seated higher than...”

ἐξάρχουσι δὲ καὶ συνάδουσιν: “lead the dancing and singing”

Εὐνομός ὁ Λοκρὸς: Eunomus of Lokri, in southern Italy, was a renowned harp-player.

Ἀρίων ὁ Λέσβιος: a poet credited with inventing the dithyramb. His story is told by Herodotus in *Histories* 1.23.

Ἀνακρέων Anacreon of Teos (570 – 488) was a lyric poet known for his drinking songs.

Στησίχορος: Stesichorus or Himera (640 - 555) was the first great poet of the Greek west, writing lyrical poems on epic subjects.

διηλλαγμένης: perf. part. gen. s. of διαλλάσσω, gen. abs, “Helen *already having forgiven him*.” Stesichorus lost his sight after lampooning Helen, recovering it only after writing a retraction (“palinode”).

ἐπειδὴν...παύσωνται: ao. subj. in general temporal clause, “whenever they cease” + part.

ἐπειδὴν...ἄσσωσιν (ao. subj of ᾄδω): general temporal clause, “whenever they sing”

ἐπαυλεῖ: “accompanies on the flute”

τῶν ἀνέμων καταρχόντων: gen. abs. “with the winds leading the way”

δὴ πρὸς εὐφροσύνην ἐκεῖνο ἔχουσιν· πηγαί εἰσι δύο παρὰ τὸ συμπόσιον, ἡ μὲν γέλωτος, ἡ δὲ ἡδονῆς· ἐκ τούτων ἐκατέρας πάντες ἐν ἀρχῇ τῆς εὐωχίας πίνουσιν καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ἡδόμενοι καὶ γελῶντες διάγουσιν.

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning

γέλαω: to laugh

γέλως, ὁ: laughter

διάγω: to pass time

ἐκάτερος: each of two, either, each singly

εὐφροσύνη, ἡ: mirth, merriment

εὐωχία, ἡ: good cheer, feasting

ἡδομαι: to delight, take pleasure

ἡδονή, ἡ: delight, enjoyment, pleasure

πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams

πίνω: to drink

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium

ἐκεῖνο ἔχουσιν: “they consider this the greatest”

ἡδόμενοι καὶ γελῶντες: part. nom. pl. complementing διάγουσιν, “they pass time enjoying and laughing”

αὐτός again:

1. Besides the uses of αὐτός indicated above (p. 5), this word also combines with pronouns to form reflexive pronouns:

ἐμ-αυτόν, ἐμ-αυτήν: myself, myself

σε-αυτόν, σε-αυτήν: yourself; also σαυτόν, σαυτήν

ἐ-αυτόν, ἐ-αυτήν: himself, herself

Similarly in the plural:

ἡμᾶς αὐτούς; ὑμᾶς αὐτούς; ἐ-αυτούς

The only difficulty is that the third person forms based on the pronoun ἐ- often coalesce with the first syllable of αὐτόν, producing a crasis that looks like the simple form of αὐτόν, except for the breathing mark:

ἐ-αυτόν -- αὐτόν

ἐ-αυτήν -- αὐτήν

ἐ-αυτούς -- αὐτούς

2. The definite article can also contract with αὐτός:

ὁ αὐτός -- αὐτός

ἡ αὐτή -- αὐτή

τὸ αὐτό -- ταυτό

These all mean “the same.” Distinguish from τοῦτο “this one” and ταῦτα “these ones”

3. Note also the idiomatic use of the dative case when used with a noun:

αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσι: men and all (i.e. with even the men)

αὐτῷ σκάφει: “boat and all”

αὐτῇ νηϊ: “ship and all”

[17] Βούλομαι δὲ εἰπεῖν καὶ τῶν ἐπισήμων οὓσιν παρ' αὐτοῖς ἔθεασάμην· πάντας μὲν τοὺς ἡμιθέους καὶ τοὺς ἐπὶ Ἴλιον στρατεύσαντας πλήν γε δὴ τοῦ Λοκροῦ Αἴαντος, ἐκείνον δὲ μόνον ἔφασκον ἐν τῷ τῶν ἀσεβῶν χώρῳ κολάζεσθαι, βαρβάρων δὲ Κύρους τε ἀμφοτέρους καὶ τὸν Σκύθην Ἀνάχαρσιν καὶ τὸν Θρᾶκα Ζάμολξιν καὶ Νομᾶν τὸν Ἰταλιώτην, καὶ μὴν καὶ Λυκοῦργον τὸν Λακεδαιμόνιον καὶ Φωκίωνα καὶ Τέλλον τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, καὶ τοὺς

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian
ἀμφότερος, -α, -ον: both of two
ἀσεβής, -ές: godless, unholy, profane
βάρβαρος, -ον: barbarous
βούλομαι: to will, wish (+ *inf.*)
εἶπον: to speak, say (from λέγω)
ἐπίσημος, -ον: famous, notable
ἡμίθεος, ὁ: a half-god, demigod
θεάομαι: to look on, gaze at, view, behold
Θρᾶξ, Θρακός, ὁ: a Thracian
Ἴλιος, -ον, ὁ: Ilium or Troy

Ἰταλιώτης, -ου, ὁ: an Italian
κολάζω: to punish
Κῦρος, ὁ: Cyrus
Λακεδαιμόνιος, -α, -ον: Spartan
πλήν: except + *gen.*
Σκύθης, -ου, ὁ: a Scythian
σοφός, -ή, -όν: wise
στρατεύω: to serve in war
φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert
χώρος, ὁ: ground, place

The narrator now names many of the famous souls he saw there: heroes, barbarians, Greeks, and finally philosophers.

ἐπισήμων (sc. ἀνθρώπων): "to speak of the famous men"

οὓσιν: acc. pl. relative pronoun, "whom"

πλήν γε δὴ: "except, of course..."

τοῦ Λοκροῦ Αἴαντος: the Locrian Aias (vs. Telamonion Aias) was guilty of an outrage against Athena and punished by her on his way home from the Trojan War.

ἐκείνον ἔφασκον κολάζεσθαι: ind. st. "they claimed that he was being punished"

βαρβάρων: gen. pl. "of the Barbarians"

Κύρους ἀμφοτέρους: "both Cyruses." i.e. Cyrus the Great d. 535 and Cyrus the Younger d. 401.

τὸν Σκύθην Ἀνάχαρσιν: Anacharsis, a 6th century Scythian who visited Athens. Lucian wrote a dialogue about him.

τὸν Θρᾶκα Ζάμολξιν: Zalmoxis the Thracian was a legendary social and religious reformer, whose story is told in Herodotus, *Histories* 4.95-6

Νομᾶν τὸν Ἰταλιώτην: Numa was the legendary second king of Rome from 715-673, famous as a law-giver. Plutarch wrote a biography of him.

Λυκοῦργον τὸν Λακεδαιμόνιον: Lycurgus the Spartan (ca. 800-730), was the famous law-giver who established the Spartan military regime. One of Plutarch's parallel lives compared Lycurgus and Numa.

Φωκίωνα καὶ Τέλλον τοὺς Ἀθηναίους: Phocion was a 4th C. Athenian statesman about whom Plutarch wrote a biography; Tellus the Athenian was identified by Solon as the most fortunate man he knew in a famous encounter with Croesus (Herodotus, *Histories* 1.30-1).

σοφούς ἄνευ Περιάνδρου. εἶδον δὲ καὶ Σωκράτη τὸν Σωφρονίσκου ἀδολεσχοῦντα μετὰ Νέστορος καὶ Παλαμήδους· περὶ δὲ αὐτὸν ἦσαν Ὑάκινθος τε ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ὁ Θεσπιεύς Νάρκισσος καὶ Ὑλᾶς καὶ ἄλλοι καλοί. καὶ μοι ἐδόκει ἐρᾶν τοῦ Ὑακίνθου· τὰ πολλὰ γοῦν ἐκείνον διήλεγχεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ χαλεπαίνειν αὐτῷ ὁ Τραδάμανθος καὶ ἠπειληκέναι πολλάκις ἐκβαλεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς νήσου, ἣν φλυαρῇ καὶ μὴ ἐθέλῃ ἀφείς τὴν εἰρωνείαν εὐωχεῖσθαι.

ἀδολεσχέω: to talk idly, prate
 ἄνευ: without + gen.
 ἀπειλέω: to threaten
 ἀφίημι: to send forth, discharge
 διελέγχω: to refute utterly
 ἐθέλω: to will, wish, purpose
 εἰρωνεία, ἡ: dissimulation, irony

ἐκβάλλω: to throw or cast out of
 εὐωχέω: to entertain sumptuously
 Λακεδαιμόνιος, -α, -ον: Spartan
 νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
 πολλάκις: many times, often
 φλυαρέω: to talk nonsense, play the fool
 χαλεπαίνω: to be severe, angry

Περιάνδρου: Periander of Corinth, one of the traditional “wise men” of Greece, but here is excluded, because of his reputation as a tyrant. His story is told in Herodotus, *Histories* 4.91-3.

Σωκράτη τὸν Σωφρονίσκου: Socrates the son of Sophron, the famous Athenian philosopher, known to us from the dialogues of Plato; he was famous for his “irony” and also for his delight in beautiful young men.

Νέστορος: Nestor was famous for his wisdom in the *Iliad*.

Παλαμήδους: Palamedes earned the hatred of Odysseus who contrived to have him killed at Troy. He is cited by Socrates in the *Apology* as a victim of injustice.

Ὑάκινθος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος: Hyacinthus, beloved of Apollo who accidentally killed him by a discus throw.

ὁ Θεσπιεύς Νάρκισσος: Narcissus fell in love with his own beautiful image and was turned into a flower.

Ὑλᾶς: Hylas was beloved of Heracles and lost to him in the course of the voyage of the Argonauts.

(sc. Σωκράτης) ἐδόκει ἐρᾶν: “seemed to love” + gen.

διήλεγχεν: impf., “many times *he* refuted that one”

χαλεπαίνειν: infinitives with ἐλέγετο, “R. was said to be angry...”

ἠπειληκέναι: inf. perf. of ἀπειλέω after ἐλέγετο, “was said to have threatened”

ἐκβαλεῖν: ao. inf. of ἐκβάλλω complementing ἠπειληκέναι, “to evict him”

ἦν φλυαρῇ καὶ μὴ ἐθέλῃ: subj. in pres. general condition, “if he kept playing the fool and kept refusing (didn’t wish to) ...”

ἀφείς: ao. part. nom. s. of ἀφίημι, “by having given up”

τὴν εἰρωνείαν: “his famous irony”

εὐωχεῖσθαι: pr. inf. mid., complementing ἐθέλῃ, “to be entertained”

Πλάτων δὲ μόνος οὐ παρῆν, ἀλλ' ἐλέγετο [καὶ] αὐτὸς ἐν τῇ ἀναπλασθείσῃ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ πόλει οἰκεῖν χρώμενος τῇ πολιτείᾳ καὶ τοῖς νόμοις οἷς συνέγραψεν. [18] οἱ μέντοι ἀμφ' Ἀρίστιππόν τε καὶ Ἐπικούρου τὰ πρῶτα παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐφέροντο ἡδεῖς τε ὄντες καὶ κεχαρισμένοι καὶ συμποτικώτατοι. παρῆν δὲ καὶ Αἰσωπος ὁ Φρύξ· τούτῳ δὲ ὅσα καὶ γελοιοποιῶ χρώνται. Διογένης μὲν γε ὁ Σινωπεὺς τοσοῦτον μετέβαλεν τοῦ τρόπου, ὥστε γῆμαι μὲν ἑταίραν τὴν Λαῖδα, ὀρχεῖσθαι δὲ πολλάκις ὑπὸ μέθης ἀνιστάμενον

ἀμφί: on both sides, around

ἀναπλάσσω: to form anew, remodel

ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up

γαμέω: to marry

γελοιοποιός, -όν: exciting laughter

ἑταίρα, ἡ: a companion

ἡδύς, -εία, -ύ: sweet, pleasant

μέθη, ἡ: strong drink

μεταβάλλω: to change quickly

νόμος, ὁ: custom, law, ordinance

ὀρχέομαι: to dance in a row

ὅσος, -η, -ον: how much

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

Σινωπεὺς, ἑως, ὁ: an inhabitant of Sinope

συγγράφω: to write or note down

συμποτικός, -ή, -όν: convivial, jolly

τρόπος, ὁ: a turn, direction, course, way

φέρω: to bear, carry, endure

Φρύξ, ὁ: a Phrygian

χαρίζομαι: to say or do something

agreeable

χρόομαι: to use

Πλάτων: Plato, the great philosopher of Athens, whose political works include the *Laws* and the *Republic*. In the latter work an ideal government is imagined as an exercise for understanding the concept of justice.

Πλάτων...ἐλέγετο...οἰκεῖν: ind. st., "Plato was said to live"

ἀναπλασθείσῃ: ao. part. pas. dat. s. of ἀναπλάττω, modifying πόλει, "made up"

τῇ πολιτείᾳ καὶ τοῖς νόμοις: Plato's dialogues, the *Republic* and the *Laws*

Ἀρίστιππόν: Aristippus of Cyrene (435-356) was a follower of Socrates and founded a school focused on pleasure as the appropriate end for humans to seek.

Ἐπικούρου: Epicurus (341-271) was a hedonist like Aristippus.

ἐφέροντο: "were considered"

κεχαρισμένοι: perf. part. of χαρίζω, "since they were agreeable"

Αἰσωπος ὁ Φρύξ: Aesop (620-564) was famous for his moral fables.

γελοιοποιῶ: dat. pred., "they use him for a jester"

Διογένης μὲν γε ὁ Σινωπεὺς: Diogenes the Cynic (404-323), a "Socrates gone mad," was famous for his utter disregard for conventional behavior.

τοσοῦτον: acc. s., "to such an extent...."

μετέβαλεν: ao. of μεταβάλλω, "had changed" + gen.

ὥστε γῆμαι...ὀρχεῖσθαι...παροινεῖν: result clauses

ἑταίραν τὴν Λαῖδα: *Lais* was the name of several famous courtesans.

ὑπὸ μέθης: "under the influence"

ἀνιστάμενον: pr. part. intrans. acc. s. of ἀνα-ἵστημι, "getting up to dance"

καὶ παροινεῖν. τῶν δὲ Στωϊκῶν οὐδεὶς παρῆν· ἔτι γὰρ ἐλέγοντο ἀναβαίνειν τὸν τῆς ἀρετῆς ὄρθιον λόφον. ἡκούομεν δὲ καὶ περὶ Χρυσίππου ὅτι οὐ πρότερον αὐτῷ ἐπιβῆναι τῆς νήσου θέμις, πρὶν τὸ τέταρτον ἑαυτὸν ἐλλεβορίσῃ. τοὺς δὲ Ἀκαδημαϊκοὺς ἔλεγον ἐθέλειν μὲν ἐλθεῖν, ἐπέχειν δὲ ἔτι καὶ διασκέπτεσθαι· μηδὲ γὰρ αὐτὸ τοῦτό πω καταλαμβάνειν, εἰ καὶ νῆσός τις τοιαύτη ἐστίν. ἄλλως τε τὴν ἐπὶ τοῦ Ραδαμάνθυος, οἶμαι, κρίσιν ἐδεδοίκεσαν,

ἀκούω: to hear

ἄλλως: in another way or manner

ἀναβαίνω: to go up, mount

ἀρετή: goodness, excellence

δεῖδω: to fear

διασκέπτομαι: to be skeptical

ἐθέλω: to will, wish, purpose

ἐπέχω: hold back

ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon

θέμις, ἡ: allowed by law

καταλαμβάνω: to grasp, understand

κρίσις, -εως, ἡ: a separating, decision

λόφος, ὁ: raised area, hill

οἶμαι: to suppose, think, deem, imagine

ὄρθιος, -α, -ον: straight up

παροινέω: to behave ill at wine, play
drunken tricks

πρὶν: + subj., “until such time”

πω: up to this time, yet

τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth

τῶν Στωϊκῶν: The Stoics, who sought to overcome all passion, were popularly thought of as dour and hypocritical.

ἐλέγοντο ἀναβαίνειν: “they were said to be still climbing”

Χρυσίππου: Chrysippus of Soli (279-206), the third head of the Stoic school of philosophy.

ἐπιβῆναι: ao. inf. of ἐπιβαίνω after θέμις, “allowed to come ashore”

πρὶν ἐλλεβορίσῃ: ao. subj. of ἐλλεβορίζω, “until he takes the hellebore treatment.” Hellebore was a treatment for madness. Chrysippus claimed one could only be wise after taking the treatment three times.

τοὺς δὲ Ἀκαδημαϊκοὺς: The Academy was the school of Plato, but the later Academics were known for a highly skeptical attitude toward truth and certainty, hence their portrayal here.

ἐθέλειν, ἐπέχειν, διασκέπτεσθαι, καταλαμβάνειν: inf. in ind. st. after ἔλεγον, “that they wished to come but were staying away, etc.”

αὐτὸ τοῦτό: acc., “even this”

μηδὲ...καταλαμβάνειν: “that they were not yet able to decide”

εἰ καὶ νῆσός τις τοιαύτη ἐστίν: ind. question after καταλαμβάνειν, “whether such an island really exists”

ἄλλως τε: “besides”

ἐδεδοίκεσαν: plupf. of δεῖδω, “they feared”

ἄτε καὶ τὸ κριτήριον αὐτοὶ ἀνηρηκότες. πολλοὺς δὲ αὐτῶν ἔφασκον ὀρμηθέντας ἀκολουθεῖν τοῖς ἀφικνουμένοις ὑπὸ νωθείας ἀπολείπεσθαι μὴ καταλαμβάνοντας καὶ ἀναστρέφειν ἐκ μέσης τῆς ὁδοῦ.

[19] Οὗτοι μὲν οὖν ἦσαν οἱ ἀξιολογώτατοι τῶν παρόντων. τιμῶσι δὲ μάλιστα τὸν Ἀχιλλέα καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Θησέα. περὶ δὲ συνουσίας καὶ ἀφροδισίων οὕτω φρονοῦσιν· μίσγονται μὲν ἀναφανδὸν πάντων ὁρώντων καὶ γυναιξὶ καὶ ἄρρεσι, καὶ οὐδαμῶς τοῦτο αὐτοῖς αἰσχρὸν δοκεῖ· μόνος δὲ Σωκράτης διώμνυτο ἢ μὴν

αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν: causing shame, abusive
ἀκολουθέω: to follow
ἀναιρέω: to destroy
ἀναστρέφω: to turn upside down, upset
ἀναφανδόν: visibly, openly
ἀξιόλογος, -ον: worthy of mention, noteworthy
ἀπολείπω: to leave over or behind
ἄρσιν, ὁ: male
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
ἀφροδίσιος, -α, -ον: belonging to Aphrodite, sex
Ἀχιλλεύς, ὁ: Achilles
γυνή, -αῖκός, ἡ: a woman
διόμνυμι: to swear solemnly
Θησεύς, ὁ: Theseus

καταλαμβάνω: to lay hold of, comprehend
κριτήριον, τό: a criterion, standard
μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
μίγνυμι: to mingle, have sex with (+ dat.)
νώθεια, ἡ: sluggishness, dullness
ὁδός, ἡ: a way, path, track, road, highway
ὄράω: to see
ὀρμάω: to set in motion, urge
οὐδαμῶς: in no wise
συνουσία, ἡ: intercourse
Σωκράτης, ὁ: Socrates
τιμάω: to pay honor to, revere
φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert
φρονέω: to think, to have understanding

ἄτε + part: expressing the grounds of the supposition (οἶμαι)
ἀνηρηκότες: perf. part. of ἀναιρέω, “on the grounds that they had abolished”
ἔφασκον...ἀκολουθεῖν, ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀναστρέφειν: pr. inf. in ind. statement
ὀρμηθέντας: ao. part. pas. of ὀρμάω modifying the subject of ἀκολουθεῖν, “having set out”
τοῖς ἀφικνουμένοις: pr. part. dat. pl. of ἀφικνέομαι, object of ἀκολουθεῖν, “to follow those arriving”
μὴ καταλαμβάνοντας: pr. part. acc. modifying the subject of ἀπολείπεσθαι, “that they were left behind by not reaching” (but also “not coming to understand”)
περὶ δὲ συνουσίας καὶ ἀφροδισίων: “with regard to sex”
ἀναφανδόν: adv., “openly”
πάντων ὁρώντων: gen abs., “with everyone looking”
διώμνυτο: impf. of δια-ῶμνυμι, “he swore”
ἢ μὴν: prefacing a strong oath, “verily”

καθαρῶς πλησιάζειν τοῖς νέοις· καὶ μέντοι πάντες αὐτοῦ ἐπιорκεῖν κατεγίνωσκον· πολλάκις γοῦν ὁ μὲν Ὑάκινθος ἢ ὁ Νάρκισσος ὠμολόγουν, ἐκεῖνος δὲ ἡρνεῖτο. αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες εἰσι πᾶσι κοιναὶ καὶ οὐδεὶς φθονεῖ τῷ πλησίον, ἀλλ' εἰσὶ περὶ τοῦτο μάλιστα Πλατωνικώτατοι· καὶ οἱ παῖδες δὲ παρέχουσι τοῖς βουλομένοις οὐδὲν ἀντιλέγοντες.

ἀντιλέγω: to speak against, refute
 ἀρνέομαι: to deny, disown
 γυνή, -αῖκος, ἡ: a woman
 ἐπιорκέω: to swear (falsely)
 καθαρός: clean, spotless
 καταγινώσκω: to remark, discover
 κοινός, -ή, -όν: common to (+ dat.)
 νέος, -α, -ον: young, youthful

ὁμολογέω: to speak together
 παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child
 παρέχω: to furnish, provide, supply
 Πλατωνικός: of Plato, Platonic
 πλησιάζω: to bring near (+ dat.)
 Ὑάκινθος, ὁ: Hyacinthus
 φθονέω: be envious or jealous (+ dat.)

πλησιάζειν: inf. ind. st. after διώμνυτο, “that he approached” + dat.
 καὶ μέντοι: “and of course”
 αὐτοῦ ἐπιорκεῖν: pr. inf. after κατεγίνωσκον, “that he was swearing falsely”
 κατεγίνωσκον: impf. of κατα-γινώσκω, “all recognized”
 πολλάκις γοῦν: “many times, in fact”
 ἡρνεῖτο: impf. of ἀρνέομαι: “he kept on denying”
 τῷ πλησίον: “his neighbor”
 Πλατωνικώτατοι: “very Platonic.” In the *Republic*, Plato recommended having wives in common.
 τοῖς βουλομένοις: “to whomever wishes”

[20] Οὐπω δὲ δύο ἢ τρεῖς ἡμέραι διεληλύθεσαν, καὶ προσελθὼν ἐγὼ Ὀμήρῳ τῷ ποιητῇ, σχολῆς οὐσης ἀμφοῖν, τὰ τε ἄλλα ἐπυνθανόμην καὶ ὅθεν εἶη. τοῦτο γὰρ μάλιστα παρ' ἡμῖν εἰσέτι νῦν ζητεῖσθαι. ὁ δὲ οὐδ' αὐτὸς μὲν ἀγνοεῖν ἔφασκεν ὥς οἱ μὲν Χίον, οἱ δὲ Σμυρναῖον, πολλοὶ δὲ Κολοφώνιον αὐτὸν νομίζουσιν· εἶναι μέντοι γε ἔλεγεν Βαβυλώνιος, καὶ παρά γε τοῖς πολίταις οὐχ Ὅμηρος, ἀλλὰ Τιγράνης καλεῖσθαι· ὕστερον δὲ ὁμηρεύσας παρὰ τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ἀλλάξαι τὴν προσηγορίαν. ἔτι δὲ

ἀγνοέω: not to know

ἀλλάσσω: to change, alter

διέρχομαι: to pass

εἰσέτι: still yet

Ἑλλήν, -ηνος, ὁ: Greek

ζητέω: to seek, seek for

καλέω: to call, summon

νομίζω: to believe

ὅθεν: whence

ὁμηρεύω: to be or serve as a hostage

Ὅμηρος, ὁ: Homer

οὐπω: not yet

ποιητῆς, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet

πολίτης, -ου, ὁ: a citizen

προσέρχομαι: to come or go to(+ dat.)

προσηγορία, ἡ: an appellation, name

πυνθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry

Σμυρναῖος, -η, -ον: of Smyrna

σχολή, ἡ: spare time, leisure, rest, ease

ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, afterward

φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert

Χῖος, -α, -ον: Chian, of or from Chios

A literary discussion with the shade of Homer.

διεληλύθεσαν: plupf. of δια-έρχομαι, “had passed”

προσελθὼν: ao. part. of προσ-έρχομαι, “having approached” + dat.

σχολῆς οὐσης: gen. abs., “there being leisure”

ἀμφοῖν: dual dat., “to both of us”

τά τε ἄλλα...καὶ: “other things, but especially...”

ὅθεν εἶη: ind. quest. after ἐπυνθανόμην, with the optative in sec. sequence, “where he was from”

τοῦτο...ζητεῖσθαι: implied ind. st. “(saying) that this is questioned”

ἀγνοεῖν: inf. in ind. st., “nor was he claiming that he was unaware”

ὥς οἱ μὲν...νομίζουσιν: “that some think him Chian...” ὥς indicating an opinion attributed to someone else.

Χίον, etc.: These were some of the cities claiming to be Homer’s birthplace.

εἶναι μέντοι γε: ind. st. after ἔλεγεν, “but that in fact he was”

καλεῖσθαι: pr. inf. pas. of καλέω, ind. st. after ἔλεγεν, “that he was called”

ὁμηρεύσας: ao. part. nom. s. of ὁμηρεύω, “having been a hostage,” punning on the name Homer

ἀλλάξαι: ao. inf. of ἀλλάσσω after ἔλεγεν, “that he changed”

καὶ περὶ τῶν ἀθετουμένων στίχων ἐπηρώτων, εἰ ὑπ' ἐκείνου εἰσὶ γεγραμμένοι. καὶ ὃς ἔφασκε πάντας αὐτοῦ εἶναι. κατεγίνωσκον οὖν τῶν ἀμφὶ τὸν Ζηνόδοτον καὶ Ἀρίσταρχον γραμματικῶν πολλὴν τὴν ψυχρολογίαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἱκανῶς ἀπεκέκριτο, πάλιν αὐτὸν ἠρώτων τί δὴ ποτε ἀπὸ τῆς μῆνιδος τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐποιήσατο· καὶ ὃς εἶπεν οὕτως ἐπελθεῖν αὐτῷ μηδὲν ἐπιτηδεύσαντι. καὶ μὴν κάκεῖνο ἐπεθύμουν εἰδέναι, εἰ προτέραν ἔγραψεν τὴν Ὀδύσειαν τῆς Ἰλιάδος, ὡς οἱ πολλοὶ φασιν· ὁ δὲ

ἀθετέω: to set aside, remove

ἀποκρίνομαι: to answer

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning, origin

γραμματικός, ὁ: a grammarian

ἐπέρχομαι: go or come to (+ dat.)

ἐπερωτάω: to inquire of, question, consult

ἐπιθυμέω: to desire (+ inf.)

ἐπιτηδεύω: to pursue or practice

ἐρωτάω: to ask

ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: befitting, sufficing

Ἰλιάς, ἄδος, ἡ: the *Iliad*

καταγινώσκω: to hold X (*gen.*) guilty of Y
(*acc.*)

μῆνις, -ιδος, ἡ: anger, wrath

Ὀδύσεια, ἡ: the *Odyssey*

οἶδα: to know

οὕτως: in this way

πάλιν: again

πρότερος, -α, -ον: before (+ *gen.*)

στίχος, ὁ: a line of poetry

φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert

ψυχρολογία, ἡ: pedantry

περὶ τῶν ἀθετουμένων στίχων: "about the spurious lines"

ἐπηρώτων: impf. of ἐπι-ἐρωτάω, "I asked"

εἰ εἰσὶ γεγραμμένοι: perf. pas. of γράφω in ind. quest., "whether they were written"

ὃς ἔφασκε: "he claimed"

αὐτοῦ (= ἐαυτοῦ): "his own"

Ζηνόδοτον καὶ Ἀρίσταρχον: Zenodotus of Ephesus (fl. 280) and Aristarchus of Samos (310-230) were two of the most famous Alexandrian scholars under the Ptolemies. One of their tasks as head of the Library in Alexandria was to study Homer's texts. They created a system of textual marks that included one to indicate lines that should be removed (athetized) as spurious.

ἀπεκέκριτο: plupf. pas. of ἀπο-κρίνομαι, "he had answered"

τί...ἐποιήσατο: ind. quest. after ἠρώτων, "why he had made"

ἀπὸ τῆς μῆνιδος: "from the wrath," the first word of the *Iliad*

ὃς εἶπεν: "he said"

οὕτως ἐπελθεῖν: ao. inf. of ἐπι-έρχομαι after εἶπεν, "that it came to him thus"

μηδὲν ἐπιτηδεύσαντι: ao. part. dat. s., modifying αὐτῷ, "pursuing nothing"

καὶ μὴν κάκεῖνο (= καὶ ἐκείνο): indicating a climax, "and finally this"

εἰ ἔγραψεν: ind. quest. after ἐπεθύμουν εἰδέναι, "whether he had written"

ἡρνεῖτο. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ οὐδὲ τυφλὸς ἦν, ὃ καὶ αὐτὸ περὶ αὐτοῦ λέγουσιν, αὐτίκα ἠπιστάμην· ἐώρων γάρ, ὥστε οὐδὲ πυνθάνεσθαι ἐδεόμην. πολλάκις δὲ καὶ ἄλλοτε τοῦτο ἐποιοῦν, εἴ ποτε αὐτὸν σχολὴν ἄγοντα ἐώρων· προσίων γὰρ ἄν τι ἐπυνθανόμην αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὃς προθύμως πάντα ἀπεκρίνετο, καὶ μάλιστα μετὰ τὴν δίκην, ἐπειδὴ ἐκράτησεν· ἦν γάρ τις γραφὴ κατ’ αὐτοῦ ἀπενηνεγμένη ὕβρεως ὑπὸ Θερσίτου ἐφ’ οἷς αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ ποιήσει ἔσκωψεν, καὶ ἐνίκησεν ὁ Ὅμηρος Ὀδυσσεὺς συναγορεύοντος.

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
 ἄλλοτε: at another time, at other times
 ἀπιφέρω: to carry off or away
 ἀποκρίνομαι: to answer
 ἀρνέομαι: to deny, disown
 γραφή, ἡ: charge
 δέομαι: to ask
 δίκη, ἡ: a case
 ἐπίσταμαι: to know
 Θερσίτης, ὁ: Thersites
 κρατέω: to win
 νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
 Ὀδυσσεύς, -έως, ὁ: Odysseus

Ὅμηρος, -ου, ὁ: Homer
 ὁράω: to see
 ποίησις, -εως, ἡ: a poem
 πολλάκις: many times, often
 πρόθυμος, -ον: ready, willing, eager, zealous
 πυνθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry
 σκώπτω: to hoot, mock, jeer, scoff at
 συναγορεύω: to join in advocating
 σχολή, ἡ: spare time, leisure, rest, ease
 τυφλός, -ή, -όν: blind
 ὕβρις, -εως, ἡ: wantonness, insolence

ἡρνεῖτο: impf. of ἀρνέω, “he denied”

ὃ: rel. pron. whose antecedent is the thought of the previous clause, “which is something else they say”

ἠπιστάμην: impf. of ἐπίσταμαι, “I knew”

ἐώρων: impf., “for I was seeing”

ὥστε...ἐδεόμην: result clause, “so that I did not need” + inf.

καὶ ἄλλοτε: “at other times as well”

ἐποιοῦν...εἰ ἐώρων: simple condition, emphasizing customary action rather than indefinite action, “I used to do this, if I saw”

ἀπενηνεγμένη: perf. part. pas. of ἀποφέρω, agreeing with γραφή, “had been brought”

Θερσίτου: Thersites argues with Agamemnon and is harshly reproved in Book 2 of the *Iliad*.

ἐφ’ οἷς: “on the grounds that”

ἔσκωψεν: ao. of σκώπτω, “he had mocked”

Ὀδυσσεὺς συναγορεύοντος: gen. abs. It was Odysseus who reproved Thersites in the *Iliad*.

[21] Κατὰ δὲ τοὺς αὐτοὺς χρόνους ἀφίκετο καὶ Πυθαγόρας ὁ Σάμιος ἐπτάκις ἀλλαγείς καὶ ἐν τοσούτοις ζώοις βιοτεύσας καὶ ἐκτελέσας τῆς ψυχῆς τὰς περιόδους. ἦν δὲ χρυσοῦς ὅλον τὸ δεξιὸν ἡμίτομον. καὶ ἐκρίθη μὲν συμπολιτεύσασθαι αὐτοῖς, ἐνεδοιάζετο δὲ ἔτι πότερον Πυθαγόραν ἢ Εὐφορβον χρὴ αὐτὸν ὀνομάζειν. ὁ μέντοι Ἐμπεδοκλῆς ἦλθεν μὲν καὶ αὐτός, περίεφθος καὶ τὸ σῶμα ὅλον ὠπτημένος· οὐ μὴν παρεδέχθη καίτοι πολλὰ ἱκετεύων.

ἀλλάσσω: to change, alter

βιοτεύω: to live

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right

ἐκτελέω: to bring to an end, finish

ἐνδοιάζω: to be in doubt, be at a loss

ἐπτάκις: seven times

Εὐφορβος, ὁ: Euphorbus

ζῶον, τό: a living being, animal

ἡμίτομον, ον, τό: a half

ἱκετεύω: to approach as a suppliant

καίτοι: and yet

κρίνω: to pick out, choose, decide

ὀνομάζω: to call or address by name

ὀπτάω: to roast, broil

παραδέχομαι: to receive from

περίεφθος, -ον: thoroughly well cooked

περίοδος, ἡ: a circular trip

πότερος, -α, -ον: which of two?

συμπολιτεύω: to live as fellow-citizens of one state

σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body

χρόνος, ὁ: time

χρύσεος, -η, -ον: golden, of gold

ψυχή, ἡ: life

Some famous men arrive on the island and athletic competitions are held.

ἀφίκετο: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, “arrived”

Πυθαγόρας ὁ Σάμιος: Pythagoras of Samos (570-495) was a mathematician, philosopher and mystic. He and his followers practiced a way of life that included dietary restrictions, and he is famous for a theory of reincarnation.

ἀλλαγείς: ao. part. pas. nom. s. of ἀλλάσσω, “having been changed”

ἐν τοσούτοις ζώοις: “in so many (i.e. 7) bodies”

βιοτεύσας καὶ ἐκτελέσας: ao. part., “having lived and finished”

ἐκρίθη: ao. pas. of κρίνω, “it was decided”

συμπολιτεύσασθαι: ao. inf. after ἐκρίθη, “that he should join the community”

ἐνεδοιάζετο: impf. of ἐνδοιάζω, “it was still in doubt”

πότερον...ἦ: indirect question, “whether Protagoras or Euphorbus.” Protagoras was reputed to believe that he was a reincarnation of Euphorbus, a hero of the Trojan War.

Ἐμπεδοκλῆς: Empedocles was a fifth century Pythagorean philosopher, who was reputed to have thrown himself into the crater of Etna so that he might be believed to be a God.

περίεφθος: ao. part. περι-ἔψω, “cooked all around”

ὠπτημένος: perf. part. pas. of ὀπτω, “roasted”

παραδέχθη: ao. pas. of παρα-δέχομαι, “he was not received”

καίτοι + part.: concessive, “despite begging”

[22] Προϊόντος δὲ τοῦ χρόνου ἐνέστη ὁ ἀγὼν ὁ παρ' αὐτοῖς, τὰ Θανατούσια. ἡγωνοθέτει δὲ Ἀχιλλεύς τὸ πέμπτον καὶ Θησεὺς τὸ ἑβδομον. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλα μακρὸν ἂν εἴη λέγειν· τὰ δὲ κεφάλαια τῶν πραχθέντων διηγήσομαι. πάλην μὲν ἐνίκησεν Κάρανος ὁ ἀφ' Ἡρακλέους Ὀδυσσεά περὶ τοῦ στεφάνου καταγωνισάμενος· πυγμὴ δὲ ἴση ἐγένετο Ἀρείου τοῦ Αἰγυπτίου, ὃς ἐν Κορίνθῳ τέθαιπται, καὶ Ἐπειοῦ ἀλλήλοις συνελθόντων. παγκρατίου δὲ οὐ τίθεται ἄθλα παρ' αὐτοῖς. τὸν μέντοι δρόμον

ἀγὼν, -ου, ὁ: a gathering, contest
 ἡγωνοθετέω: to direct the games
 ἄθλον, τό: the prize of contest
 Ἀχιλλεύς, ὁ: Achilles
 Αἰγύπτιος, -α, -ον: Egyptian
 διηγέομαι: to set out in detail
 δρόμος, ὁ: a course, running, race
 ἑβδομος, -η, -ον: seventh
 ἐνίστημι: to put in place
 Ἡρακλῆς, ὁ: Heracles
 θάπτω: to bury
 Θησεύς, ὁ: Theseus
 καταγωνίζομαι: to struggle against, pre-
 vail against, conquer

κεφάλαιος: main, most important
 Κόρινθος, ὁ: Corinth
 νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
 παγκράτιον, τό: a wrestling and boxing
 event
 πάλη, ἡ: wrestling
 πέμπτος, -η, -ον: fifth
 πράσσω: to do
 προσέρχομαι: to advance
 πυγμή, ἡ: a fist, boxing
 στέφανος, ὁ: a garland
 συνέρχομαι: to come together
 τίθημι: to set, put, place
 χρόνος, ὁ: time

προϊόντος...χρόνου: gen. abs. "as time was advancing"
 ἐνέστη: ao. intrans. of ἐν-ἵστημι, "were established"
 τὰ Θανατούσια: "the Dead Games," on the analogy of the Olympic games, but also funeral games, such as those of Patroclus in *Iliad* 23.
 τὸ πέμπτον...τὸ ἑβδομον: "for the fifth time, for the seventh time"
 ἡγωνοθέτει: impf. of ἡγωνοθετέω, "officiated"
 μακρὸν ἂν εἴη: pot. opt., "it would be long to say"
 τῶν πραχθέντων: ao. part. pas. of πράσσω, "of what was done"
 πάλην μὲν: "in wrestling"
 Κάρανος: an uncertain reading, an uncertain reference
 καταγωνισάμενος: perf. part. of κατα-ἀγωνίζω, "having bested"
 πυγμὴ δὲ ἴση ἐγένετο: "in boxing there was a tie"
 τέθαιπται: perf. of θάπτω, "is buried"
 Ἀρείου...καὶ Ἐπειοῦ συνελθόντων: gen. abs., "having met each other." This Arius is unknown, but an Epeius boxed in the funeral games of the *Iliad* and the funeral games of Achilles, in the latter case fighting to a draw.
 οὐ τίθεται ἄθλα: "prizes are not awarded." Note that a neuter plural subject regularly takes a singular verb.
 τὸν μέντοι δρόμον: acc. of respect, "as for the footrace"

οὐκέτι μέμνημαι ὅστις ἐνίκησεν. ποιητῶν δὲ τῇ μὲν ἀληθείᾳ παρὰ πολὺ ἐκράτει Ὅμηρος, ἐνίκησεν δὲ ὅμως Ἡσίοδος. τὰ δὲ ἄθλα ἦν ἅπασι στέφανος πλακεῖς ἐκ πτερῶν ταωνείων.

[23] Ἄρτι δὲ τοῦ ἀγῶνος συντετελεσμένου ἡγγέλλοντο οἱ ἐν τῷ χώρῳ τῶν ἀσεβῶν κολαζόμενοι ἀπορρήξαντες τὰ δεσμὰ καὶ τῆς φρουρᾶς ἐπικρατήσαντες ἐλαύνειν ἐπὶ τὴν νῆσον· ἡγεῖσθαι δὲ αὐτῶν Φάλαριν τε τὸν Ἀκραγαντῖνον καὶ Βούσιριν τὸν Αἰγύπτιον

ἡγγέλλω: to bear a message
 ἀγών, -ον, ὁ: a contest
 ἄθλον, τό: the prize of contest
 Αἰγύπτιος, -α, -ον: Egyptian
 ἅπας: all, the whole
 ἀπορρήγνυμι: to break off, snap asunder
 ἄρτι: just, exactly
 ἀσεβής, -ές: godless, unholy, profane
 δεσμόν, τὸ: anything for binding, fetter
 ἐλαύνω: to drive, drive on
 ἐπικρατέω: to overcome
 Ἡσίοδος, ὁ: Hesiod
 κολάζω: to punish

κρατέω: to be strong, mighty, powerful
 μιμνήσκομαι: to remember
 νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
 ὅμως: nevertheless
 πλέκω: to twist, weave, braid
 ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet
 πτερόν, τό: a feather
 στέφανος, ὁ: a garland
 συντελέω: to bring to an end, complete
 ταώνειος, ον: of a peacock
 φρουρά, ἡ: watch, guard
 χώρος, ὁ: ground, place

μέμνημαι: perf. of *μιμνήσκω*, “I remember”

τῇ μὲν ἀληθείᾳ: “truly”

Ὅμηρος...Ἡσίοδος: a legendary contest between Homer and Hesiod was won by Hesiod.

πλακεῖς: ao. part. pas. nom. s. of *πλέκω*, “having been woven”

News arrives of a jailbreak from the Island of the Damned.

τοῦ ἀγῶνος συντετελεσμένου: gen. abs. perf. part. of *συν-τελέω*, “the games hardly having been finished”

οἱ...κολαζόμενοι: “those being punished”

ἀπορρήξαντες: ao. part. of *ἀπορρήγνυμι*, “having broken their fetters”

ἐλαύνειν, ἡγεῖσθαι: pr. inf. in ind. st. after *ἡγγέλλοντο*, “they were reported to be driving,” and “that P. was leading.” Note the change in construction from nominative to accusative.

Φάλαριν τὸν Ἀκραγαντῖνον: Phalaris was tyrant of Acragas from 570-554 and was renowned for his excessive cruelty. He speaks in his own defense in two rhetorical exercises by Lucian.

Βούσιριν Αἰγύπτιον: Busiris was a legendary pharaoh of Egypt renowned for his xenophobia and cruelty. Busiris was a popular theme in Greek art and Isocrates wrote a mock encomium about him.

καὶ Διομήδη τὸν Θρᾶκα καὶ τοὺς περὶ Σκείρωνα καὶ Πιτυοκάμπτην. ὥς δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσεν ὁ Ῥαδάμανθυσ, ἐκτάσσει τοὺς ἥρωας ἐπὶ τῆς ἡόνος· ἡγεῖτο δὲ Θησεύς τε καὶ Ἀχιλλεύς καὶ Αἴας ὁ Τελαμώνιος ἤδη σωφρονῶν· καὶ συμμίζαντες ἐμάχοντο, καὶ ἐνίκησαν οἱ ἥρωες, Ἀχιλλέως τὰ πλείστα κατορθώσαντος. ἡρίστευσε δὲ καὶ Σωκράτης ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ ταχθεῖς, πολὺ μᾶλλον ἢ ὅτε ζῶν ἐπὶ Δηλίῳ ἐμάχετο. προσιόντων γὰρ τεττάρων πολεμίων οὐκ ἔφυγε καὶ τὸ πρόσωπον ἄτρεπτος ἦν· ἐφ' οἷς καὶ ὕστερον ἐξηρέθη αὐτῷ ἀριστεῖον, καλὸς τε καὶ μέγας παράδεισος ἐν τῷ

Αἴας, -αντος, ὁ: Ajax

ἀριστεῖον: the prize of the best and bravest

ἀριστεύω: to be best or bravest

ἄτρεπτος, -ον: unmoved, immutable

Ἀχιλλεύς, ὁ: Achilles

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side

Δήλιον, τό: Delium

ἐκτάσσω: to draw out in battle-order

ἐξαιρέω: to take out, dedicate

ζάω: to live

ἡίων, -όνος, ἡ: a shore, beach

ἥρωας, ὁ: a hero, warrior

Θησεύς, ὁ: Theseus

Θρᾶξ, Θρακός, ὁ: a Thracian

καλός, -ή, -όν: beautiful

κατορθόω: to erect, accomplish

μᾶλλον: more

μάχομαι: to fight

μέγας: big, great

νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish

παράδεισος, ὁ: a garden, orchard

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

πρόσωπον, τό: a face

συμμίγνυμι: to mix together (in battle)

Σωκράτης, ὁ: Socrates

σωφρονέω: to be sound of mind

τάσσω: to arrange, put in order

τέτταροί, -αί, -α: four

ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, afterward

Διομήδη τὸν Θρᾶκα: Diomedes of Thrace was a legendary king renowned for cruelty, especially for the man-eating horses he kept, which were stolen by Heracles.

Σκείρωνα καὶ Πιτυοκάμπτην: Sciron and Pityokamptes were infamous robbers killed by Theseus.

ἐκτάσσει: pr. of ἐκ-τάσσω, “he musters”

ἤδη σωφρονῶν: “already being sound in mind”

Ἀχιλλέως κατορθώσαντος: gen. abs., “A. having accomplished”

ταχθεῖς: ao. part. pas. of τάσσω, “having been stationed”

πολὺ μᾶλλον ἢ ὅτε: “much more than when”

ζῶν ἐπὶ Δηλίῳ ἐμάχετο: Socrates was in the defeated army at Delium in 424.

προσιόντων...πολεμίων: gen abs., “four enemies attacking”

προσιόντων: pr. part. of προσ-έρχομαι

οὐκ ἔφυγε: ao. of φεύγω, “he didn’t flee”

ἄτρεπτος: Alcibiades recounts in the *Symposium* Socrates’ composure in battle.

ἐφ’ οἷς: “and for this reason”

ἐξηρέθη: ao. pas. of ἐξαιρέω, “was dedicated”

προαστείῳ, ἔνθα καὶ συγκαλῶν τοὺς ἐταίρους διελέγετο, Νεκρακαδημίαν τὸν τόπον προσαγορεύσας. [24] συλλαβόντες οὖν τοὺς νενικημένους καὶ δήσαντες ἀπέπεμψαν ἔτι μᾶλλον κολασθησομένους. ἔγραψεν δὲ καὶ ταύτην τὴν μάχην Ὅμηρος καὶ ἀπιόντι μοι ἔδωκεν τὰ βιβλία κομίζειν τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν ἀνθρώποις· ἀλλ' ὕστερον καὶ ταῦτα μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπωλέσαμεν. ἦν δὲ ἡ ἀρχὴ τοῦ ποιήματος αὕτη,

«Νῦν δέ μοι ἔννεπε, Μοῦσα, μάχην νεκύων ἡρώων.»

τότε δ' οὖν κυάμους ἐψήσαντες, ὥσπερ παρ' αὐτοῖς νόμος

ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy utterly, lose

ἀποπέμπω: to send off or away, to dismiss

ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning

βιβλίον, τό: a paper, (pl.) a book

γράφω: to write

δέω: to bind

διαλέγομαι: to discourse

δίδωμι: to give

ἐνέπω: to tell, relate, describe

ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion

ἔψω: to boil, cook

ἥρως, ὁ: a hero, warrior

κολάζω: to punish

κομίζω: to take care of (+ dat.)

κύαμος, ὁ: a bean

μᾶλλον: more

μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat

Μοῦσα, -ης, ἡ: the Muse

νέκυς, -υος, ὁ: a corpse

νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish

νόμος, ὁ: custom, law, ordinance

ποίημα, -ατος, τό: a poem

προάστειον, -ου, τό: a suburb

προσαγορεύω: to address, name

συγκαλέω: to convene

συλλαμβάνω: to collect, gather together

τόπος, ὁ: a place

ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, afterward

ἐν τῷ προαστείῳ: “outside the city”

συγκαλῶν: pr. part. συν-καλέω, “calling together”

Νεκρακαδημίαν: “Academy of the Dead”

συλλαβόντες: ao. part. nom. pl. of συλλαμβάνω, “having arrested”

νενικημένους: perf. part. acc. pl. of νικάω, “the conquered”

κολασθησομένους: fut. part. pas. acc. pl. of κολάζω showing purpose, “in order to punish”

ἀπιόντι: pr. part. dat. s. of ἀπο-έρχομαι, modifying μοι, “to me leaving”

ἔδωκεν: ao. of δίδωμι, “he gave”

κομίζειν: inf. of purpose “to provide to” + dat,

ἀπωλέσαμεν: ao. of ἀπόλλυμι, “we lost it”

ἔννεπε: imperative, (cf. the first line of the *Odyssey*: ἀνδρὰ μοι ἔννεπε, Μοῦσα)

ἐψήσαντες: ao. part. of ἔψω, “having cooked”

ἐπειδὴν πόλεμον κατορθώσωσιν, εἰσιῶντο τὰ ἐπινίκια καὶ ἑορτὴν μεγάλην ἡγόν· μόνος δὲ αὐτῆς οὐ μετείχε Πυθαγόρας, ἀλλ' ἄσιτος πόρρω ἐκαθέζετο μυσσαττόμενος τὴν κυανοφαγίαν.

[25] Ἦδη δὲ μηνῶν ἕξ διεληλυθότων περὶ μεσοῦντα τὸν ἑβδομον νεώτερα συνίστατο πράγματα· Κινύρας ὁ τοῦ Σκινθάρου παῖς, μέγας ὢν καὶ καλός, ἦρα πολὺν ἤδη χρόνον τῆς Ἑλένης, καὶ αὐτὴ δὲ οὐκ ἀφανῆς ἦν ἐπιμανῶς ἀγαπῶσα τὸν νεανίσκον· πολλάκις γοῦν καὶ διένευον ἀλλήλοις ἐν τῷ συμποσίῳ καὶ

ἀγαπάω: to love, be fond of

ἄγω: to conduct, celebrate

ἄσιτος, -ον: without food, fasting

ἀφανῆς, -ές: unseen, invisible, viewless

διανεύω: to wink

διέρχομαι: to pass through

ἑβδομος, -η, -ον: seventh

ἑορτή, ἡ: a feast

ἐπιμανῶς: madly

ἐπινίκιος, -ον: of victory, triumphal

ἐράω: to love, to be in love with

καθέζομαι: to sit down

κατορθόω: to set upright, erect

κυανοφαγία, ἡ: the eating of beans

μείς, μήνος, ὁ: a month

μεσῶ: to be in the middle

μετέχω: to partake of, enjoy a share of (+ gen.)

μυσάττομαι: to feel disgust at

νεανίσκος, ὁ: a youth

νεώτερος, -α, -ον: newer

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child

πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, fight, war

πόρρω: forwards, onwards, further

πράγμα, -ατος, τό: a deed, act

Πυθαγόρας, ὁ: Pythagoras

συμπόσιον, τό: a symposium

συνίστημι: to come into existence, arise

ἐπειδὴν...κατορθώσωσιν: subj. of κατα-ὀρθόω general temporal clause, "whenever they win"

εἰσιῶντο: impf. of εἰσιάω, "they were celebrating"

οὐ μετείχε: impf. of μετα-ἔχω, "would not partake in"

μυσσαττόμενος: pr. part. of μυσάσσω, "being disgusted," Pythagoras famously refused to eat beans.

Cinyras, the son of Scintharus, elopes with Helen.

μηνῶν ἕξ διεληλυθότων: perf. part. of δια-έρχομαι, gen. abs. "6 months having passed"

συνίστατο: impf. of συν-ίστημι, intransitive, "arose"

νεώτερα...πράγματα: "revolution"

ἦρα: impf. of ἐράω, "was in love with" + gen.

πολὺν ἤδη χρόνον: acc. of duration of time, "already a long time"

οὐκ ἀφανῆς: "obviously"

ἀγαπῶσα: ao. part. nom. f. of ἀγαπάω, "she was loving"

πολλάκις γοῦν καὶ: "indeed several times they even winked"

προϋπινον καὶ μόνοι ἐξανιστάμενοι ἐπλανῶντο περὶ τὴν ὕλην. καὶ δὴ ποτε ὑπ' ἔρωτος καὶ ἀμηχανίας ἐβουλεύσατο ὁ Κινύρας ἀρπάσας τὴν Ἑλένην - ἐδόκει δὲ καὶ αὐτὴν ταῦτα - οἴχεσθαι ἀπιόντας ἔς τινα τῶν ἐπικειμένων νήσων, ἥτοι ἔς τὴν Φελλῶ ἢ ἔς τὴν Τυρόεσσαν. συνωμότας δὲ πάλαι προσειλήφεσαν τρεῖς τῶν ἐταίρων τῶν ἐμῶν τοὺς θρασυτάτους. τῷ μέντοι πατρὶ οὐκ ἐμήνυσε ταῦτα· ἠπίστατο γὰρ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ κωλυθησόμενος. ὥς δὲ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς, ἐτέλουν τὴν ἐπιβουλήν. καὶ ἐπειδὴ νύξ ἐγένετο -

ἀμηχανία, ἡ: helplessness, impotence	νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
ἀρπάζω: to snatch away, carry off	νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ: night
βουλεύω: to take counsel, plot (+ inf.)	οἴχομαι: to be gone
ἐξανίστημι: to raise up: to make one rise	πάλαι: long ago
ἐπιβουλή, ἡ: a plan	πατήρ, ὁ: a father
ἐπικεῖμαι: to be lying (off the coast)	πλανάω: to wander about
ἐπίσταμαι: to know	προπίνω: to drink on behalf of, toast
ἔρως, -ωτος, ὁ: love	προσλαμβάνω: to take in addition
ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate	συνωμότης, -ου, ὁ: a fellow conspirator
ἥτοι: now surely, truly, verily	τελέω: to complete, accomplish, carry out
θρασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: bold, spirited, reckless	Τυρόεσσα, ἡ: Cheese-land
κωλύω: to hinder, check, prevent	ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
μηνύω: to reveal, betray	Φελλῶ, -οῦς, ἡ: Cork-land

προϋπινον: impf. of προ-πίνω, "they toasted (each other)"
ἐξανιστάμενοι: pr. part. of ἐξ-ἀνα-ίστημι, "getting up and leaving"
ἐπλανῶντο: impf. of πλανάω, "they wandered"
καὶ δὴ ποτε: "moreover, once"
ἀρπάσας: ao. part. of ἀρπάζω, "having snatched Helen"
καὶ αὐτὴν: "also to her"
οἴχεσθαι: pr. inf. after ἐβουλεύσατο, "plotted to go"
ἀπιόντας: pr. part. of ἀπο-έρχομαι, "departing"
ἥτοι...ἢ: "either...or"
προσειλήφεσαν: plupf. of προσ-λαμβάνω, "they had taken along"
τοὺς θρασυτάτους: "the most reckless ones"
τῷ μέντοι πατρὶ: "to his father, of course"
ἐμήνυσε: ao. of μηνύω, "he disclosed"
κωλυθησόμενος: fut. part. pas. ind. st. after ἠπίστατο, "that he would be prevented"

ἐγὼ μὲν οὐ παρήμην· ἐτύγχανον γὰρ ἐν τῷ συμποσίῳ κοιμώμενος
 - οἱ δὲ λαθόντες τοὺς ἄλλους ἀναλαβόντες τὴν Ἑλένην ὑπὸ
 σπουδῆς ἀνήχθησαν. [26] περὶ δὲ τὸ μεσονύκτιον ἀνεγρόμενος ὁ
 Μενέλαος ἐπεὶ ἔμαθεν τὴν εὐνὴν κενὴν τῆς γυναικός, βοήν τε ἴστη
 καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν παραλαβὼν ἦλθε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τὸν
 Ῥαδάμανθυν. ἡμέρας δὲ ὑποφαινούσης ἔλεγον οἱ σκοποὶ καθορᾶν
 τὴν ναὺν πολὺ ἀπέχουσιν· οὕτω δὲ ἐμβιβάσας ὁ Ῥαδάμανθος
 πεντήκοντα τῶν ἡρώων εἰς ναὺν μονόξυλον ἀσφοδελίνην
 παρήγγειλεν διώκειν· οἱ δὲ ὑπὸ προθυμίας ἐλαύνοντες περὶ

ἀδελφός, ὁ: a brother

ἀνάγω: to lead up

ἀναλαμβάνω: to take up

ἀνεγείρω: to wake up, rouse

ἀπέχω: to keep off or away from

ἀσφοδέλιος, -η, -ον: of asphodel

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief

βοή, ἡ: a loud cry, shout

γυνή, -αῖκος, ἡ: a woman

διώκω: to pursue

ἐλαύνω: to drive, drive on

ἐμβιβάζω: to set in or on

εὐνή, ἡ: a bed

ἡμέρα, ἡ: day

ἥρως, ὁ: a hero, warrior

καθοράω: to look down

κενός, -ή, -όν: empty

κοιμάω: to put to sleep, (mid.) to be asleep

λανθάνω: to escape notice (+ part.)

μανθάνω: to learn

μεσονύκτιος, -ον: of or at midnight

μονόξυλος, -ον: made from a solid trunk

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship

παραγγέλλω: to transmit as a message,
order

παραλαμβάνω: to take along

πεντήκοντα: fifty

προθυμία, ἡ: readiness, willingness

σκοπός, ὁ: a watchman

σπουδή, ἡ: haste, speed

συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party,
symposium

τυγχάνω: to happen to be (+ part.)

ὑποφαίνω: to gradually become visible

οὐ παρήμην: impf. of παρα-εἶμι, "I was not present"

ἐτύγχανον...κοιμώμενος: "I happened to be sleeping"

λαθόντες τοὺς ἄλλους: ao. part. of λανθάνω, "having escaped the notice of the others"

ἀναλαβόντες: ao. part. of ἀνα-λαμβάνω suppl. λαθόντες, "when they carried"

ἀνήχθησαν: ao. pas. of ἀνα-ἄγω, "they put to sea"

ἀνεγρόμενος: ao. part. of ἀνα-ἐγείρομαι, "having awoken"

ἔμαθεν: ao. of μανθάνω, "he realized"

ἴστη: impf. of ἵστημι, "he raised a shout"

παραλαβὼν: ao. part. of παρα-λαμβάνω, "having taken with him"

ἦλθε: ao. of ἔρχομαι, "he went"

ἡμέρας ὑποφαινούσης: gen. abs., "at day break"

ἔλεγον...καθορᾶν: ind. st., "they said that they saw"

ἀπέχουσιν: pr. part. acc. s. of ἀπο-ἔχω modifying ναὺν, "being far away"

ἐμβιβάσας: ao. part. of ἐμβιβάζω, "having put on board"

παρήγγειλεν: ao. of παρα-ἄγγέλλω, "he ordered them" + inf.

Time and Aspect: Translating the Aorist Participle

The term “tense” (from the French word for “time”) is misleading when applied to participles, since time is a factor only in the future participle, which has special uses. The other forms of the participle are distinguished by aspect, indicating the character of the action, of which there are three: continuous action, completed action, and simple action:

Aspect	Form	Translation	Traditional Name
continuous action	<u>παυόμενος</u>	ceasing	present participle
simple action	<u>παυσάμενος</u>	(ceased)	aorist participle
completed action	<u>πεπαύμενος</u>	having ceased	perfect participle

The traditional names for the participles are not consistent, since “aorist” and “perfect” both refer to aspects (simple and completed), while “present” is a time, not an aspect. To add to the confusion the terms “aorist” and “perfect” are also used to define specific tenses of the indicative, which combine time and aspect. We are stuck with these terminological inconsistencies, but it is important to remember that aspect is more important than time with participles. Moreover, the morphology of the Greek verb is based on the three aspect stems, underlined for the verb παύομαι in the example above.

In English the difference between participles indicating simple and continuous action can be brought out in examples such as the following (suggested by Joel Relihan):

I heard her *sing* at the Met. (simple)

I heard her *singing* at the Met. (continuous)

But for most cases, English really only has two participles, present (singing) and perfect (having sung). It is thus difficult to translate accurately into English aorist participles without some circumlocution to give the sense of simple action. Usually we are stuck with something like “having ceased,” which sounds more like a perfect participle. The alternative is to use a noun or a subordinate clause:

γέλασας: “with a laugh”

ἀποκρινάμενος: “in answer”

παυσάμενος: “once he had ceased”

In our commentary, we have usually translated aorist participles as though they were perfect participles, but this is a case of translationese that is meant to indicate the syntactical relations, and there is often a better way to render such expressions in English.

Aorist participles are often used to set forth a series of actions, whose equivalent in English would be multiple finite verbs. Consider the following example from VH 2.25-6:

οἱ δὲ λαθόντες τοὺς ἄλλους ἀναλαβόντες τὴν Ἑλένην ὑπὸ σπουδῆς ἀνήχθησαν. περὶ δὲ τὸ μεσονύκτιον ἀνεγρόμενος ὁ Μενέλαος ἐπεὶ ἔμαθεν τὴν εὐνὴν κενὴν τῆς γυναικός, βοήν τε ἴστη καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν παραλαβὼν ἦλθε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα.

Here is a translationese version of this passage:

“And they, having escaped the notice of the others when they snatched Helen, departed with speed. In the middle of the night, Menelaus, having awoken, when he realized his bed was empty, started raising the alarm and, having taken along his brother, went to the king.”

Here is a more idiomatic version using simple indicatives:

“They escaped the notice of the others when they snatched Helen and departed hastily. In the middle of the night, Menelaus woke up and realized his bed was empty; he began raising the alarm, took along his brother and went to the king.”

Here is another example from VH 2.35:

ἔπειτα δὲ ἄφνω βροντῆς μεγάλης καταρραγείσης ἀνεγρόμενοι καὶ ἀναθορόντες ἀνήχθημεν ἐπισιτισάμενοι.

“Next a great thunder suddenly having cracked, we, having woken up and having sprung up, put to sea, having first laid in supplies.”

μεσημβρίαν καταλαμβάνουσιν αὐτοὺς ἄρτι ἐς τὸν γαλακτώδη τοῦ ὠκεανοῦ τόπον ἐμβαίνοντας πλησίον τῆς Τυροέσσης· παρὰ τοσοῦτον ἦλθον διαδρᾶναι· καὶ ἀναδησάμενοι τὴν ναῦν ἀλύσει ῥοδίνῃ κατέπλεον. ἡ μὲν οὖν Ἑλένη ἐδάκρυνεν τε καὶ ἡσχύνετο κἀνεκαλύπτετο, τοὺς δὲ ἀμφὶ τὸν Κινύραν ἀνακρίνας πρότερον ὁ Ῥαδάμανθυς, εἴ τινες καὶ ἄλλοι αὐτοῖς συνίσασιν, ὥς οὐδένα εἶπον, ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων δῆσας ἀπέπεμψεν ἐς τὸν τῶν ἀσεβῶν χῶρον μαλάχῃ πρότερον μαστιγωθέντας. [27] ἐψηφίσαντο δὲ καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐμπροθέσμως ἐκπέμπειν ἐκ τῆς νήσου, τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν μόνην ἐπιμείναντας.

αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals	ἐπιμένω: to stay on, remain
αἰσχύνομαι: to be ashamed	καλύπτω: to cover, hide
ἄλυσις, -εως, ἡ: a chain	καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, lay hold of
ἀναδέω: to bind or tie up	καταπλέω: to sail down, sail back
ἀνακρίνω: to interrogate	μαλάχῃ, ἡ: mallow
ἀποπέμπω: to send off or away, to dismiss	μαστιγώω: to whip, flog
ἄρτι: just	μεσημβρία, ἡ: mid-day, noon
ἀσεβής, -ές: godless, unholy, profane	ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship
δακρύω: to weep, shed tears	πλήσιος, α, ον: near to, close to (+ gen.)
δέω: to bind	ῥόδιος, -η, -ον: made of or from roses
διαδιδράσκω: to run off, get away, escape	σύνοιδα: to share in knowledge
ἐγκαλύπτω: to cover up	τόπος, ό: a place
ἐκπέμπω: to send out or forth from	χῶρος, ό: a piece of ground, place
ἐμβαίνω: to step in, enter	ψηφίζω: to count, reckon, vote
ἐμπρόθεσμος, -ον: within the stated time	ὠκεανός, -οῦ, ό: the ocean

γαλακτώδη...τόπον: "the milky place"

παρὰ τοσοῦτον ἦλθον: "they came so close" + inf.

διαδρᾶναι: ao. inf. of δια-διδράσκω, "to escaping"

ἀναδησάμενοι: ao. part. of ἀνα-δέω, "having tied the ships"

ἀλύσει ῥοδίνῃ: dat. of means, "with a rose line"

ἡσχύνετο: impf. of αἰσχύνομαι, "she was ashamed"

κἀνεκαλύπτετο = καὶ ἐνεκαλύπτετο: impf. mid. of ἐν-καλύπτω, "she covered herself"

ἀνακρίνας: ao. part. of ἀνα-κρίνω, "having interrogated"

εἴ...συνίσασιν: pr. of συν-οἶδα, in vivid ind. question after ἀνακρίνας, "whether others also know"

μαστιγωθέντας: ao. part. pas. of μαστιγώω, "first having been scourged"

ἐψηφίσαντο: ao. of ψηφίζω, "they voted"

ἐκπέμπειν: inf. complementing ἐψηφίσαντο, "to send away"

τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν μόνην: acc. of duration, "for only the next day"

ἐπιμείναντας: ao. part. of ἐπιμένω agreeing with ἡμᾶς, "after having remained"

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐγὼ ἐποτνιώμην τε καὶ ἐδάκρυον οἷα ἔμελλον ἀγαθὰ καταλιπὼν αὖθις πλανήσεσθαι. αὐτοὶ μέντοι παρεμυθοῦντο λέγοντες οὐ πολλῶν ἐτῶν ἀφίξεσθαι πάλιν ὡς αὐτούς, καί μοι ἤδη εἰς τοῦπιόν θρόνον τε καὶ κλισίαν ἐπεδείκνυσαν πλησίον τῶν ἀρίστων. ἐγὼ δὲ προσελθὼν τῷ Ῥαδαμάνθῳ πολλὰ ἰκέτεον εἰπεῖν τὰ μέλλοντα καὶ ὑποδείξαί μοι τὸν πλοῦν. ὁ δὲ ἔφασκεν ἀφίξεσθαι μὲν εἰς τὴν πατρίδα πολλὰ πρότερον πλανηθέντα καὶ κινδυνεύσαντα, τὸν δὲ χρόνον οὐκέτι τῆς ἐπανόδου προσθεῖναι

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good
 ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best
 ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
 δακρύω: to weep, shed tears
 ἐνταῦθα: here, there
 ἐπάνοδος, ἡ: a return up
 ἐπιδείκνυμι: to show, point out
 ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
 θρόνος, ὁ: a seat, chair
 ἰκετεύω: to approach as a suppliant, beg
 καταλείπω: leave behind
 κινδυνεύω: to be in danger
 κλισία, ἡ: a place for lying down

πάλιν: back, again
 παραμυθέομαι: to encourage or exhort
 πατρίς, -ίδος: of one's fathers
 πλανάω: to make to wander
 πλανάω: to wander
 πλήσιος, -α, -ον: near to, close to
 πλός, ὁ: a sailing, voyage
 ποτνιάομαι: to cry or lament aloud
 προσέρχομαι: to come to (+ dat.)
 προστίθημι: to put before
 ὑποδείκνυμι: to show secretly
 φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert
 χρόνος, ὁ: time

They leave the Island of the Blessed, with predictions about the future from Rhadamanthus.

ἐποτνιώμην: impf. of ποτνιάομαι, "I started crying"
 πλανήσεσθαι: fut. mid. inf. of πλανάω with ἔμελλον, "I was about to wander"
 καταλιπὼν: ao. part. of κατα-λείπω, "having left"
 παρεμυθοῦντο λέγοντες: "they comforted us by saying"
 ἀφίξεσθαι: fut. inf. of ἀφικνέομαι in ind. st. after λέγοντες, "that I will return"
 ὡς αὐτούς: "to them"
 τοῦπιόν (= τὸ ἐπιόν): from ἐπι-έρχομαι, "the coming (i.e., the future) chair"
 ἐπεδείκνυσαν: impf. of ἐπι-δείκνυμι, "they showed"
 προσελθὼν: ao. part. of προσ-έρχομαι
 τὰ μέλλοντα: "the future"
 εἰπεῖν, ὑποδείξαί: ao. infinitives after ἰκέτεον
 ἀφίξεσθαι: fut. inf. of ἀφικνέομαι after ἔφασκεν, "he claimed that I would arrive"
 πλανηθέντα: ao. part. pas. acc. s. of πλανάω, agreeing with the subject of ἀφίξεσθαι (sc. με), "having wandered"
 προσθεῖναι: ao. inf. act. of προσ-τίθημι complementing ἠθέλησεν, "to set before me"

ἡθέλησεν· ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ δεικνὺς τὰς πλησίον νήσους - ἐφαίνοντο δὲ πέντε τὸν ἀριθμόν, ἄλλη δὲ ἕκτη πόρρωθεν - ταύτας μὲν εἶναι ἔφασκεν τῶν ἀσεβῶν, τὰς πλησίον, «Ἄφ' ὧν,» ἔφη, «ἤδη τὸ πολὺ πῦρ ὀρᾷς καιόμενον, ἕκτη δὲ ἐκείνη τῶν ὀνείρων ἢ πόλις· μετὰ ταύτην δὲ ἡ τῆς Καλυψοῦς νῆσος, ἀλλ' οὐδέπω σοι φαίνεται. ἐπειδὴν δὲ ταύτας παραπλεύσης, τότε δὴ ἀφίξῃ εἰς τὴν μεγάλην ἡπειρον τὴν ἐναντίαν τῇ ὑφ' ὑμῶν κατοικουμένη· ἐνταῦθα δὲ πολλὰ παθῶν καὶ ποικίλα ἔθνη διελθὼν καὶ ἀνθρώποις ἀμίκτοις ἐπιδημήσας χρόνῳ ποτὲ ἤξεις εἰς τὴν ἐτέραν ἡπειρον.»

[28] Τοσαῦτα εἶπεν, καὶ ἀνασπάσας ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς μαλάχης ρίζαν ὥρεξέν μοι, ταύτην κελεύσας ἐν τοῖς μεγίστοις κινδύνους

ἄμικτος, -ον: unsociable, savage

ἀνασπάω: to pluck

ἀριθμός: number

ἀσεβής, -ές: godless, unholy, profane

δείκνυμι: to bring to light, show, exhibit

διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through

ἐθέλω: to will, wish, purpose

ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a company, body of men

ἕκτος, -η, -ον: sixth

ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite to (+ dat.)

ἐνταῦθα: here, there

ἐπιδημέω: to visit

ἦκω: to have come, be present, be here

ἡπειρος: terra-firma, the land

καίω: to kindle, burn

Καλυψώ, -οῦς, ἡ: Calypso

κατοικέω: to dwell in

κελεύω: to urge or drive on, urge, exhort

κίνδυνος, ό: a danger, risk, hazard, venture, enterprise

μαλάχη, ἡ: mallow

ὄνειρος, -ου, ό: a dream

ὀρέγω: to reach, stretch, stretch out

οὐδέπω: and not yet, not as yet

παραπλέω: to sail by or past

πάσχω: to suffer

πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city

πόρρωθεν: from afar

ρίζα, -ης, ἡ: a root

φαίνομαι: to be visible

φάσκω: to think, declare

χρόνος, ό: time

ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ: "however"

δεικνὺς: pr. part. nom. s. of δείκνυμι, "showing"

τὰς πλησίον: attributive, "these near (islands)"

ἡ τῆς Καλυψοῦς νῆσος: "the island of Calypso" from Odyssey 5

ἐπειδὴν...παραπλεύσης: subj. in indefinite temporal clause, "whenever you sail past"

ἀφίξῃ: fut. 2 s. of ἀφικνέομαι, "you will arrive"

παθῶν: ao. part. of πάσχω, "having suffered"

διελθὼν: ao. part. of δια-έρχομαι, "having gone through"

ἐπιδημήσας: ao. part. of ἐπιδημέω, "having visited" + dat.

ἤξεις: fut. of ἦκω, "you will come"

ἀνασπάσας: ao. part. of ἀνασπάω, "having plucked"

ὥρεξέν: ao. of ὀρέγω, "he handed it"

προσεύχεσθαι· παρήνεσε δὲ εἰ καὶ ποτε ἀφικοίμην ἐς τήνδε τὴν γῆν, μήτε πῦρ μαχαίρα σκαλεύειν μήτε θέρμους ἐσθίειν μήτε παιδὶ ὑπὲρ τὰ ὀκτωκαίδεκα ἔτη πλησιάζειν· τούτων γὰρ ἂν μεμνημένον ἐλπίδας ἔχειν τῆς εἰς τὴν νῆσον ἀφίξεως.

Τότε μὲν οὖν τὰ περὶ τὸν πλοῦν παρεσκευασάμην, καὶ ἐπεὶ καιρὸς ἦν, συνεισιτώμην αὐτοῖς. τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ ἐλθὼν πρὸς Ὅμηρον τὸν ποιητὴν ἐδεήθην αὐτοῦ ποιῆσαί μοι δίστιχον ἐπίγραμμα· καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἐποίησεν, στήλην βηρύλλου λίθου ἀναστήσας ἐπέγραψα πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. τὸ δὲ ἐπίγραμμα ἦν τοιόνδε·

ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up
 ἄφιξις, -εως, ἡ: an arrival
 βήρυλλος, ἡ: gem of sea-green color, beryl
 δέομαι: to ask (+ gen.)
 δίστιχος, -ον: of two verses
 ἐλπίς, -ιδος, ἡ: hope, expectation
 ἐπίγραμμα, -ατος, τό: an inscription
 ἐπιγράφω: to write on
 ἐσθίω: to eat
 ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
 θέρμος, ὁ: a lupine
 καιρός, ὁ: proper time
 λίθος, -ου, ὁ: a stone
 λιμὴν, -ένος, ὁ: a harbor

μάκαρ, -αρος, ὁ: blessed, happy
 μάχαιρα, -ης, ἡ: a large knife
 μιμνήσκομαι: to remember (+ gen.)
 ὀκτωκαίδεκα: eighteen
 παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child
 παραινέω: to exhort, recommend, advise
 παρασκευάζω: to prepare
 πλησιάζω: to consort with (+ dat.)
 ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet
 προσεύχομαι: to offer prayers or vows
 πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
 σκαλεύω: stir up, hoe
 στήλη, ἡ: a block of stone
 συνεστιάω: to entertain in one's house

προσεύχεσθαι: pr. inf. after κελεύσας, "bidding me to pray"

παρήνεσε: ao. of παρα-αἰνέω, "he advised"

εἰ καὶ ποτε ἀφικοίμην: ao. opt. in a future less vivid condition, "if I were to arrive"

μήτε σκαλεύειν, μήτε ἐσθίειν μήτε πλησιάζειν: pr. infinitives after παρήνεσε, "not to stir..." etc.

ἂν μεμνημένον ἐλπίδας ἔχειν: a future less vivid condition in implied indirect statement, with ἂν ἔχειν representing the optative of the apodosis (ἂν ἔχοιμι) and the participle μεμνημένον (perf. part. acc. s. modifying the subject of ἔχειν) with conditional force representing the optative of the protasis (εἰ μεμνημένος εἶην), "(saying that) if I were to remember, I would have hope"

ἀφίξεως: gen s. after ἐλπίδας, "hopes of return"

συνεισιτώμην: impf. mid. of συν-ἐστιάω, "I joined in feasting"

τῇ δὲ ἐπιούσῃ (sc. ἡμέρᾳ): "on the following day"

ἐλθὼν: ao. part. of ἔρχομαι

ἐδεήθην: ao. pas. of δέομαι, "I asked"

ἀναστήσας: ao. part. trans. of ἀνα-ἵστημι, "setting up"

ἐπέγραψα: ao. of ἐπι-γράφω, "I inscribed"

«Λουκιανὸς τάδε πάντα φίλος μακάρεσσι θεοῖσιν
εἶδέ τε καὶ πάλιν ἦλθε φίλῃν ἐς πατρίδα γαίαν.»

[29] Μείνας δὲ κάκεινεν τὴν ἡμέραν, τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἀνηγόμεν
τῶν ἡρώων παραπεμπόντων. ἔνθα μοι καὶ Ὀδυσσεὺς προσελθὼν
λάθρᾳ τῆς Πηνελόπης δίδωσιν ἐπιστολὴν εἰς Ὀγυγίαν τὴν νῆσον
Καλυψοῖ κομίζειν. συνέπεμψε δέ μοι ὁ Ῥαδάμανθυς τὸν πορθμέα
Ναύπλιον, ἵν' ἐὰν καταχθῶμεν ἐς τὰς νήσους, μηδεὶς ἡμᾶς
συλλάβῃ ἄτε κατ' ἄλλην ἐμπορίαν καταπλέοντας.

ἀήρ, αἶρος, ὁ: the air
γαῖα, ἡ: a land, country
δίδωμι: to give
ἐμπορία, ἡ: commerce, trade, traffic
ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a message
εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant
θεός, ὁ: a god
Καλυψώ, -οῦς, ἡ: Calypso
κατάγω: to lead down (to land)
καταπλέω: to sail down
κομίζω: to take care of, to convey

λάθρῃ, -α: secretly from (+ gen.)
μένω: to stay, remain
νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
πάλιν: back, backwards
παραπέμπω: to escort
πατρίς, -ίδος: of one's fathers
Πηνελόπεια, ἡ: Penelope
πορθμέυς, -έως, ὁ: a ferryman
προσέρχομαι: to come or go to (+ dat.)
συμπέμπω: to send with
Ὀγύγιος, -α, -ον: Ogygian

Λουκιανὸς: the use of Lucian's name conflates the narrator and the author.

μακάρεσσι: epic dat. pl. "beloved to the blessed gods"

εἶδέ τε καὶ ἦλθε: ao. of οἶδα and ἔρχομαι, "he saw and left"

μείνας: ao. part. of μένω, having remained"

κάκεινεν τὴν ἡμέραν: acc. of duration of time, "for that day"

ἀνηγόμεν: impf. of ἀνα-ἄγω, "I put to sea"

τῶν ἡρώων παραπεμπόντων: gen. abs., "the heroes escorting me"

προσελθὼν: ao. part. of προσ-ἔρχομαι, "having approached" + dat.

λάθρᾳ τῆς Πηνελόπης: "secretly from Penelope"

εἰς Ὀγυγίαν: "to Ogygia," the island of the nymph Calypso, where Odysseus was stranded for seven years (Odyssey 5)

Ναύπλιον: Nauplion was the legendary navigator of the Argonauts.

ἵνα μηδεὶς ἡμᾶς συλλάβῃ: subj. in neg. purpose clause, "lest someone arrest us"

ἐὰν καταχθῶμεν: ao. pas. subj. of κατα-ἄγω, more vivid or general protasis, "if (ever) we land"

ἄτε καταπλέοντας: expressing the grounds for the action, "thinking that we were putting in"

κατ' ἄλλην ἐμπορίαν: "for some other errand"

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν εὐώδη ἀέρα προϊόντες παρεληλύθειμεν, αὐτίκα ἡμᾶς ὁσμή τε δεινὴ διεδέχετο οἶον ἀσφάλτου καὶ θείου καὶ πίττης ἄμα καιομένων, καὶ κνῖσα δὲ πονηρὰ καὶ ἀφόρητος ὥσπερ ἀπὸ ἀνθρώπων ὀπτωμένων, καὶ ὁ ἀήρ ζοφερός καὶ ὀμιχλώδης, καὶ κατέσταζεν ἐξ αὐτοῦ δρόσος πιττίνῃ· ἡκούομεν δὲ καὶ μαστίγων ψόφον καὶ οἰμωγὴν ἀνθρώπων πολλῶν. [30] ταῖς μὲν οὖν ἄλλαις οὐ προσέσχομεν, ἥς δὲ ἐπέβημεν, τοιάδε ἦν· κύκλω μὲν πᾶσα κρημνώδης καὶ ἀπόξυρος, πέτραις καὶ τράχωσι κατεσκληκυῖα, δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν οὐδὲ ὕδωρ ἐνῆν· ἀνερπύσαντες δὲ ὁμῶς κατὰ

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air
 ἄμα: at once, at the same time
 ἀνερπύζω: to creep up or upwards
 ἀπόξυρος, -ον: cut sharp off, abrupt
 ἀσφάλτος, ἡ: asphalt, bitumen
 ἀφόρητος, -ον: intolerable, insufferable
 δεινός, -ή, -όν: fearful, terrible, dread, dire
 δένδρον, τό: a tree
 διαδέχομαι: to receive
 δρόσος, ἡ: dew
 ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon
 εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling
 ζοφερός, -ά, -όν: dusky, gloomy
 θεῖον, τό: brimstone
 καίω: to kindle, burn
 κατασκέλλομαι: to whither, harden
 καταστάζω: to drip

κνῖσα, -ης, ἡ: odor
 κρημνώδης, -ες: precipitous
 κύκλος, ὁ: a ring, circle, round
 μαστίξ, -ιγος, ἡ: a whip, scourge
 οἰμωγή, ἡ: loud wailing, lamentation
 οἶος, -α, -ον: such, just like (+ gen.)
 ὀμιχλώδης, -ές: misty
 ὀπτάω: to roast, broil
 ὁσμή, ἡ: a smell, scent, odor
 πέτρα, ἡ: a rock
 πίττα, -ης, ἡ: pitch
 πίττινος: like pitch
 πονηρός, -ά, -όν: painful, grievous
 προσέχω: to bring to shore
 τραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: rough
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
 ψόφος, ὁ: a noise

They encounter strong smells that presage the Island of the Damned.

προϊόντες: pr. part. of προ-έρχομαι, “going forward”
 παρεληλύθειμεν: plupf. of παρα-έρχομαι, “we had passed”
 διεδέχετο: impf. of διαδέχομαι, “started being received”
 ἀφόρητος: “insufferable”
 κατέσταζεν: impf. of καταστάζω, “dripped”
 προσέσχομεν: ao. of προσ-έχω, “we did not put in”
 ἥς δὲ: rel. pron. gen. s. “but the island on which we landed”
 ἐπέβημεν: ao. of ἐπι-βαίνω, “we landed”
 πᾶσα (sc. νῆσος): “the whole (island)”
 κατεσκληκυῖα: perf. part. nom. f. s. of κατα-σκέλλομαι, “having been hardened”
 ἐνῆν: impf. of ἐν-εἶμι, “there was on it”
 ἀνερπύσαντες: ao. part. of ἀνερπύζω, “having crawled”

τοὺς κρημνοὺς προήμεν διὰ τινος ἀκανθώδους καὶ σκολόπων
 μεστῆς ἀτραποῦ, πολλὴν ἀμορφίαν τῆς χώρας ἐχούσης. ἐλθόντες
 δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν εἰρκτὴν καὶ τὸ κολαστήριον, πρῶτα μὲν τὴν φύσιν τοῦ
 τόπου ἐθαυμάζομεν· τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἔδαφος αὐτὸ μαχαίραις καὶ
 σκόλοψι πάντῃ ἐξηνθήκει, κύκλω δὲ ποταμοὶ περιέρρεον, ὁ μὲν
 βορβόρου, ὁ δὲ δεύτερος αἵματος, ὁ δὲ ἔνδον πυρός, πάνυ μέγας
 οὗτος καὶ ἀπέρατος, καὶ ἔρρει ὥσπερ ὕδωρ καὶ ἐκυματοῦτο
 ὥσπερ θάλαττα, καὶ ἰχθῦς δὲ εἶχεν πολλούς, τοὺς μὲν δαλοῖς
 προσεοικότας, τοὺς δὲ μικροὺς ἀνθραξι πεπυρωμένους· ἐκάλουν δὲ

αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood
 ἀκανθώδης, -ες: full of thorns, thorny
 ἀμορφία, ἡ: unshapeliness, unsightliness
 ἀνθραξ, -ακος, ὁ: charcoal, coal
 ἀπέρατος, -ον: not to be crossed
 ἀτραπός: a path
 βόρβορος, ὁ: mud, mire
 δαλός, ὁ: a fire-brand, torch
 δεύτερος, -α, -ον: second
 ἔδαφος, -εος, τό: the bottom, foundation
 εἰρκτή, ἡ: an enclosure, prison
 ἔνδον: in, within
 ἐξανθέω: to put out flowers
 ἔρρω: to go slowly, flow
 θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel
 καλέω: to call, summon
 κολαστήριον, -ον, τό: a house of
 correction, place of punishment

κρημνός, -οῦ, ὁ: a cliff
 κύκλος, ὁ: a ring, circle, round
 κυματώω: to undulate
 μάχαιρα, -ης, ἡ: a large knife
 μεστός, -ή, -όν: filled, full of (+ gen.)
 μικρός, -ά, -όν: small
 περιρρέω: to flow round
 ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream
 προσέοικα: to be like, resemble (+ dat.)
 πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
 πυρόω: to burn with fire, burn up
 σκόλοψ, -οπος, ὁ: a thorn
 τόπος, ὁ: a place
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
 φύσις, ἡ: the nature, natural qualities
 χώρα, ἡ: a space, land

προήειμεν: impf. of προ-ἔρχομαι, “we approached”
 τῆς χώρας ἐχούσης: gen. abs., “the land having”
 κολαστήριον: “the place of punishment”
 ἐξηνθήκει: plupf. of ἐξ-ἀνθέω, “had bloomed with” + dative
 περιέρρεον: impf. of περι-ρέω, “were flowing around”
 ἔρρει: impf. of ῥέω, “was flowing”
 ἐκυματοῦτο: impf. of κυματέω, “was undulating”
 εἶχεν: impf. of ἔχω, “it had”
 προσεοικότας: perf. part., “very like” + dat.
 ἀνθραξι πεπυρωμένοις: perf. part. dat. pl. of πυράω, also with προσεοικότας,
 “very like burning coals”

αὐτοὺς λυχνίσκους. [31] εἴσοδος δὲ μία στενή διὰ πάντων ἦν, καὶ πυλωρὸς ἐφειστήκει Τίμων ὁ Ἀθηναῖος. παρελθόντες δὲ ὅμως τοῦ Ναυπλίου καθηγουμένου ἑωρῶμεν κολαζομένους πολλοὺς μὲν βασιλέας, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ ιδιώτας, ὧν ἐνίους καὶ ἐγνωρίζομεν· εἶδομεν δὲ καὶ τὸν Κινύραν καπνῶ ὑποτυφόμενον ἐκ τῶν αἰδοίων ἀπηρτημένον. προσετίθεσαν δὲ οἱ περιηγηταὶ καὶ τοὺς ἐκάστων βίους καὶ τὰς ἁμαρτίας ἐφ' αἷς κολάζονται· καὶ μεγίστας ἀπασῶν τιμωρίας ὑπέμενον οἱ ψευδάμενοί τι παρὰ τὸν βίον καὶ οἱ μὴ

Ἀθηναῖος: Athenian

αἰδοίων, τό: the genitals

ἁμαρτία, ἡ: a failure, fault, sin

ἀπαρτάω: to hang up from

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief

βίος, ὁ: life

γνωρίζω: to recognize

εἴσοδος, ἡ: a way in, entrance

ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some

ιδιώτης, -ου, ὁ: a private person

καθηγέομαι: act as guide, lead the way

καπνός, ὁ: smoke

κολάζω: to punish

λυχνίσκος, ὁ: a lamp-fish

οἶδα: to know

ὁράω: to see

παρέρχομαι: to pass by

περιηγητής, -οῦ, ὁ: one who guides
strangers and explains

προστίθῃμι: to deliver

πυλωρός, ὁ: a gate-keeper, warder, porter

στενός, -ή, -όν: narrow, strait

τιμωρία, ἡ: punishment

ὑπομένω: to stay behind, submit to

ὑποτύφομαι: to burn with a smoldering
fire

ψεύδομαι: to cheat by lies, beguile

ἐφειστήκει: plupf. of ἐφίστημι, “had been stationed there”

Τίμων ὁ Ἀθηναῖος: Timon of Athens, a famous misanthrope

παραελθόντες: ao. part. of παρα-έρχομαι, “having passed by”

τοῦ Ναυπλίου καθηγουμένου: pr. part. of κατα-ηγέομαι, gen. abs., “with N. conducting”

ἑωρῶμεν: impf. of ὁράω, “we saw”

ὧν ἐνίους: “of whom some we recognized”

Κινύραν: legendary king of Crete

ὑποτυφόμενον: pr. part., “burning”

ἀπηρτημένον: perf. part. of ἀπαρτάω, “having been hung up”

προσετίθεσαν: impf. of προσ-τίθῃμι, “gave further information about”

ἐφ' αἷς κολάζονται: “for which they are being punished”

ὑπέμενον: impf. of ὑπο-μένω, “submitted to”

οἱ ψευδάμενοί: ao. part. of ψεύδω, “those who told lies”

τὰ ἀληθῆ συγγεγραφότες, ἐν οἷς καὶ Κτησίας ὁ Κνίδιος ἦν καὶ Ἡρόδοτος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοί. τούτους οὖν ὁρῶν ἐγὼ χρηστὰς εἶχον εἰς τοῦπιόν τὰς ἐλπίδας· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐμαυτῷ ψεῦδος εἰπόντι συνηπιστάμην. [32] ταχέως οὖν ἀναστρέψας ἐπὶ τὴν ναῦν - οὐ γὰρ ἐδυνάμην φέρειν τὴν ὄψιν - ἀσπασάμενος τὸν Ναύπλιον ἀπέπλευσα.

ἀληθής, -ές: true

ἀναστρέφω: to turn upside down, upset

ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off

ἀσπάζομαι: to greet, bid farewell

δύναμαι: to be able (+ inf.)

ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation

Κνίδιος, -α, -ον: Cnidian, from Cnidos

ὄψις, -εως, ἡ: look, appearance, aspect

συγγράφω: to write or note down

συνεπίσταμαι: to be conscious of (+ dat.)

ταχέως: quickly

χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful, good

ψεῦδος, -εος, τό: a falsehood, untruth, lie

οἱ...συγγεγραφότες: perf. part. of *συν-γράφω*, "those who have written"

ἐν οἷς: "among whom"

Κτησίας...Ἡρόδοτος: Ctesias and Herodotus, 5th century historians.

χρηστὰς: pred. acc., "I had hopes *that were good*"

εἶχον: impf. of *ἔχω*, "I had"

εἰς τοῦπιόν (=τὸ ἐπιόν): "for the future"

εἰπόντι: ao. part. dat. s. of *λέγω* modifying *ἐμαυτῷ*, "me having told"

συνηπιστάμην: impf. of *συν-ἐπίσταμαι*, "I was not conscious" + dat.

ἀναστρέψας: ao. part., "having turned back"

ἀσπασάμενος: ao. part. of *ἀσπάζω*, "having bid farewell"

ἀπέπλευσα: ao. 1 s., "I sailed away"

Καὶ μετ' ὀλίγον ἐφαίνετο πλησίον ἡ τῶν ὀνείρων νῆσος, ἀμυδρὰ καὶ ἀσαφὴς ἰδεῖν· εἶχε δὲ καὶ αὐτὴ τι τοῖς ὀνείροις παραπλήσιον· ὑπεχώρει γὰρ προσιόντων ἡμῶν καὶ ὑπέφευγε καὶ πορρωτέρω ὑπέβαινε. καταλαβόντες δὲ ποτε αὐτὴν καὶ εἰσπλεύσαντες εἰς τὸν Ὑπνον λιμένα προσαγορευόμενον πλησίον τῶν πυλῶν τῶν ἐλεφαντίνων, ἧ τὸ τοῦ Ἀλεκτρυόνος ἱερὸν ἔστιν, περὶ δαίλῃν ὀψίαν ἀπεβαίνομεν· παρελθόντες δὲ εἰς τὴν πόλιν πολλοὺς ὀνείρους καὶ ποικίλους ἑωρῶμεν. πρῶτον δὲ βούλομαι περὶ τῆς πόλεως εἰπεῖν, ἐπεὶ μὴδὲ ἄλλω τινὶ γέγραπται περὶ

ἀμυδρός, -ά, -όν: indistinct, dim, obscure
ἀποβαίνω: to step off, disembark
ἀσαφής, -ές: indistinct
βούλομαι: to will, wish (+ inf.)
γράφω: to write
δαίλη, ἡ: afternoon
εἰσπλέω: to sail into, enter
ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: ivory
καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, overtake
λιμὴν, -ένος, ὅ: a harbor, haven, creek
ὄνειρος, -ου, ὅ: a dream
ὁράω: to see
ὀψιος, -α, -ον: late

παραπλήσιος, -α, -ον: nearly resembling
(+ dat.)
παρέρχομαι: to go by, to pass by
πλήσιος, -α, -ον: near, close to (+ gen.)
ποικίλος, -η, -ον: many-colored, spotted
πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city
πορρωτέρω: further
προσαγορεύω: to address, call by name
πύλη, ἡ: a gate
Ὑπνος, ὁ: Hypnos, "Sleep"
ὑποβαίνω: to recede
ὑποφεύγω: to flee from under, shun
ὑποχωρέω: to go back, retire, recoil
φαίνομαι: to seem, appear, be visible

They make their way to the Island of Dreams.

ἀμυδρὰ καὶ ἀσαφὴς ἰδεῖν: epexegetic inf., "faint and unclear to see"

τι παραπλήσιον: "a certain resemblance"

ὑπεχώρει: impf. of ὑπο-χωρέω, "kept receding"

προσιόντων ἡμῶν: pr. part. of προσ-έρχομαι, gen. abs., "as we approached"

καταλαβόντες: ao. part. of καταλαμβάνω, "having overtaken"

πυλῶν τῶν ἐλεφαντίνων: There are gates of ivory in the underworld of Homer.

ἧ: rel. pron. dat. s. f., "where"

Ἀλεκτρυόνος ἱερὸν ἔστιν: "the sanctuary of the rooster," perhaps referring to the practice of divination using a rooster.

περὶ δαίλῃν ὀψίαν: "around late afternoon"

παρελθόντες: ao. part. of παρα-έρχομαι, "upon arriving"

ἑωρῶμεν: impf. of ὁράω, "we saw"

ἄλλω τινι: dat. of agent, "by anyone else"

γέγραπται: perf. pas. of γράφω, "(nothing) has been written"

αὐτῆς, ὃς δὲ καὶ μόνος ἐπεμνήσθη Ὅμηρος, οὐ πάνυ ἀκριβῶς συνέγραψεν. [33] κύκλῳ μὲν περὶ πᾶσαν αὐτὴν ὕλῃ ἀνέστηκεν, τὰ δένδρα δὲ ἐστὶ μήκωνες ὑψηλαὶ καὶ μανδραγόραι καὶ ἐπ' αὐτῶν πολὺ τι πλῆθος νυκτερίδων· τοῦτο γὰρ μόνον ἐν τῇ νήσῳ γίνεται ὄρνεον. ποταμὸς δὲ παραρρέει πλησίον ὁ ὑπ' αὐτῶν καλούμενος Νυκτιπόρος, καὶ πηγαὶ δύο παρὰ τὰς πύλας· ὀνόματα καὶ ταύταις, τῇ μὲν Νήγρετος, τῇ δὲ Παννυχία. ὁ περίβολος δὲ τῆς πόλεως ὑψηλὸς τε καὶ ποικίλος, ἱριδι τὴν χροάν ὁμοιότατος· πύλαι μέντοι ἔπεισιν οὐ δύο, καθάπερ Ὅμηρος εἴρηκεν, ἀλλὰ τέσσαρες, δύο μὲν πρὸς τὸ τῆς Βλακείας πεδίων ἀποβλέπουσαι,

ἀκριβῶς: exactly
ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up
ἀποβλέπω: to look away from
βλακεία, ἡ: laziness, stupidity
ἔπειμι: to be upon, be set on
ἐπιμνήσκομαι: to make mention
ἴρις, -ιδος, ἡ: rainbow
καλέω: to call, summon
κύκλος, ὁ: a ring, circle, round
μανδραγόρας, -ου, -α, ὁ: mandrake
μήκων, -ωνος, ὁ: the poppy
Νήγρετος, -ον: “Unwaking”
νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
νυκτερίς, -ιδος, ἡ: a bat
ὅμοιος, -α, -ον: like, resembling
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name

ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
Παννύχιος, -ον: “All-night”
παραρρέω: to flow beside or past
πεδίων, τό: a plain, flat
περίβολος, ὁ: circumference
πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams
πλῆθος, -εος, τό: a great number
πλησίος, -α, -ον: near, close to
πόλις, -εως, ἡ: a city
ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream
πύλη, ἡ: a gate
συγγράφω: to write or note down
τέσσαρες: four
ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
ὕψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised
χροά, ἡ: skin, color

ὃς δὲ καὶ μόνος: “and even he who alone,” i.e. Homer.
ἐπεμνήσθη: ao. of ἐπι-μνήσκομαι, “made mention”
συνέγραψεν: ao. of συν-γράφω, “he described”
ἀνέστηκεν: ao. intrans. of ἀνα-ίστημι, “stood”
μήκωνες καὶ μανδραγόραι: “poppies and mandragoras,” both narcotic plants
νυκτερίδων: gen. pl., “of bats,” lit. “night-sighters”
καλούμενος Νυκτιπόρος: “called Sleepwalker”
ἱριδι τὴν χροάν: acc. of resp., “like a rainbow in color”
εἴρηκεν: perf. of λέγω, “as Homer has said”
τῆς Βλακείας πεδίων: “the plain of Laziness”

ἡ μὲν σιδηρᾶ, ἡ δὲ ἐκ κεράμου πεποιημένη, καθ' ὧς ἐλέγοντο ἀποδημεῖν αὐτῶν οἳ τε φοβεροὶ καὶ φονικοὶ καὶ ἀπηνεῖς, δύο δὲ πρὸς τὸν λιμένα καὶ τὴν θάλατταν, ἡ μὲν κερατίνη, ἡ δὲ καθ' ἣν ἡμεῖς παρήλθομεν ἐλεφαντίνη. εἰσιόντι δὲ εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἐν δεξιᾷ μὲν ἐστὶ τὸ Νυκτῶον - σέβουσι γὰρ θεῶν ταύτην μάλιστα καὶ τὸν Ἀλεκτρυόνα· ἐκείνῳ δὲ πλησίον τοῦ λιμένος τὸ ἱερὸν πεποιήται - ἐν ἀριστερᾷ δὲ τὰ τοῦ Ὑπνου βασιλεία. οὗτος γὰρ δὴ ἄρχει παρ' αὐτοῖς σατράπας δύο καὶ ὑπάρχους πεποιημένους, Ταραξίωνά τε τὸν Ματαιογένους καὶ Πλουτοκλέα τὸν Φαντασίωνος. ἐν μέσῃ δὲ τῇ ἀγορᾷ πηγή τίς ἐστίν, ἣν καλοῦσι Καρεῶτιν· καὶ πλησίον ναοὶ

ἀγορά, -ᾱς, ἡ: an assembly, market
ἀλεκτρυόν, ὁ: rooster
ἀπηνής, -ές: ungentle, harsh, rough, hard
ἀποδημέω: to be away from home
ἀριστερός: left, on the left
ἄρχω: to be first, rule
βασιλεῖον, τό: a royal dwelling, palace
δεξιὰ, ἡ: the right hand
ἐλεφάντινος, -η, -ον: ivory
θεός, ὁ: a god
ἱερὸν, τό: a sanctuary
καλέω: to call, summon
κέραμος, ὁ: clay
κεράτινος, -η, -ον: of horn

λιμὴν, -ένος, ὁ: a harbor, haven
μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
ναός, -ώ, ὁ: the dwelling of a god, a temple
παρέρχομαι: to pass by
πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams
πλήσιος, -α, -ον: near, close to (+ gen.)
σατράπης, -ου, ὁ: a satrap, viceroy
σέβω: to worship, honor
σιδήρεος, -α, -ον: made of iron or steel
ὑπαρχος, ὁ: a commander
Ὑπνος, ὁ: Hypnos, "Sleep"
φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful
φονικός, -ή, -όν: murderous

πεποιημένη: perf. part., "made of iron, made of clay"
καθ' ὧς ἐλέγοντο ἀποδημεῖν: "through which are said to travel"
καθ' ἣν ἡμεῖς παρήλθομεν: "through which we came"
εἰσιόντι: pr. part. of εἰσ-έρχομαι, "to one entering"
Νυκτῶον: "the sanctuary of Night"
ταύτην μάλιστα: "this one (Night) especially"
ἐκείνῳ δὲ πεποιήται: perf. pas., "but for that one (the rooster) was built"
οὗτος γὰρ δὴ: "for indeed this one"
σατράπας δύο καὶ ὑπάρχους: "to be satraps (a Persian term) and lieutenants"
πεποιημένους: perf. mid., "having appointed them"
Ταραξίωνά τὸν Ματαιογένους: "Nightmare, son of Born-in-vain"
Πλουτοκλέα τὸν Φαντασίωνος: "Glory-of-Wealth, son of Fancy"
Καρεῶτιν: from κάρος, "deep sleep"

δύο, Ἀπάτης καὶ Ἀληθείας· ἔνθα καὶ τὸ ἄδυτόν ἐστιν αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ μαντεῖον, οὗ προειστῆκει προφητεύων Ἀντιφῶν ὁ τῶν ὀνείρων ὑποκριτής, ταύτης παρὰ τοῦ Ὑπνου λαχὼν τῆς τιμῆς. [34] αὐτῶν μέντοι τῶν ὀνείρων οὔτε φύσις οὔτε ἰδέα ἢ αὐτή, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν μακροὶ ἦσαν καὶ καλοὶ καὶ εὐειδεῖς, οἱ δὲ μικροὶ καὶ ἄμορφοι, καὶ οἱ μὲν χρύσειοι, ὥς ἐδόκουν, οἱ δὲ ταπεινοὶ τε καὶ εὐτελεῖς. ἦσαν δ' ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ πτερωτοὶ τινες καὶ τερατώδεις, καὶ ἄλλοι καθάπερ ἐς πομπὴν διεσκευασμένοι, οἱ μὲν ἐς βασιλέας, οἱ δὲ ἐς θεούς, οἱ δὲ εἰς ἄλλα τοιαῦτα κεκοσμημένοι. πολλοὺς δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ἐγνωρίσαμεν, πάλαι παρ' ἡμῖν ἑωρακότες, οἱ δὲ καὶ

ἄδυτον: the innermost sanctuary
 ἄμορφος, -ον: misshapen, unsightly
 βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
 γνωρίζω: to recognize
 διασκευάζω: to get ready, equip
 εὐειδής, -ές: well-shaped, beautiful
 εὐτελής, -ές: cheap
 θεός, ὁ: a god
 ἰδέα, ἡ: form
 κοσμέω: to order, arrange
 λαγχάνω: to obtain by lot or fate
 μαντεῖον, τό: an oracle
 μικρός, -ά, -όν: small

ὄνειρος, -ου, ὁ: a dream
 ὁράω: to see
 πάλαι: long ago
 πομπή, ἡ: a parade
 προίστημι: to set before, preside
 προφητεύω: to be an interpreter
 πτερωτός, -ή, -όν: feathered
 ταπεινός, -ή, -όν: low
 τερατώδης, -ες: portentous
 τιμή, ἡ: honor
 ὑποκριτής, -ου, ὁ: an interpreter
 φύσις, ἡ: nature, condition
 χρύσεος, -η, -ον: golden, of gold

Ἀπάτης καὶ Ἀληθείας: "Deceit and Truth"

οὗ προειστῆκει: plupf. of προ-ἵστημι, "over which Antiphon presided"

Ἀντιφῶν: perhaps referring to the contemporary of Socrates who wrote a treatise on the interpretation of dreams.

ὑποκριτής: "interpreter"

λαχὼν: ao. part. of λαγχάνω, "having obtained" + gen.

ταύτης τῆς τιμῆς: gen. after λαχὼν, "having obtained *this* office"

ἢ αὐτή: "the same"

οἱ μὲν χρύσειοι...οἱ δὲ ταπεινοί: "some rich, some poor"

ὥς ἐδόκουν: "so they seemed to me"

ἐς πομπήν: "for a parade"

διεσκευασμένοι: perf. part. of δια-σκευάζω, "having been equipped"

κεκοσμημένοι: perf. part. of κοσμέω, "having been adorned as kings, gods, etc."

ἐγνωρίσαμεν: ao. of γνωρίζω, "we recognized"

ἑωρακότες: perf. part. of ὁράω, "having seen"

οἱ δὲ: "these very ones (whom we recognized)"

προσῆσαν καὶ ἡσπάζοντο ὥς ἂν καὶ συνήθεις ὑπάρχοντες, καὶ παραλαβόντες ἡμᾶς καὶ κατακοιμίσαντες πάνυ λαμπρῶς καὶ δεξιῶς ἐξένιζον, τὴν τε ἄλλην ὑποδοχὴν μεγαλοπρεπῇ παρασκευάσαντες καὶ ὑπισχνούμενοι βασιλέας τε ποιήσιν καὶ σατράπας. ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ ἀπήγον ἡμᾶς εἰς τὰς πατρίδας καὶ τοὺς οἰκείους ἐπεδείκνυν καὶ αὐθημερὸν ἐπανήγον. [35] ἡμέρας μὲν οὖν τριάκοντα καὶ ἴσας νύκτας παρ' αὐτοῖς ἐμείναμεν καθεύδοντες εὐωχούμενοι. ἔπειτα δὲ ἄφνω βροντῆς μεγάλης καταρραγείσης ἀνεγρόμενοι καὶ ἀναθορόντες ἀνήχθημεν ἐπισιτισάμενοι.

ἀνάγω: to lead up

ἀναθρώσκω: to spring forward

ἀνεγείρω: to wake up, rouse

ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off

ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet

αὐθήμερος, -ον: done on the very day

ἄφνω: suddenly, unawares

βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief

βροντή, ἡ: thunder

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right side, kind

ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some

ἐπανάγω: to bring up or back

ἐπιδείκνυμι: to exhibit

ἐπισιτίζομαι: to furnish oneself, supply

εὐωχέω: to feed well, feast

ἡμέρα, ἡ: a day

ἴσος, -η, -ον: the same

καθεύδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep

κατακοιμίζω: lull to sleep

καταρρήγνυμι: to break down

λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, brilliant, radiant

μεγαλοπρεπής, -ές: magnificent

νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ: night

ξενίζω: to receive or entertain guests

οἰκεῖος, -α, -ον: domestic

παραλαμβάνω: to take aside

παρασκευάζω: to get ready, prepare

πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ: the fatherland

σατράπης, -ου, ὁ: a satrap, viceroy

συνήθης, -ες: dwelling or living together

τριάκοντα: thirty

ὑπάρχω: to begin, already exist

ὑπισχνέομαι: to promise

ὑποδοχή, ἡ: a reception, entertainment

προσῆσαν: impf. of προσ-έρχομαι, "they approached"

ὥς ἂν καὶ συνήθεις ὑπάρχοντες: "as though being acquaintances"

παραλαβόντες: ao. part. of παραλαμβάνω, "having taken us aside"

κατακοιμίσαντες: ao. part. of κατα-κοιμίζω, "having lulled us to sleep"

ἐξένιζον: impf. of ξενίζω, "they entertained us"

τὴν τε ἄλλην ὑποδοχὴν: "every sort of entertainment"

ποιήσιν: fut. inf. with ὑπισχνούμενοι, "promising to make"

ἀπήγον, ἐπεδείκνυν: impf., "some took and showed us"

ἐπανήγον: impf. of ἐπι-ανα-ἄγω, "they brought us back"

ἐμείναμεν: ao. of μένω, "we stayed"

εὐωχούμενοι: pr. part. pas. of εὐωχέω, "being feasted"

βροντῆς καταρραγείσης: ao. part. gen. s. f. of κατα-ρήγνυμι, gen. abs., "thunder having cracked"

ἀναθορόντες: ao. part. of ἀναθρώσκω, "having sprung up"

ἀνήχθημεν: ao. pas. of ἀνα-ἄγω, "we put to sea"

ἐπισιτισάμενοι: ao. part. of ἐπι-σιτίζω, "having (first) laid in supplies"

Τριταῖοι δ' ἐκεῖθεν τῇ Ὠγυγίᾳ νήσω προσσχόντες
ἀπεβαίνομεν. πρότερον δ' ἐγὼ λύσας τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνεγίνωσκον
τὰ γεγραμμένα. ἦν δὲ τοιάδε·

«Ὀδυσσεὺς Καλυψοῖ χαίρειν.

Ἴσθι με, ὥς τὰ πρῶτα ἐξέπλευσα παρὰ σοῦ τὴν σχεδίαν
κατασκευασάμενος, ναυαγία χρησάμενον μόλις ὑπὸ
Λευκοθέας διασωθῆναι εἰς τὴν τῶν Φαιάκων χώραν, ὑφ'
ὧν ἐς τὴν οἰκίαν ἀποπεμφθεὶς κατέλαβον πολλοὺς τῆς
γυναικὸς μνηστήρας ἐν τοῖς ἡμετέροις τρυφώντας·

ἀναγινώσκω: to know well, read

ἀποβαίνω: to disembark

ἀποπέμπω: to send off or away, to dismiss

γυνή, -αῖκός, ἡ: a woman, wife

ἐκεῖθεν: from that place, thence

ἐκπλέω: to sail out, weigh anchor

ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a message, letter

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our

Καλυψώ, -οῦς, ἡ: Calypso

καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, lay hold of

κατασκευάζω: to equip or furnish fully

Λευκοθέα, ἡ: "the White Goddess"

λύω: to loose

μνηστήρ, -ῆρος, ὁ: a wooer, suitor

μόλις: scarcely

ναυαγία, ἡ: shipwreck

νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

οἰκίος, -α, -ον: in or of the house,
domestic

προσέχω: to touch on to (+ dat.)

σχεδία, ἡ: a raft, float

τριταῖος, -α, -ον: on the third day

τρυφάω: to live luxuriously

Φαίαξ, -ακος, ὁ: Phaeacian

χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, be delighted

χράομαι: to use (+ dat.)

χώρα, ἡ: a space, land

Ὠγύγιος, -α, -ον: Ogygian

They arrive in Ogygia, the island of Calypso (cf. Odyssey 5), where Odysseus' letter is delivered.

τριταῖοι: used with verbs so as to agree with the subject, "on the third day"

προσσχόντες: ao. part. of προσ-έχω, "having touched land on" + dat.

τὰ γεγραμμένα: perf. part. of γράφω, "what was written"

ἴσθι: imperative of οἶδα

ὥς τὰ πρῶτα: "as soon as I sailed away"

κατασκευασάμενος: perf. part. of κατα-σκευάζω, "having equipped"

ναυαγία χρησάμενον: "having suffered a shipwreck"

ὑπὸ Λευκοθέας: "by Leukothea," who saves Odysseus to shore in the Odyssey.

με...διασωθῆναι: ao. inf. of δια-σῶζω, in ind. st. after ἴσθι: "Know that I was saved..."

ὑφ' ὧν: gen. of agent, "by whom," i.e. the Phaeacians

ἀποπεμφθεὶς: ao. part. pas. of ἀπο-πέμπω, "having been sent home"

κατέλαβον: ao. of καταλαμβάνω, "I came upon"

τρυφώντας: pr. part. of τρυφάω, "living luxuriously"

ἀποκτείνας δὲ ἅπαντας ὑπὸ Τηλεγόνου ὕστερον τοῦ ἐκ Κίρκης μοι γενομένου ἀννρήθην, καὶ νῦν εἰμι ἐν τῇ Μακάρων νήσῳ πάνν μετὰνοῶν ἐπὶ τῷ καταλιπεῖν τὴν παρὰ σοὶ δίαίταν καὶ τὴν ὑπὸ σοῦ προτεινομένην ἀθανασίαν. ἦν οὖν καιροῦ λάβωμαι, ἀποδρὰς ἀφίξομαι πρὸς σέ.»

ταῦτα μὲν ἐδήλου ἡ ἐπιστολή, καὶ περὶ ἡμῶν, ὅπως ξενισθῶμεν. [36] ἐγὼ δὲ προελθὼν ὀλίγον ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης

ἀθανασία, ἡ: immortality

ἀναιρέω: to take up, slay

ἅπας: all, the whole

ἀποδιδράσκω: to run away or off, escape

ἀποκτείνω: to kill, slay

δηλώω: to make clear

δίαίτα, ἡ: a way of living, mode of life

ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a message

καιρός, ὁ: proper time

καταλείπω: to leave behind

Κίρκη, ἡ: Circe

μακάρος, -α, -ον: blessed

μετανοέω: to change one's mind

νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

ξενίζω: to receive as a guest

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little

προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance

προτείνω: to hold before, offer

ἀποκτείνας: ao. part. of ἀπο-κτείνω, "having killed"

ὑπὸ Τηλεγόνου: gen. of agent, "at the hands of Telegonus"

τοῦ (sc. υἱοῦ) ἐκ Κίρκης: T. was Odysseus' son by Circe, with whom Odysseus dallied for a year

ἀννρήθην: ao. pas. of ἀνα-αἰρέω, "I was killed"

μετὰνοῶν: pr. part. of μετα-νοέω, "regretting"

ἐπὶ τῷ καταλιπεῖν: articular inf., "about leaving"

ὑπὸ σοῦ: "by you"

προτεινομένην: pr. part. of προτείνω, "being offered," Calypso had promised Odysseus immortality if he stayed with her.

ἦν (= ἐὰν) λάβωμαι: ao. subj. of λαμβάνω in fut. more vivid cond., "if I get an opportunity"

ἀποδρὰς: ao. part. of ἀπο-διδράσκω, "having escaped"

ἀφίξομαι: fut. of ἀφικνέομαι, "I will arrive"

ἐδήλου: impf. 3 s. of δηλώω, "the letter made clear"

ὅπως ξενισθῶμεν: ao. pas. subj. of ξενίζω in a purpose clause after ἐδήλου, where we would expect the optative, "that we be entertained"

προελθὼν: ao. part. of προ-έρχομαι, "having proceeded"

εὔρον τὸ σπήλαιον τοιοῦτον οἶον Ὅμηρος εἶπεν, καὶ αὐτὴν
 ταλασιουργοῦσαν. ὥς δὲ τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἔλαβεν καὶ ἐπελέξατο,
 πρῶτα μὲν ἐπὶ πολὺν ἐδάκρυεν, ἔπειτα δὲ παρεκάλει ἡμᾶς ἐπὶ
 ξένια καὶ εἰστία λαμπρῶς καὶ περὶ τοῦ Ὀδυσσεύος ἐπυνθάνετο καὶ
 περὶ τῆς Πηνελόπης, ὅποια τε εἶη τὴν ὄψιν καὶ εἰ σωφρονοίη,
 καθάπερ Ὀδυσσεὺς πάλαι περὶ αὐτῆς ἐκόμπαζεν· καὶ ἡμεῖς
 τοιαῦτα ἀπεκρινάμεθα, ἐξ ὧν εἰκάζομεν εὐφρανεῖσθαι αὐτήν.

ἀποκρίνομαι: to answer
 δακρύω: to weep, shed tears
 εἰστία, ἡ: hearth, home
 ἐπιλέγω: to choose, read
 ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a message
 εὐφραίνω: to cheer, delight, gladden
 καθάπερ: just as
 κομπάζω: to boast
 λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, brilliant
 ξένια, τά: hospitality

οἶος, -α, -ον: such, of a kind
 ὅποιος: of what sort or quality
 ὄψις, -εως, ἡ: look, appearance, aspect
 πάλαι: long ago, in olden time
 παρακαλέω: to call to
 Πηνελόπεια, ἡ: Penelope
 πυνθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry, ask
 σπήλαιον, τό: a grotto, cave, cavern
 σωφρονέω: to be prudent
 ταλασιουργέω: to spin wool

εὔρον (= ἡδρον): ao. of εὕρισκω, "I found"
 τοιοῦτον οἶον Ὅμηρος εἶπεν: "just as Homer said"
 ταλασιουργοῦσαν: pr. part. acc. s. f. of ταλασιουργέω, "working wool"
 ὥς ἔλαβεν: ao. of λαμβάνω, "when she took and read..."
 ἐπελέξατο: ao. of ἐπιλέγω, "she read"
 παρεκάλει: impf. of παρα-καλέω, "she summoned"
 ὅποια τε εἶη καὶ εἰ σωφρονοίη: pr. optatives, ind. quest. after ἐπυνθάνετο, "what
 she was like and whether she was prudent"
 εὐφρανεῖσθαι: pr. inf. after εἰκάζομεν, "we supposed would please her"

Τότε μὲν οὖν ἀπελθόντες ἐπὶ ναῦν πλησίον ἐπὶ τῆς ἡόνος ἐκοιμήθημεν. [37] ἔωθεν δὲ ἀνηγόμεθα σφοδρότερον κατιόντος τοῦ πνεύματος· καὶ δὴ χειμασθέντες ἡμέρας δύο τῇ τρίτῃ περιπίπτομεν τοῖς Κολοκυνθοπειραταῖς. ἄνθρωποι δέ εἰσιν οὗτοι ἄγριοι ἐκ τῶν πλησίον νήσων ληστεύοντες τοὺς παραπλέοντας. τὰ πλοῖα δὲ ἔχουσι μεγάλα κολοκύνθινα τὸ μῆκος πήχεων ἐξήκοντα· ἐπειδὰν γὰρ ξηράνωσι τὴν κολοκύνθαν, κοιλάναντες αὐτὴν καὶ ἐξελόντες τὴν ἐντεριώνην ἐμπλέουσιν, ἱστοῖς μὲν χρώμενοι καλαμίνοις, ἀντὶ δὲ τῆς ὀθόνης τῷ φύλλῳ

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: fierce
ἀνάγω: to lead up, put to sea
ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
ἐμπλέω: to sail in
ἐντεριώνη, ἡ: innermost part
ἐξαιρέω: to take out of
ἐξήκοντα: sixty
ἐπειδάν: whenever (+ subj.)
ἔωθεν: from morning
ἡών, -όνος, ἡ: a shore, beach
ἱστός, ὁ: anything set upright, mast
καλάμιнос, -η, -ον: made of reed
κοιλαίνω: to make hollow, scoop out
κοιμάω: put to sleep
κολοκύνθη, -της, ἡ: a pumpkin

κολοκύνθινος, -η, -ον: made from pumpkins
ληστεύω: to be a robber or pirate
μῆκος, -εος, τό: length
ξηραίνω: to parch up, dry up
ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth
παραπλέω: to sail by or past
περιπίπτω: to fall in with (+ dat.)
πῆχυς, ὁ: a cubit
πλήσιος, -α, -ον: near, close to
πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing wind
σφοδρός, -ά, -όν: excessive, violent
τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third
φύλλον, τό: a leaf
χειμάζω: to toss with storms

Leaving Ogygia, they are attacked by pirates in pumpkin boats.

ἀπελθόντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-έρχομαι, “having departed”

ἐκοιμήθημεν: ao. pas. of κοιμάω, “we slept”

ἀνηγόμεθα: impf. of ἀνα-άγω, “we put to sea”

κατιόντος τοῦ πνεύματος: pr. part. of κατα-έρχομαι, gen. abs., “the wind rising”

καὶ δὴ χειμασθέντες: ao. part. of χειμάζω, “in fact, being storm-tossed”

ἡμέρας δύο τῇ τρίτῃ: acc. and dat. of time, “for two days and on the third”

Κολοκυνθοπειραταῖς: dat. pl., “Pumpkin pirates”

τοὺς παραπλέοντας: “those sailing by”

ἐπειδὰν ξηράνωσι: ao. subj. of ξηραίνω, indef. temp. clause, “whenever they dry out”

κοιλάναντες: ao. part. of κοιλαίνω, “having hollowed”

ἐξελόντες: ao. part. of ἐξ-αίρέω, “having removed”

καλαμίνοις, τῷ φύλλῳ: datives of means after χρώμενοι, “using reeds, using the leaf”

τῆς κολοκύνθης. προσβαλόντες οὖν ἡμῖν ἀπὸ δύο πληρωμάτων ἐμάχοντο καὶ πολλοὺς κατετραυματίζον βάλλοντες ἀντὶ λίθων τῷ σπέρματι τῶν κολοκυνθῶν. ἀγχωμάλως δὲ ἐπὶ πολὺ ναυμαχοῦντες περὶ μεσημβρίαν εἶδομεν κατόπιν τῶν Κολοκυνθοπειρατῶν προσπλέοντας τοὺς Καρνοναύτας. πολέμιοι δὲ ἦσαν ἀλλήλοις, ὥς ἔδειξαν· ἐπεὶ γὰρ κακείνοι ἤσθοντο αὐτοὺς ἐπιόντας, ἡμῶν μὲν ὀλιγώρησαν, τραπόμενοι δὲ ἐπ' ἐκείνους ἐναυμάχουν. [38] ἡμεῖς δὲ ἐν τοσούτῳ ἐπάραντες τὴν ὀθόνην ἐφεύγομεν ἀπολιπόντες αὐτοὺς μαχομένους, καὶ δῆλοι ἦσαν

ἀγχώματος, -ον: nearly equal, indecisive
αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, apprehend by the senses, to see, hear, feel
ἀντί: instead of (+ gen.)
ἀπολείπω: to leave over or behind
βάλλω: to throw
δείκνυμι: to bring to light, show, display
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear
ἐπαίρω: to lift up and set on
Καρνοναύτης, -ου, ὅ: Nut-sailor
κατετραυματίζω: to cover with wounds
κατόπιν: behind, after
κολοκύνθη, -της, ἡ: a pumpkin

μάχομαι: to fight
μεσημβρία, ἡ: mid-day, noon
ναυμαχέω: to fight in a ship or by sea
ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth
ὀλιγωρέω: to esteem little
πλήρωμα, -ατος, τό: a full measure, crew
πολέμιος, -α, -ον: military, relating to war
προσβάλλω: to strike or dash against (+ dat.)
προσπλέω: to sail towards or against
σπέρμα, -ατος, τό: seed
τρέπω: to turn or direct
φεύγω: to flee

προσβαλόντες: ao. part. of προσ-βάλλω, “having attacked” + dat.
πληρωμάτων: “from two groups,” (i.e., “crews”)
κατετραυματίζον: impf. of κατα-τραυματίζω, “they were wounding”
τῷ σπέρματι: dat. of means, “with the seed”
εἶδομεν: ao. of ὁράω, “we saw”
τοὺς Καρνοναύτας: “the Nut-sailors”
ὥς ἔδειξαν: “as they showed (by their actions)”
ἤσθοντο: ao. of αἰσθάνομαι, “they perceived”
αὐτοὺς ἐπιόντας: pr. part. of ἐπι-ἔρχομαι in ind. st. after ἤσθοντο, “that they were attacking”
ὀλιγώρησαν: ao. of ὀλιγωρίζω, “they ignored”
τραπόμενοι: ao. part. of τρέπω, “having turned away”
ἐν τοσούτῳ (sc. χρόνῳ): “in the meantime”
ἐπάραντες: ao. part. of ἐπι-αἶρω, “having hoisted”
ἀπολιπόντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-λείπω, “having left behind”
δῆλοι ἦσαν: “they were clear(ly)” + part.

κρατήσοντας οἱ Καρυοναῦται ἄτε καὶ πλείους - πέντε γὰρ εἶχον πληρώματα - καὶ ἀπὸ ἰσχυροτέρων νεῶν μαχόμενοι· τὰ γὰρ πλοῖα ἦν αὐτοῖς κελύφη καρύων ἡμίτομα, κεκενωμένα, μέγεθος δὲ ἐκάστου ἡμιτόμου εἰς μῆκος ὀργυιαὶ πεντεκαίδεκα.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπεκρύψαμεν αὐτούς, ἰώμεθα τοὺς τραυματίας, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὥς ἐπίπαν ἦμεν, αἰεὶ τινὰς ἐπιβουλὰς προσδεχόμενοι· οὐ μάτην. [39] οὕτω γοῦν ἐδεδύκει ὁ ἥλιος, καὶ ἀπὸ τινος ἐρήμου νήσου προσήλαυνον ἡμῖν ὅσον εἴκοσι ἄνδρες ἐπὶ δελφίνων μεγάλων ὀχούμενοι, λησταὶ καὶ οὗτοι· καὶ οἱ δελφίνες

αἰεὶ: always, for ever	λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
άνήρ, άνδρός ό: a man	μάτην: in vain, idly, fruitlessly
ἀποκρύπτω: to hide from	μέγεθος, -εος, τό: magnitude, size
γοῦν: at least then, at any rate	μῆκος, -εος, τό: length
δελφίς, -ίνος, ό: a dolphin	ναῦς, νεῶς, ή: a ship
δύω: sink into	νήσος, -ου, ή: an island
ἐπιβουλή, ή: a plan against, attack	ὄπλον, τό: a tool, implement
ἐπίπαν: altogether	ὀργυια, -ᾶς, ή: a fathom
ἐρήμος, -ον: deserted	οὕτω: not yet
ἥλιος, -ου, ό: the sun	ὀχέω: to uphold, sustain
ἡμίτομος, -ον: half cut through, cut in two	πεντεκαίδεκα: fifteen
ἰάομαι: to heal, cure	πλέον, -ονος: more numerous
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, mighty	πλήρωμα, -ατος, τό: a full measure, crew
κάρυον, τό: nut	πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
κελύφος, -εος, τό: pod, shell	προσδέχομαι: to receive, accept
κενόω: to empty out, drain	προσελαύνω: to drive toward
κρατέω: to be strong, defeat	τραυματίας, -ου, ό: a wounded man
ληστής, -οῦ, ό: a robber, plunderer	

κρατήσοντας: fut. part. of κρατέω after δῆλοι “about to defeat”

ἄτε + part.: providing the grounds for the supposition

ἄτε καὶ πλείους (sc. ὄντες)...καὶ μαχόμενοι: “because they were more numerous and were fighting”

κεκενωμένα: perf. part. of κενόω, “having been emptied out”

ἀπεκρύψαμεν: ao. of ἀπο-κρύπτω, “we had lost sight of them”

ἰώμεθα: impf. of ἰάομαι, “we cared for”

ὥς ἐπίπαν: “as much as possible”

προσδεχόμενοι: pr. part., “expecting”

ἐδεδύκει: plupl. of δύω, “had set”

προσήλαυνον: impf. of προσ-ελαύνω, “they drove toward us”

ὅσον εἴκοσι: “about twenty”

λησταὶ καὶ οὗτοι: “these were pirates too”

ὀχούμενοι: pr. part. pas., “being carried”

αὐτοὺς ἔφερον ἀσφαλῶς, καὶ ἀναπηδῶντες ἐχρεμέτιζον ὥσπερ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πλησίον ἦσαν, διαστάντες οἱ μὲν ἔνθεν, οἱ δὲ ἔνθεν ἔβαλλον ἡμᾶς σηπίαις ξηραῖς καὶ ὀφθαλμοῖς καρκίνων. τοξεύοντων δὲ ἡμῶν καὶ ἀκοντιζόντων οὐκέτι ὑπέμενον, ἀλλὰ τρωθέντες οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν πρὸς τὴν νῆσον κατέφυγον.

ἀκοντίζω: to hurl a javelin, spear
 ἀναπηδάω: to leap up, start up
 ἀσφαλής, -ές: steadfast, firm
 βάλλω: to throw
 διίστημι: to set apart, separate
 ἔνθεν: on the one side
 ἵππος, ὄ: a horse, mare
 καρκίνος, ὄ: a crab
 καταφεύγω: to flee for refuge

ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry
 ὀφθαλμός, ὄ: an eye
 πλήσιος, -α, -ον: near, close to
 σηπία, ἡ: a cuttle-fish
 τιτρώσκω: to wound
 τοξεύω: to shoot with the bow
 ὑπομένω: to stay behind, survive
 χρεμετίζω: to neigh, whinny

ἀναπηδῶντες: ao. part. of ἀνα-πηδάω, “having leapt up”
 διαστάντες: ao. part. intrans. of δια-ίστημι, “having divided themselves”
 ἔβαλλον: impf. “they were striking”
 σηπίαις ξηραῖς καὶ ὀφθαλμοῖς: dat. of means, “with dry cuttlefish and the eyes of crabs”
 τοξεύοντων δὲ ἡμῶν καὶ ἀκοντιζόντων: gen. abs., “when we started firing”
 τρωθέντες: ao. part. pas. of τιτρώσκω, “having been wounded”
 κατέφυγον: ao. of κατα-φεύγω, “they fled”

[40] Περὶ δὲ τὸ μεσονύκτιον γαλήνης οὔσης ἐλάθομεν προσοκείλαντες ἀλκύνος καλιᾷ παμμεγέθει· σταδίων γοῦν ἦν αὕτη ἐξήκοντα τὸ περίμετρον. ἐπέπλεεν δὲ ἡ ἀλκυὼν τὰ ὦα θάλπουσα οὐ πολὺ μείων τῆς καλιᾶς. καὶ δὴ ἀναπταμένη μικροῦ μὲν κατέδυσε τὴν ναῦν τῷ ἀνέμῳ τῶν πτερῶν. ὥχετο δ' οὖν φεύγουσα γοερὰν τινα φωνὴν προϊέμενη. ἐπιβάντες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἡμέρας ἤδη ὑποφαινούσης ἐθεώμεθα τὴν καλιὰν σχεδία μεγάλη

ἀλκυὼν, -όνος, ἡ: the kingfisher
ἀναπέτομαι: to fly up, fly away
ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
γαλήνη, ἡ: stillness of the sea, calm
γοερός, -ά, -όν: mournful, lamentable
γοῦν: at least then, at any rate, any way
ἐξήκοντα: sixty
ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon
ἐπιπλέω: to sail upon or over
ἡμέρα, ἡ: a day
θάλλω: to heat, soften by heat
θεάομαι: to look on, gaze at, view, behold
καλιᾷ, ἡ: a wooden dwelling, hut, nest
καταδύω: to sink
λανθάνω: to escape notice (+ part.)

μείων, μείον: less, smaller
μεσονύκτιος, -ον: of or at midnight
μικρός, -ά, -όν: small
οἶχομαι: to be gone
παμμεγέθης, -ες: enormous
περίμετρον, τό: the circumference
προίημι: to send forth
προσοκέλλω: to run on to (+ dat.)
πτερόν, τό: feathers
στάδιον, τό: a stade
σχεδία, ἡ: a raft, float
ὑποφαίνω: to become visible
φεύγω: to flee
φωνή, ἡ: a sound, tone
ὥόν, τό: an egg

They bump into the floating nest of an enormous halcyon.

γαλήνης οὔσης: gen abs., “there being a stillness of the sea”

ἐλάθομεν: ao. of λανθάνω

προσοκείλαντες: ao. part. of προσ-κέλλω, with ἐλάθομεν, “we didn’t notice we’d run aground on...” + dat.

καλιᾷ παμμεγέθει: “a huge nest”

ἐπέπλεεν (= ἐπέπλει): impf. of ἐπι-πλέω, “was sailing”

τῆς καλιᾶς: gen. of comparison after μείων, “smaller than the nest”

καὶ δὴ: “in fact”

ἀναπταμένη: ao. part. of ἀνα-πέτομαι, “rising in the air”

μικροῦ κατέδυσε: “almost sunk the ship,” lit. “by a little”

προϊέμενη: pr. part. of προ-ἵημι, “sending forth a cry”

ἐπιβάντες: ao. part. of ἐπι-βαίνω, “having gone ashore”

ἡμέρας ἤδη ὑποφαινούσης: gen. abs., “at day break”

προσεοικυῖαν ἐκ δένδρων μεγάλων συμπεφορημένην· ἐπὴν δὲ καὶ
ὥα πεντακόσια, ἕκαστον αὐτῶν Χίου πίθου περιπληθέστερον. ἤδη
μέντοι καὶ οἱ νεοττοὶ ἔνδοθεν ἐφαίνοντο καὶ ἔκρωζον. πελέκεσιν
γούν διακόψαντες ἐν τῶν ὥων νεοττὸν ἄπτερον ἐξεκολάψαμεν
εἴκοσι γυπῶν ἀδρότερον.

[41] Ἐπεὶ δὲ πλέοντες ἀπείχομεν τῆς καλιᾶς ὅσον σταδίου
διακοσίους, τέρατα ἡμῖν μεγάλα καὶ θαυμαστὰ ἐπεσήμανεν· ὃ τε
γὰρ ἐν τῇ πρύμνῃ χηνίσκος ἄφνω ἐπτερύξατο καὶ ἀνεβόησεν, καὶ

ἀδρός, -ά, -όν: thick
ἀναβοάω: to shout aloud, utter a loud cry
ἀπέχω: to keep off or be away from
ἄπτερος, -ον: without wings, unwinged
ἄφνω: suddenly, unawares
γούν: at least then, at any rate, any way
γύψ, ἡ: a vulture
δένδρον, τό: a tree
διακόπτω: to cut in two, cut through
διακοσίοι, -αι, -α: two hundred
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each
ἐκκολάπτω: to scrape out
ἐνδοθεν: from within
ἐπισημαίνω: to indicate, show
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wondrous, wonderful
καλιά, ἡ: a wooden dwelling, hut, nest
κρώζω: to cry like a crow, caw

νεοττός, οὐ, ὁ: a young bird, chick
ὅσον: about
πέλεκυς, -εως, ὁ: an axe
πεντακοσίοι, -αι: five hundred
περιπληθής, -ές: very full, very large
πίθος, ὁ: a wine-jar
πλέω: to sail, go by sea
προσέοικα: to be like, resemble (+ dat.)
πρύμνα, -ης, ἡ: the stern, poop
πτερύσσομαι: to clap the wings
συμφορέω: to gather, put together
τέρας, -εος, τό: a sign, wonder, marvel
φαίνομαι: to appear, become visible
χηνίσκος, ὁ: a ship's stern turned up like a
goose's neck
Χίος, -α, -ον: Chian, of or from Chios
ὥόν, τό: an egg

προσεοικυῖαν: perf. part. in ind. st. after ἐθεώμεθα, "...that it looked like" + dat.
συμπεφορημένην: perf. part. pas. of συμ-φορέω, modifying καλιάν, "having been
put together"
ἐπὴν: impf. of ἐπι-εἶμι, "there were"
περιπληθέστερον: "larger than" + gen. of comparison
πελέκεσιν: dat. of means, "with axes"
διακόψαντες: ao. part. of δια-κόπτω, "having cut open"
ἐξεκολάψαμεν: ao. of ἐκ-κολάπτω, "we hatched out"
ἀδρότερον: "thicker than" + gen.
ἀπείχομεν: impf. of ἀπο-ἔχω, "we were away from" + gen.
ἐπεσήμανεν: ao. 3 s. of ἐπι-σημαίνω, "were manifested"
χηνίσκος: lit. "gooseneck," the rounded-up end of the boat
ἐπτερύξατο: ao. of πτερύσσω, "sprouted feathers"
ἀνεβόησεν: ao. of ἀνα-βοάω, "cackled"

ὁ κυβερνήτης ὁ Σκίνθαρος φαλακρὸς ἤδη ὦν ἀνεκόμην, καὶ τὸ πάντων δὴ παραδοξότατον, ὁ γὰρ ἰστὸς τῆς νεῶς ἐξεβλάστησεν καὶ κλάδους ἀνέφυσεν καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ ἐκαρποφόρησεν, ὁ δὲ καρπὸς ἦν σῦκα καὶ σταφυλὴ μέλαινα, οὐπω πέπειρος. ταῦτα ἰδόντες ὥς εἰκὸς ἐταράχθημεν καὶ ἠυχόμεθα τοῖς θεοῖς διὰ τὸ ἀλλόκοτον τοῦ φαντάσματος. [42] οὐπω δὲ πεντακοσίους σταδίους διελθόντες εἶδομεν ὕλην μεγίστην καὶ λάσιον πιτύων καὶ κυπαρίττων. καὶ ἡμεῖς μὲν εἰκάσαμεν ἥπειρον εἶναι· τὸ δ' ἦν

ἄκρον, -ον, τό: the highest point

ἀνακομέω: to grow long hair

ἀλλόκοτος, -ον: strange, monstrous

ἀναφύω: to grow, produce

διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through

εἰκάζω: to make like, surmise

εἰκός: like truth, likely

ἐκβλαστάνω: to sprout out

εὔχομαι: to pray, offer prayers

ἥπειρος: terra-firma, the land

θεός, ὁ: a god

ἰστός, ὁ: anything set upright, mast

καρπός, ὁ: fruit

καρποφορέω: to bear fruit

κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a young shoot, branch

κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὁ: a steersman,

κυπάριττος, ἡ: a cypress

λάσιος, -ος, -ον: hairy, rough, shaggy, woolly

μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν: black

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship

παράδοξος, -ον: paradoxical, strange

πεντακοῖοι: five hundred

πέπειρος, -ον: ripe

πίτυς, -υος, ἡ: the pine, stone pine

σταφυλή, ἡ: a bunch of grapes

σῦκα, τό: a fig

ταράσσω: to stir, stir up trouble

ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

φαλακρός, -ά, -όν: bald

φάντασμα, -ατος, τό: a phantasm

ἀνεκόμην: ao. of ἀνα-κομέω, "grew long hair"

ἐξεβλάστησεν: ao. of ἐκ-βλαστάνω, "budded"

ἀνέφυσεν: ao. of ἀνα-φύω, "sprouted"

ἐκαρποφόρησεν: ao. of καρποφορέω, "bore fruit." This recalls a famous incident from the Homeric Hymn to Hermes.

ἰδόντες: ao. part. of ὁράω, "having seen"

ὥς εἰκός: "as you would expect"

ἐταράχθημεν: ao. pas. of ταραττω, "we were disturbed"

ἠυχόμεθα: impf. of εὔχομαι, "we prayed"

διελθόντες: ao. part. of δια-έρχομαι, "having gone on"

εἶδομεν: ao. of ὁράω, "we saw"

πιτύων καὶ κυπαρίττων: gen. pl. of description, "made of pine trees and cypresses"

εἰκάσαμεν ἥπειρον εἶναι: ind. st., "we surmised that it was a continent"

τὸ δ' ἦν: "but it was"

πέλαγος ἄβυσσον ἄρριζοις δένδροις καταπεφυτευμένον· εἰστήκει
 δὲ τὰ δένδρα ὁμως ἀκίνητα, ὀρθὰ καθάπερ ἐπιπλέοντα.
 πλησιάσαντες οὖν καὶ τὸ πᾶν κατανοήσαντες ἐν ἀπόρῳ εἰχόμεθα
 τί χρὴ δρᾶν· οὔτε γὰρ διὰ τῶν δένδρων πλεῖν δυνατὸν ἦν - πυκνὰ
 γὰρ καὶ προσεχῇ ὑπῆρχεν - οὔτε ἀναστρέφειν ἐδόκει ῥάδιον· ἐγὼ
 δὲ ἀνελθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ μέγιστον δένδρον ἀπεσκόπουν τὰ ἐπέκεινα
 ὅπως ἔχοι, καὶ ἐώρων ἐπὶ σταδίου μὲν πεντήκοντα ἢ ὀλίγω
 πλείους τὴν ὕλην οὔσαν, ἔπειτα δὲ αὐθις ἕτερον ὠκεανὸν
 ἐκδεχόμενον. καὶ δὴ ἐδόκει ἡμῖν ἀναθεμένους τὴν ναῦν ἐπὶ

ἄβυσσος, -ον: bottomless, abyss
 ἀκίνητος, -η, -ον: unmoved, motionless
 ἀναστρέφω: to turn upside down, upset
 ἀνατίθμι: to put up, lift up
 ἀνέρχομαι: to go up to, approach
 ἄπορος, -ον: without passage, without
 resource
 ἀποσκοπέω: to look out at
 ἄρριζος, -ον: without roots
 δένδρον, τό: a tree
 δράω: to do
 δυνατός, -ή, -όν: able, possible
 ἐκδέχομαι: to take from, come next
 ἐπέκεινα: on yonder side, beyond
 ἐπιπλέω: to sail upon or over
 ἵστημι: to make to stand

κατανοέω: to understand
 καταφυτεύω: to plant
 ναῦς, νεῶς, ἡ: a ship
 ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little
 ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight
 πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea
 πεντήκοντα: fifty
 πλείων, πλείον: more
 πλέω: to sail, go by sea
 πλησιάζω: to bring near
 προσεχής, -ές: next to (each other)
 πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, compact
 ῥάδιος, -η, -ον: easy
 ὕλη, ἡ: a forest
 ὑπάρχω: to begin, exist
 ὠκεανός, -οῦ, ὁ: ocean

καταπεφυτευμένον: perf. part. pas. of κατα-φυτεύω, “completely overgrown”
 εἰστήκει: plupf. of ἵστημι, “they stood up”
 πλησιάσαντες: ao. part. of πλησιάζω, “having drawn near”
 κατανοήσαντες: ao. part. of κατα-νοέω, “having realized”
 ἐν ἀπόρῳ εἰχόμεθα: “we were at a loss”
 τί χρὴ δρᾶν: ind. question, “what we should do”
 οὔτε πλεῖν δυνατὸν ἦν, οὔτε: “neither was it possible to sail, nor...”
 ἀνελθὼν: ao. part. of ἀνα-έρχομαι, “having climbed up”
 ἀπεσκόπουν: impf. of ἀπο-σκοπέω, “I looked around”
 ὅπως ἔχοι: pr. opt. in ind. quest. in sec. sequence, “how things were”
 ἐώρων: impf 1 s. of ὁράω, “I saw”
 τὴν ὕλην οὔσαν: ind. st. after ἐώρων, “that the forest was”
 ἐκδεχόμενον: pr. part. of ἐκ-δέχομαι, “coming next”
 ἀναθεμένους: ao. part. of ἀνα-τίθμι, modifying the acc. subject of ὑπερβιβάσαι,
 “having lifted”

τὴν κόμην τῶν δένδρων - πυκνὴ δὲ ἦν - ὑπερβιβάσαι, εἰ
 δυναίμεθα, εἰς τὴν θάλατταν τὴν ἑτέραν· καὶ οὕτως ἐποιούμεν.
 ἐκδήσαντες γὰρ αὐτὴν κάλῳ μεγάλῳ καὶ ἀνελθόντες ἐπὶ τὰ
 δένδρα μόλις ἀνιμησάμεθα, καὶ θέντες ἐπὶ τῶν κλάδων,
 πετάσαντες τὰ ἱστία καθάπερ ἐν θαλάττῃ ἐπλέομεν τοῦ ἀνέμου
 προωθούντος ἐπισυρόμενοι· ἔνθα δὴ καὶ τὸ Ἀντιμάχου τοῦ
 ποιητοῦ ἔπος ἐπεισῆλθέ με - φησὶν γάρ που κακείνος·

«Τοῖσιν δ' ὑλήεντα διὰ πλόον ἐρχομένοισιν.»

ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
 ἀνέρχομαι: to go up
 ἀνιμάω: to draw up
 δύναμαι: to be able
 ἐκδέω: to bind so as to hang from
 ἐπισύρω: to drag or trail after
 ἕτερος, -α, -ον: other
 θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea
 ἱστίον, τό: a sail
 κάλως, -ου, ὁ: a reefing rope
 κλάδος, -ου, ὁ: a young shoot, branch

κόμη, ἡ: the hair, hair of the head
 μόλις: scarcely
 πετάννυμι: to spread out
 πλόος, ὁ: a sailing, voyage
 ποιητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a maker, poet
 προωθέω: to push forward
 πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, compact
 τίθημι: to set, put, place
 ὑλῆεις, -εσσα, -εν: woody, wooded
 ὑπερβιβάζω: to carry over, transfer

ὑπερβιβάσαι: ao. inf. of ὑπερβιβάζω after ἐδόκει ἡμῖν, “to make our way”

εἰ δυναίμεθα: opt. in indef. past condition, “if we could”

ἐκδήσαντες: ao. part. of ἐκ-δέω, “have tied”

αὐτὴν: i.e. “the ship”

ἀνελθόντες: ao. part. of ἀνα-έρχομαι, “having climbed”

ἀνιμησάμεθα: ao. of ἀνιμάω, “we drew up”

θέντες: ao. part. of τίθημι, “having placed”

πετάσαντες: ao. part. of πετάννυμι, “have spread out”

τοῦ ἀνέμου προωθούντος: pr. part. of προ-ωθέω, gen abs., “with the wind pushing us”

ἐπισυρόμενοι: pr. part. pas., “being dragged”

Ἀντιμάχου: Antimachus of Colophon, fl. 400 BC, author of an epic on Thebes.

ἐπεισῆλθέ: ao. of ἐπι-εἰς-έρχομαι, “came to me”

γάρ που: “for somewhere”

τοῖσιν ἐρχομένοισιν: epic dat. pl., “to them going”

ὑλήεντα διὰ πλόον: “through a forest voyage”

[43] Βιασάμενοι δὲ ὅμως τὴν ὕλην ἀφικόμεθα ἐς τὸ ὕδωρ, καὶ πάλιν ὁμοίως καθέντες τὴν ναῦν ἐπλέομεν διὰ καθαροῦ καὶ διανγοῦς ὕδατος, ἄχρι δὲ ἐπέστημεν χάσματι μεγάλῳ ἐκ τοῦ ὕδατος διεστῶτος γεγεννημένῳ, καθάπερ ἐν τῇ γῇ πολλάκις ὀρώμεν ὑπὸ σεισμῶν γενόμενα διαχωρίσματα. ἡ μὲν οὖν ναῦς καθελόντων ἡμῶν τὰ ιστία οὐ ῥαδίως ἔστη παρ' ὀλίγον ἐλθοῦσα κατενεχθῆναι. ὑπερκύψαντες δὲ ἡμεῖς ἐωρώμεν βάθος ὅσον σταδίων χιλίων μάλα φοβερόν καὶ παράδοξον· εἰστήκει γὰρ τὸ ὕδωρ ὥσπερ μεμερισμένον· περιβλέποντες δὲ ὀρώμεν κατὰ δεξιὰ

ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive at

ἄχρι: until

βάθος, τό: a depth or height

βιάζω: to force

γῇ, γῆς, ἡ: earth

δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side

διανγής, -ές: transparent

διαχώρισμα, -ατος, τό: a cleft, division

διίστημι: to set apart, separate

ἐφίστημι: to set or place upon

ἵστημι: to make to stand

ιστίον, τό: a sail

καθαιρέω: to take down

καθαρός: clear of dirt, clean, spotless

καθίημι: to set down, let fall

καταφέρω: to bring down

μάλα: very, exceedingly

μερίζω: to divide, distribute

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little

ὅσον: about

πάλιν: back, backwards

παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical

περιβλέπω: to look around

πολλάκις: many times, often

ῥαδίως: easily

σεισμός, ὁ: a shaking, shock

ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

ὕλη, ἡ: a forest

ὑπερκύπτω: to stretch and peer over

φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful

χάσμα, -ατος, τό: chasm, gulf

χιλιοί, -αι: a thousand

βιασάμενοι: ao. part. of βιάζομαι, “having forced our way through”

ἀφικόμεθα: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, “we arrived”

καθέντες: ao. part. of κατα-ἵημι, “having set down”

ἐπέστημεν: ao. intrans. of ἐπι-ἵστημι, “until we stood upon” + dat.

γεγεννημένῳ: perf. part. of γίγνομαι, modifying χάσματι, “a chasm made by”

διεστῶτος: perf. part. gen. s. of δια-ἵστημι modifying ὕδατος “water dividing”

ὑπὸ σεισμῶν γενόμενα: ao. part. of γίγνομαι, “made by earthquakes”

καθελόντων ἡμῶν: ao. part. of κατα-αἰρέω, gen. abs., “while we took down”

οὐ ῥαδίως ἔστη: ao. intrans. of ἵστημι, “did not easily come to a stop”

παρ' ὀλίγον ἐλθοῦσα: ao. part. nom. s. f. of ἔρχομαι, “having come close”

κατενεχθῆναι: ao. pas. inf. of κατα-φέρω, “to being brought down”

ὑπερκύψαντες: ao. part. of ὑπερ-κύπτω, “having peered over”

ἐωρώμεν: impf. of ὁράω, “we saw”

εἰστήκει: plupf. of ἵστημι, “was standing”

μεμερισμένον: perf. part. of μερίζω, “cut in two”

οὐ πάνυ πόρρωθεν γέφυραν ἐπεζευγμένην ὕδατος συνάπτοντος τὰ
πελάγη κατὰ τὴν ἐπιφάνειαν, ἐκ τῆς ἐτέρας θαλάττης εἰς τὴν
ἐτέραν διαρρέοντος. προσελάσαντες οὖν ταῖς κώπαις κατ' ἐκεῖνον
παρεδράμομεν καὶ μετὰ πολλῆς ἀγωνίας ἐπεράσαμεν οὔποτε
προσδοκήσαντες.

[44] Ἐντεῦθεν ἡμᾶς ὑπεδέχετο πέλαγος προσηνὲς καὶ νῆσος
οὐ μεγάλη, εὐπρόσιτος, συνοικουμένη· ἐνέμοντο δὲ αὐτὴν
ἄνθρωποι ἄγριοι, Βουκέφαλοι, κέρατα ἔχοντες, οἶον παρ' ἡμῖν τὸν

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: savage
ἀγωνία, ἡ: a contest, struggle
βουκέφαλος, -ον: bull-headed
γέφυρα, ἡ: a dyke, dam, bridge
διαρρέω: to flow through
ἐντεῦθεν: hence or thence
ἐπιζεύγνυμι: to join, yoke
ἐπιρραίνω: to sprinkle upon or over
ἐπιφάνεια, τὰ: a surface
εὐπρόσιτος, -ον: easy of access
κέρας, τό: the horn of an animal
κώπη, ἡ: the handle of an oar

νέμω: to distribute, (mid.) to hold sway
νῆσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
οἶος, -α, -ον: such, of a kind
παρατρέχω: to run by or past
πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea
πόρρωθεν: from afar
προσδοκάω: to expect
προσελαύνω: to drive towards
προσηνής, -ές: soft, gentle, kindly
συνάπτω: to tie or bind together
συνοικέω: to dwell together
ὑποδέχομαι: to receive beneath

γέφυραν ἐπεζευγμένην: perf. part. mid. of ἐπι-ζεύγνυμι, "a bridge having yoked together"

ὕδατος: gen. of material, "(made) of water"

συνάπτοντος, διαρρέοντος: pr. part. gen. s. of συν-ἄπτω and δια-ρέω, modifying ὕδατος, "joining, flowing"

κατὰ τὴν ἐπιφάνειαν: "along the surface"

προσελάσαντες: ao. part. of προσ-ελαύνω, "having rowed forward"

παρεδράμομεν: ao. of παρα-τρέχω, "we ran into"

ἐπεράσαμεν: ao. of περάω, "we crossed"

οὔποτε προσδοκήσαντες: ao. of προσ-δοκέω, "not ever expecting (that we would)"

They come to the island of the Bullheads.

εὐπρόσιτος: from εὐ-πρόσ-ἔρχομαι "accessible"

Βουκέφαλοι: "Bull-heads"

οἶον: "just as"

Μινώταυρον ἀναπλάττουσιν. ἀποβάντες δὲ προήειμεν
 ὕδρευσόμενοι καὶ σιτία ληψόμενοι, εἴ ποθεν δυνηθείμεν· οὐκέτι
 γὰρ εἶχομεν. καὶ ὕδωρ μὲν αὐτοῦ πλησίον εὗρομεν, ἄλλο δὲ οὐδὲν
 ἐφαίνετο, πλὴν μυκηθμός πολλὺς οὐ πόρρωθεν ἤκουετο. δόξαντες
 οὖν ἀγέλην εἶναι βοῶν, κατ' ὀλίγον προχωροῦντες ἐπέστημεν τοῖς
 ἀνθρώποις. οἱ δὲ ἰδόντες ἡμᾶς ἐδίωκον, καὶ τρεῖς μὲν τῶν
 ἐταίρων λαμβάνουσιν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν
 κατεφεύγομεν. εἴτα μέντοι πάντες ὀπλίσάμενοι - οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει
 ἡμῖν ἀτιμωρήτους περιδεῖν τοὺς φίλους - ἐμπίπτομεν
 τοῖς Βουκεφάλοις τὰ κρέα τῶν ἀνηρημένων διαιρουμένοις·

ἀγέλη, ἡ: a herd

ἀναιρέω: to slay

ἀναπλάττω: to mold, imagine

ἀτιμωρήτος, -ον: unavenged

βουκέφαλος, -ον: bull-headed

βοῦς, ὁ: a cow

διώκω: to pursue

δύναμαι: to be able

εἴτα: then, next

ἐμπίπτω: fall upon

ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate

ἐφίστημι: to set or place upon

καταφεύγω: to flee for refuge

κρέας, τό: flesh, meat

λαμβάνω: to take, capture

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μυκηθμός, ὁ: a lowing, bellowing

ὀπλίζω: to make or get ready, to arm

περιεῖδον: to overlook

πλήν: other than, except

πόρρωθεν: from afar

προχωρέω: to go or come forward

σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions

ὕδρεύω: to draw, fetch or carry water

Μινώταυρος: Minotaur, the legendary half-bull and half-man, child of Pasiphae and Minos

ἀναπλάττουσιν: pr. of ἀνα-πλάττω, “they imagine”

ἀποβάντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-βαίνω, “upon landing”

προήειμεν: impf. of προ-ἔρχομαι, “we proceeded”

ὕδρευσόμενοι: fut. part. of ὕδρεύω, showing purpose, “in order to get water”

ληψόμενοι: fut. part. of λαμβάνω, showing purpose, “in order to take”

εἴ ποθεν δυνηθείμεν: ao. opt. in past general protasis, “if we could”

εὗρομεν (= ἡδρομεν): ao. of εὕρισκω, “we found”

πλήν: “although”

ἀγέλην εἶναι: ind. st. after δόξαντες, “that it was a herd”

προχωροῦντες: pr. part. of προ-χωρέω, “approaching”

ἐπέστημεν: ao. trans. of ἐπι-ἵστημι, “we came upon” + dat.

ἰδόντες: ao. part. of ὁράω, “having seen us”

ὀπλίσάμενοι: ao. part. of ὀπλίζω, “having armed ourselves”

περιδεῖν: ao. inf. of περι-ὁράω after ἐδόκει, “to overlook”

τῶν ἀνηρημένων: perf. part. of ἀνα-αἰρέω, “of the slain”

διαιρουμένοις: pr. part. of δια-αἰρέω, “we fell upon them dividing up”

φοβήσαντες δὲ πάντας διώκομεν, καὶ κτείνομέν γε ὅσον πεντήκοντα καὶ ζῶντας αὐτῶν δύο λαμβάνομεν, καὶ αὐθις ὀπίσω ἀναστρέφομεν τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ἔχοντες. σιτίον μέντοι οὐδὲν εὔρομεν. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι παρήνουν ἀποσφάττειν τοὺς εἰλημμένους, ἐγὼ δὲ οὐκ ἐδοκίμαζον, ἀλλὰ δήσας ἐφύλαττον αὐτούς, ἄχρι δὴ ἀφίκοντο παρὰ τῶν Βουκεφάλων πρέσβεις ἀπαιτοῦντες ἐπὶ λύτροις τοὺς συνειλημμένους· συνέμεν γὰρ αὐτῶν διανευόντων καὶ γοερὸν τι μυκωμένων ὥσπερ ἰκετευόντων. τὰ λύτρα δὲ ἦν τυροὶ πολλοὶ καὶ ἰχθύες ξηροὶ καὶ κρόμμυα καὶ ἔλαφοι τέτταρες, τρεῖς ἐκάστη πόδας ἔχουσα, δύο μὲν τοὺς

αἰχμάλωτος, -ον: captive
ἀναστρέφω: to turn back
ἀπαιτέω: to demand back, demand
ἀποσφάττω: to cut the throat of
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
ἄχρι: until
γοερὸς, -ά, -όν: mournful, lamentable
δέω: to bind
διανεύω: to nod, beckon
διώκω: to pursue
δοκιμάζω: to approve
ἔλαφος, ἡ: a deer
εὕρισκω: to find
ζάω: to live
ἰκετεύω: to approach as a suppliant
ἰχθύς, -ύς, ὅ: a fish
κρόμμυον, -ου, τό: onion

κτείνω: to kill, slay
λαμβάνω: to take, capture
λύτρον, τό: a price paid
μυκάομαι: to grate, creak
ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry
ὀπίσω: backwards
παραινέω: to exhort, advise (+ inf.)
πεντήκοντα: fifty
πούς, ποδός, ὅ: a foot
πρέσβυς, -εως, ὅ: an old man, ambassador
σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions
συνίημι: to bring together, understand
τέτταρες: four
τυρός, ὅ: cheese
φοβέω: to put to flight
φυλάττω: to guard

φοβήσαντες: ao. part. of φοβέομαι, “having put to flight”
παρήνουν: impf. of παρα-αἰνέω, “some were advising” + inf.
τοὺς εἰλημμένους: perf. part. pas. of αἰρέω, “those captured”
ἀφίκοντο: ao. of ἀφικνέομαι, “they arrived”
συνειλημμένους: perf. part. pas. of συν-αἰρέω, “those captured”
συνέμεν: pr. of συν-ἵημι, “we understood”
διανευόντων καὶ μυκωμένων: genitives with συνέμεν, “them nodding and mooing”
ἐκάστη (sc. ἔλαφος), “each deer having...”

ὀπισθεν, οἱ δὲ πρόσω συμπεφύκεσαν. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἀποδόντες τοὺς συνειλημμένους καὶ μίαν ἡμέραν ἐπιμείναντες ἀνήχθημεν.

[45] Ἦδη δὲ ἰχθύες τε ἡμῖν ἐφαίνοντο καὶ ὄρνεα παρεπέτετο καὶ ἄλλ' ὅποσα γῆς πλησίον οὔσης σημεῖα προφαίνεται. μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ καὶ ἄνδρας εἶδομεν καινῷ τῷ τρόπῳ ναυτιλίας χρωμένους· αὐτοὶ γὰρ καὶ ναῦται καὶ νῆες ἦσαν. λέξω δὲ τοῦ πλοῦ τὸν τρόπον· ὕπτιοι κείμενοι ἐπὶ τοῦ ὕδατος ὀρθώσαντες τὰ αἰδοῖα - μεγάλα δὲ φέρουσιν - ἐξ αὐτῶν ὀθόνην πετάσαντες καὶ ταῖς χερσὶν τοὺς ποδεῶνας κατέχοντες ἐμπίπτοντος τοῦ ἀνέμου

αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals
ἀνάγω: to lead up (to the sea)
ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
ἀποδίδωμι: to give up, hand over
ἐμπίπτω: fall upon
ἐπιμένω: to stay on, remain
ἰχθῦς, -ύς, ὁ: a fish
καινός, -ή, -όν: new, fresh
κατέχω: to hold fast
κείμαι: to lie, be laid
ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship
ναύτης, -ου, ὁ: a sailor, shipmate
ναυτιλία, ἡ: sailing, seamanship
ὀθόνη, ἡ: a sail, sail-cloth
οἶδα: to know
ὀπισθεν: behind, at the back
ὁπόσος: as many as, whatever

ὀρθόω: to set straight
ὄρνεον, τό: a bird
παραπέτομαι: to fly alongside
πετάννυμι: to spread out
πλόος, ὁ: a sailing, voyage
ποδεῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: the loose ends, corners
πρόσω: forwards, onwards, further
προφαίνω: to bring to light, appear
σημεῖον, τό: a sign, a mark, token
συλλαμβάνω: to collect, capture
συμφύω: to make to grow together
τρόπος, ὁ: a course, manner
ὑδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
ὑπτιος, -α, -ον: prone
φαίνομαι: to appear, become visible
χείρ, χειρός, ἡ: a hand

οἱ δὲ (sc. πόδες) πρόσω: "the front two"
συμπεφύκεσαν: perf. of συμ-φύω, "had grown together"
ἐπὶ τούτοις: "in exchange for these things"
ἀποδόντες: ao. part. of ἀπο-δίδωμι, "having handed over"
τοὺς συνειλημμένους: pf. part. of συλλαμβάνω, "the ones captured"
ἀνήχθημεν: ao. pas. of ἀνα-ἄγω, "we departed"
παραπέτετο: impf. of παρα-πέτομαι, "were flying alongside"
γῆς πλησίον οὔσης: "signs of land being near"
εἶδομεν: ao. of ὁράω, "we saw"
καινῷ τῷ τρόπῳ: dat. of means after χρωμένους, "using a new mode"
ὀρθώσαντες: ao. part. of ὀρθόω, "having made erect their genitals"
πετάσαντες: ao. part. of πετάννυμι, "having spread sail on them"
ποδεῶνας κατέχοντες: "holding the corners"
ἐμπίπτοντος τοῦ ἀνέμου: gen abs., "when the wind falls on them"

ἔπλεον. ἄλλοι δὲ μετὰ τούτους ἐπὶ φελλῶν καθήμενοι ζεύξαντες δύο δελφίνας ἡλαυνόν τε καὶ ἡνιόχουν· οἱ δὲ προϊόντες ἐπεσύροντο τοὺς φελλούς. οὗτοι ἡμᾶς οὔτε ἡδίκουν οὔτε ἔφευγον, ἀλλ' ἡλαυνον ἀδεῶς τε καὶ εἰρηνικῶς τὸ εἶδος τοῦ ἡμετέρου πλοίου θαυμάζοντες καὶ πάντοθεν περισκοποῦντες.

[46] Ἑσπέρας δὲ ἤδη προσήχθημεν νήσῳ οὐ μεγάλη· κατωκείτο δὲ ὑπὸ γυναικῶν, ὥς ἐνομίζομεν, Ἑλλάδα φωνὴν προϊεμένων· προσήεσαν γὰρ καὶ ἐδεξιούντο καὶ ἡσπάζοντο, πάνν

ἀδεής, -ές: without fear, fearless
ἀδικέω: to do wrong, harm
ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome, greet
γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman
δελφίς, -ίνος, ὁ: a dolphin
δεξιόομαι: welcome, greet
εἶδος, -εος, τό: a form
εἰρηνικός, -ή, -όν: of peaceful
ἐλαύνω: to set in motion
Ἑλλάς, ἄδος: Greek
ἐπισύρω: to drag or trail after
ἑσπέρα, ἡ: evening
ζεύγνυμι: to yoke, put to
ἡνιοχέω: to hold the reins

θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel
κάθημαι: to be seated
κατοικέω: to dwell in, colonize
νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island
νομίζω: to think, believe
πάντοθεν: from every side
περισκοπέω: to look round, inspect
πλέω: to sail
πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
προΐημι: to send forward
προσάγω: to bring to or upon (+ dat.)
φελλός, ὁ: the cork-tree
φεύγω: to flee
φωνή, ἡ: a sound, voice

μετὰ τούτους: “behind these”

καθήμενοι: pr. part. of κατα-ἡμαι, “seated on corks”

ζεύξαντες: ao. part. of ζεύγνυμι, “having yoked”

ἡλαυνόν: impf. of ἐλαύνω, “they were driving”

ἡνιόχουν: impf. of ἡνιοχέω, “they were guiding with reins”

προϊόντες: pr. part. of προ-έρχομαι, “going forward”

ἐπεσύροντο: impf. of ἐπι-σύρω, “they (the dolphins) were dragging along”

ἡδίκουν: impf. of ἀδικέω, “they were not harming”

ἀδεῶς τε καὶ εἰρηνικῶς: “pleasantly and peacefully”

They encounter beautiful women who are more dangerous than they seem.

προσήχθημεν: ao. pas. of προσ-ἄγω, “we made landing on” + dat.

κατωκείτο: impf. pas. of κατοικέω, “it was inhabited”

ὥς ἐνομίζομεν: “or so we thought”

φωνὴν προϊεμένων: pr. part. of προ-ἵημι, modifying γυναικῶν, “speaking language”

προσήεσαν: impf. of προσ-έρχομαι, “they approached”

ἔταιρικῶς κεκοσμημέναι καὶ καλαὶ πᾶσαι καὶ νεάνιδες, ποδήρεις
 τοὺς χιτῶνας ἐπισυρόμεναι. ἡ μὲν οὖν νῆσος ἐκαλεῖτο
 Κοβαλοῦσα, ἡ δὲ πόλις αὐτῇ Ὑδαμαργία. λαβοῦσαι δ' οὖν ἡμᾶς αἱ
 γυναικες ἐκάστη πρὸς ἑαυτὴν ἀπῆγεν καὶ ξένον ἐποιεῖτο. ἐγὼ δὲ
 μικρὸν ἀποστὰς - οὐ γὰρ χρηστὰ ἐμαντευόμην - ἀκριβέστερόν τε
 περιβλέπων ὁρῶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων ὅστᾳ καὶ κρανία κείμενα. καὶ
 τὸ μὲν βοὴν ἰστάναι καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους συγκαλεῖν καὶ ἐς τὰ ὅπλα
 χωρεῖν οὐκ ἐδοκίμαζον. προχειρισάμενος δὲ τὴν μαλάχην πολλὰ

ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise

ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off

ἀφίστημι: to put away, stand apart

βοή, ἡ: a loud cry, shout

δοκιμάζω: to assay or approve

ἐπισύρω: to drag or trail after

ἔταιρικός, -ή, -όν: befitting a courtesan

ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate

ἴστημι: to make to stand

καλέω: to call, summon

κείμεαι: to be laid, lie

κοσμέω: to order, adorn

κρανίον, τό: the skull, crown

μαλάχη, ἡ: mallow

μαντεύομαι: to divine, presage

μικρός, -ά, -όν: small

νεάνις, -ιδος, ἡ: a maiden

ξένος, ὁ: a foreigner, guest

ὄπλον, τό: a tool, weapon

ὀστέον, τό: a bone

περιβλέπω: to look around

ποδήρης, -ες: reaching to the feet

προχειρίζω: to have ready at hand

συγκαλέω: to convoke, convene

χιτῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: a tunic

χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful, good of its kind

χωρέω: to withdraw

κεκοσμημέναι: perf. part. pas. of κοσμέω, "having been adorned"

ἐπισυρόμεναι: pr. part. of ἐπι-σύρω, "dragging"

Κοβαλοῦσα: "Knavery"

Ὑδαμαρδία: "Water-town"

λαβοῦσαι: ao. part. nom. pl. f. of λαμβάνω, "having taken"

ξένον ἐποιεῖτο: "made him her guest"

ἀποστὰς: ao. part. intrans. of ἀπο-ἴστημι, "standing apart"

ὅστᾳ καὶ κρανία κείμενα: "bones and skulls lying there"

καὶ τὸ ἰστάναι καὶ (sc. τὸ) συγκαλεῖν καὶ (sc. τὸ) χωρεῖν: articular infinitives
 objects of ἐδοκίμαζον, "I didn't think *these actions* a good idea"

ἰστάναι: pr. inf. of ἴστημι, "to make a shout"

προχειρισάμενος: ao. part. of προ-χειρίζω, "taking in my hand (χειρ)." The
 mallow plant he received from Rhadamanthys recalls the moly given Odysseus by
 Hermes when he faces Circe.

ἡὺχόμεν αὐτῇ διαφυγεῖν ἐκ τῶν παρόντων κακῶν: μετ' ὀλίγον δὲ τῆς ξένης διακονουμένης εἶδον τὰ σκέλη οὐ γυναικός, ἀλλ' ὄνου ὀπλάς: καὶ δὴ σπασάμενος τὸ ξίφος συλλαμβάνω τε αὐτὴν καὶ δῆσας περὶ τῶν ὄλων ἀνέκρινον. ἡ δέ, ἄκουσα μὲν, εἶπεν δὲ ὅμως, αὐτὰς μὲν εἶναι θαλαττίους γυναικάς Ὀνοσκελέας προσαγορευόμενας, τροφήν δὲ ποιεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐπιδημοῦντας ξένους. «ἐπειδὴν γάρ,» ἔφη, «μεθύσωμεν αὐτούς, συνευνηθεῖσαι

ἀέκων, -ουσα, -ον: against one's will

ἀνακρίνω: to question, interrogate

γυνή, -αικός, ἡ: a woman

δέω: to bind

διακονέω: to minister, serve, do service

διαφεύγω: to flee through, escape

ἐπιδημέω: to visit

εὐχομαι: to pray (+ inf.)

θαλάττιος, -α, -ον: of or from the sea

κακός, -ή, -όν: bad

μεθύσκω: to make drunk, intoxicate

ξένη, ἡ: a female guest, hostess

ξένος, ὁ: a foreigner, stranger

ξίφος, -εος, τό: a sword

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete

ὅμως: all the same, nevertheless

ὄνος, ὁ: an ass

ὀπλή, ἡ: a hoof

προσαγορεύω: to address, greet, name

σκέλος, -εος, τό: the leg

σπάω: to draw

συλλαμβάνω: to collect, capture

συνευνόμαι: go to bed

τροφή, ἡ: nourishment, food, victuals

τῆς ξένης διακονουμένης: gen. abs., "as my hostess was serving me"

εἶδον: aor. of ὁράω, "I saw"

ὄνου ὀπλάς: "hooves of an ass"

σπασάμενος: aor. part. of σπάω, "having drawn"

δῆσας: aor. part. of δέω, "having bound her"

ἀνέκρινον: impf. of ἀνα-κρίνω, "I began questioning"

ἄκουσα (= α-έκοῦσα): "unwilling"

αὐτὰς μὲν εἶναι, τροφήν δὲ ποιεῖσθαι: ind. st. after εἶπεν, "that they were... that they made"

ἐπειδὴν...μεθύσωμεν: aor. subj. in indef. temp. clause, "whenever we make them drunk"

συνευνηθεῖσαι: aor. part. pas. nom. pl. of συν-ευνέω, "having gone to bed"

κοιμωμένοις ἐπιχειροῦμεν.» ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ἐκείνην μὲν αὐτοῦ κατέλιπον δεδεμένην, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀνελθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ τέγος ἐβόων τε καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους συνεκάλουν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, τὰ πάντα ἐμήνουν αὐτοῖς καὶ τά γε ὅστ᾽ ἐδείκνυν καὶ ἦγον ἔσω πρὸς τὴν δεδεμένην· ἡ δὲ αὐτίκα ὕδωρ ἐγένετο καὶ ἀφανὴς ἦν. ὅμως δὲ τὸ ξίφος εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ καθῆκα πειρώμενος· τὸ δὲ αἷμα ἐγένετο.

ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
 αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood
 ἀκούω: to hear
 ἀνέρχομαι: to go up
 ἀφανής, -ές: unseen, invisible, viewless
 βοάω: to yell, shout
 δείκνυμι: to bring to light, show, exhibit
 δέω: to bind
 ἐπιχειρέω: to put one's hand on, kill
 ἔσω: to the interior
 ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate

καθίημι: to send down, thrust
 καταλείπω: to leave behind
 κοιμάω: to lull to sleep, put to sleep
 μηνύω: to reveal, betray
 ξίφος, -εος, τό: a sword
 ὀστέον, τό: a bone
 πειράω: to attempt, endeavor, try
 συγκαλέω: to convoke, convene
 συνέρχομαι: to come together
 τέγος, -εος, τό: a roof
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water

κοιμωμένοις: "while they are in bed"
 ἐκείνην...δεδεμένην: perf. part. pas. of δέω, "her having been bound"
 κατέλιπον: ao. of κατα-λείπω, "I left behind"
 ἀνελθὼν: ao. part. of ἀνα-έρχομαι, "I myself having gone up"
 ἐγένετο: ao. of γίνομαι, "she became water"
 καθῆκα: ao. of κατα-ῖημι, "I thrust my sword"
 πειρώμενος: pr. part., "testing it"

[47] Ταχέως οὖν ἐπὶ ναῦν κατελθόντες ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἡμέρα ὑπηύγαξε, τὴν τε ἡπειρον ἀπεβλέπομεν εἰκάζομέν τε εἶναι τὴν ἀντιπέρας τῇ ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἰκουμένην κειμένην. προσκυνήσαντες δ' οὖν καὶ προσευξάμενοι περὶ τῶν μελλόντων ἐσκοποῦμεν, καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει ἐπιβᾶσιν μόνον αὐθις ὀπίσω ἀναστρέφειν, τοῖς δὲ τὸ μὲν πλοῖον αὐτοῦ καταλιπεῖν, ἀνελθόντας δὲ ἐς τὴν μεσόγαιαν πειραθῆναι τῶν ἐνοικούντων. ἐν ὧσφ δὲ ταῦτα ἐλογιζόμεθα, χειμῶν σφοδρὸς ἐπιπεσὼν καὶ προσαράξας

ἀναστρέφω: to turn back
 ἀνέρχομαι: to go up
 ἀντιπέρας: on the other side (+ dat.)
 ἀποβλέπω: to look away from
 ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off
 εἰκάζω: to surmise, suppose
 ἐνοικέω: to dwell in
 ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon
 ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon or over
 ἡμέρα, ἡ: a day
 ἡπειρος: terra-firma, the land
 καταλείπω: leave behind
 κατέρχομαι: to go down from
 κείμεναι: to be laid
 λογίζομαι: to count, reckon, calculate

μεσόγαιος, -ον: interior, inland
 οἰκεῖν: to inhabit
 ὀπίσω: backwards
 ὅσος, -η, -ον: how much
 πειράω: to attempt, endeavor, try (+ inf.)
 πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
 προσαράσσω: to dash against
 προσεύχομαι: to offer prayers or vows
 προσκυνέω: to make obeisance
 σκοπέω: to look at or after
 σφοδρός, -ά, -όν: excessive, violent
 ταχέως: quickly
 ὑπαυγάζω: to augment, increase
 χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ό: a storm

They reach a continent on the opposite side of the ocean and are shipwrecked there.

κατελθόντες: ao. part. of κατα-ἔρχομαι, “having gone back to the ship”
 ὑπηύγαξε: impf. of ὑπο-αυγάζω, “was increasing”
 εἰκάζομέν τε εἶναι: “and we surmised (τὴν ἡπειρον) to be...”
 τὴν ἀντιπέρας... κειμένην: “the one lying opposite to”
 περὶ τῶν μελλόντων: “about the future”
 τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει...τοῖς δὲ: “to some it seemed...to others”
 ἐπιβᾶσιν: ao. part. dat. pl. of ἐπι-βαίνω, “for us once we had landed”
 ἀναστρέφειν, καταλιπεῖν, πειραθῆναι: infinitives after ἐδόκει
 ἀνελθόντας; ao. part. modifying the acc. subj. of πειραθῆναι (ao. inf. pas.), “having approached to investigate”
 ἐν ὧσφ: “in the length” (of time)
 ἐπιπεσὼν: ao. part. of ἐπι-πίπτω, “having fallen upon us”
 προσαράξας: ao. part. of προσ-αράσσω, “having dashed against”

τὸ σκάφος τῷ αἰγιαλῷ διέλυσεν. ἡμεῖς δὲ μόλις ἐξενηξάμεθα τὰ ὄπλα ἕκαστος καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο οἶός τε ἦν ἀρπασάμενοι.

Ταῦτα μὲν οὖν τὰ μέχρι τῆς ἐτέρας γῆς συνενεχθέντα μοι ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ καὶ παρὰ τὸν πλοῦν ἐν ταῖς νήσοις καὶ ἐν τῷ ἁέρι καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐν τῷ κήτει καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐξήλθομεν, παρὰ τε τοῖς ἥρωσι καὶ τοῖς ὄνείροις καὶ τὰ τελευταῖα παρὰ τοῖς Βουκεφάλοις καὶ ταῖς Ὀνοσκελεύαις, τὰ δὲ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς ἐν ταῖς ἐξῆς βίβλοις διηγῆσομαι.

ἀήρ, ἀέρος, ὁ: the air

αἰγιαλός, ὁ: the sea-shore, beach, strand

ἀρπάζω: to snatch away, carry off

βίβλος, ἡ: a book

βουκέφαλος, -ον: bull-headed

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth

διαλύω: to separate, break apart

διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, narrate

ἐκνήχομαι: to swim out (of the sea)

ἐξέρχομαι: to go out

ἐξῆς: one after another, in order, next

ἥρως, ὁ: a hero, warrior

κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale

μέχρι: up to (+ gen.)

μόλις: scarcely

νήσος, -ου, ἡ: an island

οἶος, -α, -ον: such, of a kind

ὄνειρος, -ου, ὁ: a dream

ὄπλον, τό: a tool, weapon

πλόος, ὁ: a sailing, voyage

σκάφος, -εος, τό: (the hull of) a ship

συμφέρω: to bring together, suffer

τελευταῖος, -α, -ον: last

ἐξενηξάμεθα: ao. of ἐκ-νήχομαι, “we swam out”

καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο οἶός τε ἦν: “and if anything else was possible”

ἀρπασάμενοι: ao. part. of ἀρπάζω, “each one having grabbed”

τὰ συνενεχθέντα: ao. part. pas. of συν-φέρω, “the things having been suffered”

ἐξήλθομεν: ao. of ἐξ-έρχομαι, “after we got out of the whale”

τὰ τελευταῖα: “the last things”

ἐν ταῖς ἐξῆς βίβλοις: “in the next volumes”

διηγῆσομαι: fut. of δια-ηγέομαι, “I will narrate”

List of Verbs

A True Story

The following is a list of verbs that have some irregularity in their conjugation. The principal parts of the Greek verb in order are 1. Present 2. Future 3. Aorist 4. Perfect Active 5. Perfect Middle 6. Aorist Passive, 7. Future Passive. I have not included the future passive below, since it is very rare in *A True Story*. For many verbs not all forms are attested or are only poetic. Verbs are alphabetized under their main stem, followed by various compounds that occur in *A True Story* with a brief definition. A dash (-) before a form means that it occurs only or chiefly with a prefix. The list is based on the list of verbs in H. Smythe, *A Greek Grammar*.

ἀγγέλλω: to bear a message **ἀγγελῶ, ἡγγειλα, ἡγγεлка, ἡγγελμαι, ἡγγέλθην**
παραγγέλλω: to transmit as a message

ἄγω: to lead **ἄξω, 2 aor. ἡγαγον, ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἦχθην**
ἀνάγω: to lead up
ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off
διάγω: to pass time
ἐξάγω: to lead out
ἐπανάγω: to bring up or back
κατάγω: to lead down to shore
προσάγω: to bring to or upon
συνάγω: to bring together

ᾄδω: to sing **ᾄσομαι, ᾄσα, ᾄσμαι, ᾄσθην**
ἐπᾄδω: to sing to or in accompaniment
συνᾄδω: to sing with or together

αἰρέω: to take **αἰρήσω, 2 aor. εἶλον, ἦρηκα, ἦρημαι, ἦρέθην**
διαίρέω: to divide into parts
ἐξαιρέω: to take out
καθαιρέω: to take down
προαίρέω: to choose

αἶρω: to lift **ἄρῶ, ἦρα, ἦρκα, ἦρμαι, ἦρθην**
ἐπαίρω: to lift up and set on

αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive **αἰσθήσομαι, 2 aor. ἦσθόμην, ἦσθην**

αἰσχύνω: to disgrace, (mid.) be ashamed **αἰσχυνῶ, ἦσχυνα, ἦσχύνθην**

ἀκούω: to hear **ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, 2 perf. ἀκήκοα, 2 plup. ἤκηκόη or ἀκηκόη, ἠκούσθην**
ὑπακούω: to listen, attend to

ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken **ἁλώσομαι, 2 aor. ἔαλων, ἔαλωκα**

ἀλλάσσω: to change **ἁλλάξω, ἥλλαξα, -ήλλαχα, ἥλλαγμαι, ἥλλάχθην or ἥλλάγην**
διαλλάσσω: to forgive

ἀμείβω: to change **ἀμείψω, ἤμειψα**
παραμείβω: to pass by

ἀνάσσω: to rule **ἀνάξω, ἄναξα**

ἀνύω: to effect **ἀνύσω, ἤνυσσα, ἤνυκα**

Lucian

ἀπαντάω: to go forth to meet **ἀπ-αντήσομαι, ἀπ-ήντησα, ἀπ-ήντηκα**

ἄπτω: to fasten **ἄψω, ἤψα, ἤμμαι, ἤφθην**

ἐξάπτω: to fasten from

συνάπτω: to tie or bind together, to join together, unite

ἄπτομαι: to touch

ἀραρίσκω: to fasten **ἤρσα, 2 aor. ἤραρον, 2 perf. ἄραρα, ἤρθην**

ἀράσσω: to strike **-αράξω, -ήραξα, -ηράχθην**

προσαράσσω: to dash against

συναράσσω: to dash together, dash in pieces

ἀρπάζω: to snatch away **ἀρπάσομαι, ἤρπασα, ἤρπακα, ἤρπασμαι, ἤρπάσθην**

ἀρχω: to be first, begin **ἄρξω, ἤρξα, ἤργμαι, ἤρχθην**

ἐξάρχω: to begin with, make a beginning of

κατάρχω: to make beginning of

ὑπάρχω: to begin, make a beginning

αὐξάνω: to increase **αὔξω, ηὔξησα, ηὔξηκα, ηὔξημαι, ηὔξήθην**

ἀφικνέομαι: to arrive at **ἀφ-ίζομαι, 2 aor. ἀφ-ικόμην, ἀφ-ίγμαι**

ἄχθομαι: to be vexed **ἀχθέσομαι, ἤχθέσθην**

βαίνω: to step **βήσομαι, 2 aor. ἔβην, βέβηκα**

ἀναβαίνω: to go up

ἀποβαίνω: to go away, depart

ἐμβαίνω: to step in

ἐπαναβαίνω: to get up on, mount

ἐπιβαίνω: to go upon

καταβαίνω: to step down, go down

ὑποβαίνω: to go or stand under

βάλλω: to throw **βαλῶ, 2 aor. ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην**

ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, ram

εἰσβάλλω: to throw into, invade

ἐκβάλλω: to throw or cast out of

ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, put in

μεταβάλλω: to change quickly

περιβάλλω: to throw around, embrace

προσβάλλω: to strike or dash against

ὑποβάλλω: to throw, put or lay under

βάπτω: to dip in water **βάψω, ἔβαψα, βέβαμμαι, ἐβάφην**

βιβάζω: to make go **βιβάσω, -εβίβασα, ἐβιβάσθην**

ὑπερβιβάζω: to carry over, transfer

ἐμβιβάζω: to set in or on

βιόω: to live **βιώσομαι, 2 aor. ἐβίον, βεβίωκα**

βλαστάνω: to bud 2 aor. ἔβλαστον, βεβλάστηκα

A True Story

βλέπω: to look at **βλέψομαι, ἔβλεψα**

ἀποβλέπω: to look away from

περιβλέπω: to look round about

βοάω: to shout **βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα βέβωμαι, ἐβώσθην**

ἐπιβοάω: to call upon or to, cry out to

ἀναβοάω: to shout aloud, utter a loud cry

βούλομαι: to wish **βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην**

γαμέω: to marry **γαμῶ, ἔγημα, γεγάμηκα**

γελάω: to laugh **γελάσομαι, ἐγέλασα, ἐγελάσθην**

γηράσκω: to grow old **γηράσομαι, ἐγήρασα, γεγήρακα** am old. 2 aor. **ἐγήρα**

γίγνομαι, γιγνώσκω: see **γίνομαι, γινώσκω**

γινώσκω: to know **γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην**

διαγινώσκω: to distinguish, discern, resolve

καταγινώσκω: to remark, discover

μεταγινώσκω: to change one's mind, repent

ἀναγινώσκω: to know well, read

γίνομαι: to become **γενήσομαι, 2 aor. ἐγενόμην, 2 perf. γέγονα, γεγέννημαι, ἐγενήθην**

παραγίνομαι: to be present, attend

ἐγγίνομαι: to be born, bred in

ἐπιγίνομαι: come into being, happen

γράφω: to write **γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράψην**

ἀναγράφω: to write down, record

ἐγγράφω: to inscribe

ἐπιγράφω: to mark the surface, write on

καταγράφω: to inscribe

συγγράφω: to write, note down

δείδω: to fear **δείσομαι, ἔδεισα, δέδοικα**

δείκνυμι: to show **δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην**

δέμω: to build **ἔδειμα, δέδμημαι**

δέομαι want, ask: **δεήσομαι, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην.** (from **δέω** 2)

δέχομαι: to receive **δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, -δέχθην**

διαδέχομαι: to receive one from another

ἐκδέχομαι: to take or receive from

παραδέχομαι: to receive from

προσδέχομαι: to receive, accept

ὑποδέχομαι: to receive beneath

δέω: to bind **δήσω, ἔδησα, δέδεκα, δέδεμαι, ἐδέθην**

ἐκδέω: to bind so as to hang from, to fasten to or on

ἀναδέω: to bind or tie up

δέω: to need, lack (mid) ask: **δεήσω, ἐδέησα, δεδέηκα, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην.**

Lucian

διακονέω: to minister διακονήσω, δεδιακόνηκα, δεδιακόνημαι, ἐδιακονήθην

διδράσκω: to run away δράσομαι, 2 aor. -έδραν, -δέδρακα

δίδωμι: to give δώσω, 1 aor. ἔδωκα in s., 2 aor. in pl. ἔδομεν δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην

ἀποδίδωμι: to give back, return

ἐνδίδωμι: to give out

ἐπιδίδωμι: to give beyond, increase

μεταδίδωμι: to give part of, give a share of

παραδίδωμι: to give or hand over to another, transmit

διώκω: to pursue διώξομαι, ἐδίωξα, δεδίωχα, ἐδιώχθην

καταδιώκω: to pursue closely

ἀποδιώκω: to chase away

δοκέω: to think, seem δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι

δράω: to do δράσω, ἔδρασα, δέδρακα, δέδραμαι, ἐδράσθην

δύω: to go down δύσω, -έδυσα trans., 2 aor. ἔδυν intrans., δέδυσκα, -δέδυμαι, -εδύθην

καταδύω: to go down, sink

ἐγείρω: to wake up ἐγερῶ, ἤγειρα, 2 perf. ἔγρήγορα, ἐγήγερμαι, ἠγέρθην

ἀνεγείρω: to wake up, rouse

ἐθέλω: to wish ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἠθέληκα

εἶδον I saw: see ὁράω

εἰκάζω: to make like εἰκάσω, ἤκασα, ἤκασμαι, ἠκάσθην

εἶμι: to go; see ἔρχομαι

εἶργω: to shut in or out εἶρξω, εἶρξα, εἶργμαι, εἶρχθην

κατείργω: to drive into, shut in

ἐλαύνω: to drive ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, -ελήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἠλάθην

προσελαύνω: to drive or chase to

ἐλέγχω: to refute ἐλέγξω, ἤλεγξα, ἐλήλεγμαι, ἠλέγχθην

ἔλκω: to draw up

ἀνέλκω: to draw up

ἐνέπω: to tell, relate ἐνι-σπήσω and ἐνίψω, 2 aor. ἐνι-σπον

εὔχομαι: to pray εὔξομαι, ἠνέξαμην, ἠνύγμαι

ἔπομαι: to follow ἔψομαι, 2 aor. ἐσπόμην

ἐράω: to be in love with aor. ἠράσθην

ἐρπύζω: to creep -έρψω, εἴρπυσσα

ἀνερπύζω: to creep up

ἔρρω: to go slowly, wander about ἐρρήσω, ἤρρησα, εἰσήρρηκα

ἔρχομαι: to come or go to: fut. εἶμι, 2 aor. ἦλθον, 2 perf. ἐλήλυθα

A True Story

- ἀνέρχομαι:** to go up
ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
διεξέρχομαι: to go through, to recount
διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through
εἰσέρχομαι: to come to, enter into
ἐξέρχομαι: to go or come out of
ἐπείσέρχομαι: to come in besides
ἐπέρχομαι: to go upon, attack
κατέρχομαι: to go down from
παρέρχομαι: to go by, to pass by
προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance
προσέρχομαι: to come or go to
συνέρχομαι: to come together
- ἑρωτάω:** to ask **ἐρήσομαι**, 2 aor. **ἠρόμην**
ἐπερωτάω: to question
- ἐσθίω:** to eat **ἔδομαι**, 2 aor. **ἔφαγον**
- ἐστιάω:** to entertain as a guest **εἰστίασα**
συνεστιάω: to entertain in one's house
- εὕρισκω:** to find **εὕρήσω**, 2 aor. **ἤυρον** or **εὔρον**, **ἤυρηκα** or **εὔρηκα**, **εὔρημαι**, **εὔρήθην**
- εὐφραίνω:** to cheer, delight, gladden **εὐφρανῶ**, **ἠϋφρανα**, **ἠϋφράνθην**
- εὐχομαι:** to offer prayers or vows **εὔξομαι**, **ἠϋξάμην**, **ἠϋγμαι**
- ἔχω:** to have **ἔξω**, 2 aor. **ἔσχον**, **ἔσχηκα**, imperf. **εἶχον**.
ἀπέχω: to keep off or away from
ἀντέχω: to hold against
ἐπέχω: to hold back
κατέχω: to hold fast
παρέχω: to provide, allow
προέχω: to hold before
προσέχω: to hold to
ἀνίσχω: to hold
- ἔψω:** to boil, cook **ἐψήσομαι**, **ἤψησα**, **ἤψημαι**, **ἤψηθην**
- ζάω:** to live **ζήσω**, **ἔζησα**, **ἔζηκα**
- ζεύγνυμι:** to join at top **ζεύξω**, **ἔζευξα**, **ἔζευγμαι**, **ἔζεύχθην**
- ζώννυμι:** to gird **ἔζωσα**, **ἔζωμαι**
ὑποζώννυμι: to undergird
- ἡγέομαι:** act as guide, lead the way **ἡγήσομαι**, **ἡγησάμην**, **ἡγημαι**
διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full
- ἡδομαι:** to be happy; **ἡσθήσομαι**, **ἡσθην**
ὑπερήδομαι: to be very happy
- ἦλθον:** to go; see **ἔρχομαι**

Lucian

θάλλω: to bloom 2 perf. **τέθηλα**

θάπτω: to bury **θάψω, ἔθαψα, τέθαμμαι, ἐτάφην**

θλίβω: to press **θλίψω, τέθλιφα, ἐθλίφθην**

ὑποθλίβω: to press under or gently

ἀποθλίβω: to press, squeeze out

θνήσκω: to die **θανοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έθανον, τέθνηκα**

ἀποθνήσκω: to die

θρόσκω: to leap 2 aor. **ἔθορον**

ἀναθρόσκω: to spring forward

θύω: to sacrifice **θύσω, ἔθυσα, τέθυκα, τέθυμαι, ἐτύθην**

ἵημι: to let go, relax, to send forth **ἥσω, ἦκα, εἶκα, εἶμαι, εἶθην**

ἀνίημι: to let go, relax

ἀφίημι: to send forth, discharge

ἐξίημι: to send out, let

ἐφίημι: to permit

καθίημι: to set down

προίημι: to send forward

συνίημι: to bring or set together

ἵστημι: to make to stand, set **στήσω** shall set, **ἔστησα** set, caused to stand, 2 aor.

ἔστην stood, 1 perf. **ἔστηκα** stand, plup. **εἰστήκη** stood, **ἐστάθην**

ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up

ἀφίστημι: to put away, stand apart

διίστημι: to set apart, separate

ἐνίστημι: to put, set, place in

ἐξανίστημι: to raise up: to make one rise

ἐπανίστημι: to fall upon

ἐφίστημι: to stand upon

μεθίστημι: to place in another way, to change

παρίστημι: to set beside, to make to stand, set up

προίστημι: to set before or in front

συνίστημι: to set together, combine, associate, unite, band together

καίω: to burn **καύσω, ἔκαυσα, -κέκαυκα, κέκαυμαι, ἐκαύθην**

ἀνακαίω: to light up

ἐγκαίω: to burn or heat in

καλέω: to call **καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην**

ἐπικαλέω: to call upon

παρακαλέω: to call to

συγκαλέω: to call to council, convoke, convene

καλύπτω: to cover **καλύψω, ἐκάλυψα, κεκάλυμμαι, ἐκαλύφθην**

κάπτω: to gulp down **κάμψω, ἔκαμψα, κέκαμμαι, ἐκάμφθην**

κελεύω: to urge **κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευκα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην**

κεράννυμι: to mix **ἐκέρασα, κέκραμαι, ἐκραάθην**

A True Story

κλάω: to break *-έκλασα, -κέκλασμαι, -εκλάσθην*

κλείω: to shut *κλείσω, έκλεισα, κέκλειμαι, έκλείσθην*

συγκλείω: to shut or coop up, enclose

κατακλείω: to shut in, enclose

κλίνω: to bend *κλινῶ, ἔκλινα, κέκλικα, κέκλιμαι, -εκλίνην*

ἐγκλίνω: to bend in, incline

κοιλαίνω: to make hollow *κοιλανῶ, ἐκοίλανα, κεκοίλασμαι, ἐκοιλάνθην*

κομίζω: to take care of *κομιῶ, ἐκόμισα, κεκόμικα, κεκόμισμαι, ἐκομίσθην*

κόπτω: to strike *κόψω, ἔκοψα, -κέκοφα, κέκομμαι, -εκόπην*

διακόπτω: to cut in two, cut through

ἐκκόπτω: to cut out, knock out

συγκόπτω: to cut up, mangle

κρίνω: to decide *κρινῶ, ἔκρινα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην*

ἀνακρίνω: to examine closely, to question, interrogate

ἀποκρίνω: to separate, set apart; answer

κρούω: to strike *κρούσω, ἔκρουσα, -κέκρουκα, -κέκρουμαι, -εκρούσθην*

κρύπτω: to hide from *κρύψω, ἔκρυψα, κέκρυμμαι, ἐκρύφθην*

ἀποκρύπτω: to hide from, keep hidden from

κτείνω: to kill *κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα, 2 perf. -έκτονα*

ἀποκτείνω: to kill, slay

κυνέω: to kiss *κυνήσομαι, ἔκυσα*

προσκυνέω: to make obeisance

λαγχάνω: to obtain by lot or fate *λήξομαι, ἔλαχον, εἴληχα, εἴληγμαι, ἐλήχθην*

λαμβάνω: to take *λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἴληφα, εἴλημμαι, ἐλήφθην*

ἀναλαμβάνω: to take up, take into one's hands

καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, grasp

παραλαμβάνω: to secure

συλλαμβάνω: to collect, gather together

ὑπολαμβάνω: to undertake, to understand

λάμπω: to shine *λάμψω, ἔλαμψα, λέλαμπα, -ἔλησμαι*

λανθάνω: to escape notice *λήσω, ἔλαθον, λέληθα*

λέγω: to speak *ἔρέω, εἶπον, εἶρηκα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην* and *ἐρρήθην*

ἀντιλέγω: to speak against, contradict

ἐπιλέγω: to choose, read

διαλέγομαι: to discourse

λείπω: leave *λείψω, ἔλιπον, λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ἐλείφθην*

ἀπολείπω: to leave over or behind

ἐπιλείπω: to leave behind

καταλείπω: to abandon

λείπομαι: to remain

Lucian

λύω: to loose λύσω, ἔλυσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην

ἀπολύω: to loose from

διαλύω: to loose one from another, to part asunder, undo

καταλύω: to put down, destroy

παραλύω: to loose, slacken

μαίνομαι: to rage, be furious 2 aor. pass. ἐμάνην

μανθάνω: to learn μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον, μεμάθηκα

ἀναμανθάνω: to inquire closely

καταμανθάνω: to observe well, learn

μάχομαι: to fight μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, μεμάχημαι

μεθύσκω: to make drunk ἐμέθυσα, ἐμεθύσθην

μέμφομαι: to blame μέμψομαι, ἐμεμψάμην, ἐμέμφθην

μένω: to stay μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα

ἀναμένω: to wait for, await

ἐπιμένω: to stay on, tarry

παραμένω: to stay near, stand by

ὑπομένω: to stay behind, survive

μίγνυμι: to mix μείξω, ἔμειξα, μέμειγμαι, ἐμείχθην

παραμίγνυμι: to intermix with

συμμίγνυμι: to mix together

μιμνήσκομαι: to remember μνήσω, -έμνησα, perf. μέμνημαι, ἐμνήσθην

μύσσω: to have a runny nose -έμυξα, -εμεμύγμην

νέμω: to distribute νεμῶ, ἔνειμα, -νενέμηκα, νενέμημαι, ἐνεμήθην

νομίζω: to believe νομιῶ, ἐνόμισα, νενόμικα, νενόμισμαι, ἐνομίσθην

ξηραίνω: to dry ξηρανῶ, ἐξήρανα, ἐξήρασμαι, ἐξηράνθην

ὀζω: to smell ὀζήσω, ὠξησα

ἀπόζω: to smell of

οἶδα: to know; see ὀράω

οἶομαι: to suppose ὥθήην imperf. ὥμην

ὀλισθάνω: to slip 2 aor. ὤλισθον

διολισθάνω: to slip through

ὀλλυμι: to destroy -ολῶ, -ώλεσα, -ολώλεκα, -όλωλα

ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy, lose

ὀμνυμι: to swear ὁμοῦμαι, ὤμοσα, ὁμώμοκα, ὁμώμομαι, ὠμόθην

ὀράω: to see ὄψομαι, 2 aor. εἶδον, ἑώρακα and ἑώρακα, ὤφθην, imperf. ἑώρων

καθοράω: to look down

ὑφοράω: to suspect

ὀργίζω: to make angry -οργιῶ, ὤργισα, ὤργισμαι, ὠργίσθην

A True Story

ὀρέγω: to reach **ὀρέξω, ὥρεξα, ὠρέχθην**

ὀρύττω: to dig **-ορύξω, ὥρυξα, -ορώρυχα, ὀρώρυγμα, ὠρύχθην**
διορύττω: to dig through or across

ὀφείλω: to owe **ὀφειλήσω, ὠφείλησα, 2 aor. ὤφελον**

πάσχω: to experience **πείσομαι, 2 aor. ἔπαθον, 2 perf. πέπονθα**

πείθω: persuade **πείσω, ἔπεισα, 2 perf. πέποιθα, πέπεισμαι, ἐπείσθην**

πείρω: to pierce **ἔπειρα, πέπαρμαι, 2 aor. pass. -επάρην**
διαπείρω: to drive through

πέμπω: to convey **πέμψω, ἔπεμψα, 2 perf. πέπομφα, πέπεμμαι, ἐπέμφθην**
ἀποπέμπω: to send away, to dismiss
ἐκπέμπω: to send out or forth from
μεταπέμπω: to send after
παραπέμπω: to convey, escort
συνπέμπω: to send with

πεπαίνω: to ripen **ἐπέπανα, ἐπεπάνθην**

πετάννυμι: to spread out **πετάσθην**

πέτομαι: to fly **πτήσομαι, 2 aor. -επτόμην**
ἀναπέτομαι: to fly up
εἰσπέτομαι: to fly in
παραπέτομαι: to fly alongside
περιπέτομαι: to fly around
ὑπερπέτομαι: to fly over

πήγνυμι: to fix, make fast **πήξω, ἔπηξα, 2 perf. πέπηγα, 2 aor. pass. ἐπάγην**
ἀναπήγνυμι: fix on a stake, impale
συνπήγνυμι: to put together, construct

πίνω: to drink **πίομαι, 2 aor. ἔπιον, πέπωκα, -έπομαι, -επόθην**
καταπίνω: to gulp, swallow down
προπίνω: to drink before

πίπτω: to fall **πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. ἔπεσον, πέπτωκα**
ἀναπίπτω: to fall back
διεκπίπτω: to slip through, into
ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon or over
καταπίπτω: to fall or drop down
περιπίπτω: to fall around or in with

πλάττω: to form **ἔπλασα, πέπλασμαι, ἐπλάσθην**
ἀναπλάττω: to form anew, remodel

πλέκω: to weave **ἔπλεξα, πέπλεγμαι, -επλάκην**
περιπλέκω: to entwine, enfold
συνπλέκω: to twine or plait together

Lucian

πλέω: to sail **πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευσαι, ἐπλεύσθην**

ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off

διαπλέω: to sail across

εἰσπλέω: to sail into, enter

ἐκπλέω: to sail out, sail away, weigh anchor

ἐμπλέω: to sail in

ἐπιπλέω: to sail upon or over

καταπλέω: to sail down

παραπλέω: to sail along

προσπλέω: to sail towards or against

πνέω: to blow **πνεύσομαι, ἔπνευσα, -πέπνευκα**

περιπνέω: to breathe round or over

πράσσω: to do **πράξω, ἔπραξα, 2 perf. πέπραχα, πέπραγμαι, ἐπράχθην**

πυνθάνομαι: to learn **πεύσομαι, 2 aor. ἐπυθόμην, πέπυσμαι**

ράινω: to sprinkle **ρανῶ, ἔρρανα, ἔρρασαι, ἐρράνθην**

ἐπιρραίνω: to sprinkle upon or over

ράπτω: to sew **-ρράψω, ἔρραψα, ἔρραμαι, ἐρράφην**

συρράπτω: to sew or stitch together

ρέω: to flow **ρήσομαι, ἐρρύην, ἐρρύηκα**

ἀπορρέω: to flow away, stream forth

διαρρέω: to flow through

παραρρέω: to flow beside or past

περιρρέω: to flow round

ρήγνυμι: to break **-ρήξω, ἔρρηξα, -έρρωγα, ἐρράγην**

καταρρήγνυμι: to crack (of thunder)

ρίπτω: to throw **ρίψω, ἔρριψα, 2 perf. ἔρριφα, ἔρριμαι, ἐρρίφην**

ἐπιρριπτέω: to throw oneself upon

σβέννυμι: to quench **σβέσω, ἔσβεσα, ἔσβηκα ἐσβέσθην, 2 aor. pass. ἔσβην**

σέβω: to worship **σέβομαι, ἐσέφθην**

σείω: to shake **σείσω, ἔσεισα, σέσεικα, σέσεισαι, ἐσείσθην**

διασείω: to shake violently

σημαίνω: to indicate **σημανῶ, ἐσήμνηνα, σεσήμασαι, ἐσημάνθην**

ἐπισημαίνω: to set a mark upon

σκάπτω: to dig **σκάψω, -έσκαψα, 2 perf. -έσκαφα, ἔσκαμμαι, 2 aor. pass. -εσκάφην**

σκεδάννυμι: to scatter **-σκεδῶ, -εσκέδασα, ἐσκέδασμαι, ἐσκεδάσθην**

σκέπτομαι: to view **σκέψομαι, ἐσκεψάμην, ἔσκεμμαι**

σκώπτω: to mock **σκώψομαι, ἔσκωψα, ἐσκώφθην**

A True Story

σπάω: to draw **σπάσω, ἔσπασα, -έσπακα, ἔσπασμαι, -εσπάσθην**

ἀνασπάω: to pluck up, take up

ἀποσπάω: to tear away

σπένδω: to pour a drink-offering **σπείσω, ἔσπεισα, ἔσπειμαι**

στάζω: drip **ἔσταξα, -έσταγμαι, -εστάχθην**

ἐπιστάζω: let fall in drops, instill

καταστάζω: pour upon, shed over

στέλλω: to send **στελῶ, ἔστειλα, -έσταλκα, ἔσταλμαι, 2 aor. pass. ἐστάλην**

ἀποστέλλω: to send out

στρέφω: to turn **στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, ἔστραμμαι, ἐστρέφθην**

ἀναστρέφω: to turn back, return

σύρω: to draw **-έσυρα, -σέσυρκα, -σέσυρμαι**

ἐπισύρω: to drag or trail after

σφάττω: to slay **σφάξω, ἔσφαξα, ἔσφαγμαι, 2 aor. pass. -εσφάγην**

ἀποσφάττω: to cut the throat of

σώζω: to save **σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, ἐσώθην**

ταράττω: to stir up **ταράξω, ἐτάραξα, τετάραγμαι, ἐταράχθην**

τάσσω: to arrange **τάξω, ἔταξα, 2 perf. τέταχα, τέταγμαι, ἐτάχθην**

διατάσσω: to draw up, arrange

ἐκτάσσω: to draw out in battle-order

παρατάσσω: to place side by side, draw up in battle-order

προστάσσω: to place, post at

τείνω: stretch **τενῶ, -έτεινα, -τέτακα, τέταμαι, -ετάθην**

προτείνω: to stretch out before, hold before

τελέω: to complete **τελῶ, ἐτέλεσα, τετέλεκα, τετέλεσμαι, ἐτελέσθην**

ἐκτελέω: to bring quite to an end

συντελέω: to bring to an end, complete, accomplish

ὑποτελέω: to pay tribute

τέμνω: to cut **τεμῶ, 2 aor. ἔτεμον, -τέτμηκα, τέτμημαι, ἐτμήθην**

ἀνατέμνω: to cut open

ἀποτέμνω: to cut off, sever

τήκω: to melt **τήξω, ἔτηξα, τέτηκα, ἐτάκην**

τίθημι: to place **θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, τέθειμαι (but usu. instead κείμαι), ἐτέθην**

ἀνατίθημι: to put up

ἐντίθημι: to put in

παρατίθημι: to place beside

προστίθημι: to put to

συντίθημι: to put together

τιτρώσκω: to wound **-τρώσω, ἔτρωσα, τέτρωμαι, ἐτρώθην**

Lucian

τρέπω: to turn **τρέψω, ἔτρεψα, τέτροφα, ἐτράπην**

ἀποτρέπω: to turn away

ἐπιτρέπω: to turn towards

τρέφω: to nourish **θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, 2 perf. τέτροφα, τέθραμμαι, ἐτράφην**

τρέχω: to run **δραμοῦμαι, ἔδραμον, -δεδράμηκα**

κατατρέχω: to run down

παρατρέχω: to run by or past

τρίβω: to rub **τρίψω, ἔτριψα, 2 perf. τέτριφα, τέτριμμαι, ἐτρίβην**

διατρίβω: to spend time

ἐκτρίβω: to rub out

συντρίβω: to rub together

τυγχάνω: to happen **τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηκα. τέτυγμαι, ἐτύχθην**

ἐντυγχάνω: to fall in with, meet with

περιτυγχάνω: to fall in with

τύφω: to smoke **τέθυμμαι, -ετύφην**

ὑποτύφομαι: to burn with a smoldering fire

ὑπισχνέομαι: to promise **ὑπο-σχήσομαι, 2 aor. ὑπ-εσχόμην**

ὑφαίνω: to weave **ὑφανῶ, ὕφηνα, ὕφασμαι, ὑφάνθην**

διωφαίνω: to fill up by weaving

φαίνω: to show **φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφηνα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνην**

ἀποφαίνω: to display, produce

ἐκφαίνω: to show, reveal

ἐμφαίνω: exhibit

προφαίνω: to bring forth, bring to light

ὑποφαίνω: to appear slightly, just be visible

φαίνομαι: to appear

περιφαίνομαι: to be visible all round

φέρω: to bear **οἶσω, 1 aor. ἤνεγκα, 2 aor. ἤνεγκον, 2 perf. ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἤνέχθην**

ἀποφέρω: to carry off

ἐκφέρω: to carry out of

ἐπιφέρω: bear up, carry upon

καταφέρω: to bring down

παραφέρω: to bring to

προσφέρω: to bring to or upon, approach

συμφέρω: to bring together, gather, collect

φεύγω: to flee **φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον, πέφευγα**

διαφεύγω: to flee through, get away from, escape

ἐκφεύγω: to flee, escape

καταφεύγω: to flee for refuge

ὑποφεύγω: to flee from under, shun

φθάνω: to anticipate **φθήσομαι, ἔφθασα, ἔφθην**

φράζω: to point out **φράσω, ἔφρασα, πέφρακα, πέφρασμαι, ἐφράσθην**

A True Story

φυλάττω: to guard φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, πεφύλαχα, πεφύλαγμαι, ἐφυλάχθην

φύω: to bring forth φύσω, ἔφυσα, 2 aor. ἔφυν, πέφυκα

ἀναφύω: to grow, produce

ἐκφύω: to grow out

συμφύω: to grow together

χαίρω: to rejoice at χαιρήσω, κεχάρηκα, κεχάρημαι, ἐχάρην

ὑπερχαίρω: to rejoice exceedingly at

χαλεπαίνω: to be offended χαλεπανῶ, ἐχάλεπνα, ἐχαλεπάνθην

χάσκω: to gape 2 aor. ἔχανον, 2 perf. κέχνηα

ἀναχάσκω: to open the mouth wide

χέω: to pour fut. χέω, aor. ἔχεα, κέχυκα, κέχυμαι, ἐχύθην

ἐπιχέω: to pour over

περιχέω: to pour round or over

χράομαι: to use χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην, κέχρημαι, ἐχρήσθην

χρίω: to anoint χρίσω, ἔχρισα, κέχριμαι, ἐχρίσθην

ψεύδω: to lie ψεύσω, ἔψευσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην

Glossary

Glossary

A α

- ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν:** good
ἀγγέλλω: to bear a message
ἀγέλη, ἡ: a herd
ἄγκυρα, ἡ: an anchor
ἄγός, -οῦ, ὁ: a leader, chief
ἀγρεύω: to hunt or fish
ἄγριος, -α, -ον: rustic, wild, savage
ἄγών, -ου, ὁ: contest
ἄγω: to lead or carry, to convey, bring
ἄδεής, -ές: without fear, fearless
ἀδικέω: to do wrong, injure
ἄδρός, -ά, -όν: thick
αἰεί: always, for ever
ἀέκων, -ουσα, -ον: against one's will, unwilling
ἄήρ, ἄέρος, ὁ: the air
αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals
αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood
αἵρω: to take up, raise, lift up
αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, to see, hear, feel
αἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: causing shame, abusive
αἰτία, ἡ: a charge, accusation
αἰχμάλωτος, -ον: taken by the spear, captive to one's spear, taken prisoner
ἀκούω: to hear
ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, made or done to a nicety
ἄκρος, -α, -ον: at the furthest point
ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth
ἄληθεύω: to speak truth
ἄληθής, -ές: true
ἀλλάσσω: to make other than it is, to change, alter
ἄλλά: otherwise, but
ἄλλόκοτος, -ον: strange, monstrous
ἄλλος, -η: another, one besides
ἄλλοτε: at another time, at other times
ἄλυσις, -εως, ἡ: a chain
ἅμα: at once, at the same time
ἄμπελος, ἡ: a tendril, vine
ἄμυδρός, -ά, -όν: indistinct, dim, obscure
ἄμφι: about, around + *acc.*
ἄν: indefinite particle
ἀνά: up, upon + *acc.*
ἀνάγω: to lead up
ἀναιρέω: to take up, raise
ἀνακαίω: to light up
ἀνακρίνω: to examine closely, to question, interrogate
ἀναπλάττω: to form anew, remodel
ἀνασπάω: to draw up, pull up
ἀναστρέφω: to turn upside down, upset
ἀναχάσκω: to open the mouth, gape wide
ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind
ἀνέρχομαι: to go up
ἄνευ: without + *gen.*
ἄνῆρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man
ἄνθρωπος, ὁ: person, man
ἀνίημι: to send up or forth
ἀνιμάω: to draw up
ἀνίστημι: to make to stand up, raise up
ἀνοικοδομέω: to build up
ἄνοιξις, -εως, ἡ: an opening
ἀντηχέω: to sound or sing in answer
ἀντί: over against, opposite + *gen.*
ἀξιόλογος, -ον: worthy of mention, noteworthy
ἀξιόω: to deem worthy, to resolve
ἀπάγω: to lead away, carry off
ἀπαίτέω: to demand back, demand
ἀπαντάω: to encounter
ἅπας: all, the whole
ἀπατάω: to cheat, beguile
ἀπέρχομαι: to go away, depart from
ἀπέχω: to keep off or away from
ἄπιστος: not to be trusted, unbelievable
ἀπό: away from, upon + *gen.*
ἀποβαίνω: to step off from (a ship or land)
ἀποβλέπω: to look away from one thing and towards another
ἀποδημία, ἡ: a being from home, a journey
ἀποδίδωμι: to give up or back, restore, return
ἀποθνήσκω: to die off, die
ἀποικία, ἡ: a settlement far from home, a colony
ἀποκρίνω: to separate, set apart, (mid) answer
ἀπολείπω: to leave over or behind
ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy utterly, kill, slay, lose
ἀπολογέομαι: to speak in defense
ἀπολύω: to loose from, release

Glossary

ἀποπέμπω: to send off, to dismiss
ἀποπλέω: to sail away, sail off
ἀποστάζω: to let fall drop by drop, distil
ἀπό: from, away from + *gen.*
ἀράχνης, -ου, ὁ: a spider
ἀράχνη, ἡ: a spider's web
ἀριστερός, -α, -ον: left, on the left
ἄριστος: best
ἀρπάζω: to snatch away, carry off
ἄρσεν, ὁ: male
ἄρτι: just, exactly
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning, first cause, highest power
ἄρχω: to be first, to rule
ἀσεβέω: to be impious, to act profanely, sin against the gods
ἀσεβής, -ές: ungodly, godless, unholy, profane
ἀσπάζομαι: to welcome kindly, greet, bid farewell
ἀστήρ, -έρος, ὁ: star
ἀσφαλής, -ές: not liable to fall, immoveable, steadfast, firm
ἀτερπής, -ές: unpleasing, joyless, melancholy
ἄτε: just as, so as; + *part. giving the ground of the action*
αὐθήμερος, -ον: made or done on the very day
αὐθις: back, back again
αὐλέω: to play on the flute
αὐλός, ὁ: flute
αὔρα, ἡ: air in motion, a breeze
αὐτάρκης, -ες: sufficient in oneself, having enough, independent
αὐτίκα: forthwith, straightway, at once
αὐτόματος: acting of one's own will, of oneself
αὐτός: self
ἄφανής, -ές: unseen, invisible, viewless
ἄφθονος, -ον: without envy
ἀφίημι: to send forth, discharge
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
ἀφίστημι: to put away, remove
ἄφνω: unawares, unawares
ἄχρι: to the uttermost, utterly, + *gen.* as far as

Β β

βαδίζω: to go slowly, to walk
βάθος, -εος, τό: depth or height
βάλανος, ὁ: an acorn
βάλλω: to throw
βασιλείος, -ον: kingly, royal
βασιλεύς, -έως, ὁ: a king, chief
βασιλεύω: to be king, to rule, reign
βασιλικός, -ή, -όν: royal, kingly
βίαιος, -ος, -ον: forcible, violent
βιάζω: to constrain
βίος, ὁ: life
βιοτεύω: to live
βιόω: to live, pass one's life
βοάω: to cry aloud, to shout
βόειος, -α, -ον: of an ox or oxen
βοή, ἡ: a loud cry, shout
βότρυς, -υος, ὁ: a cluster or bunch of grapes
βουκέφαλος, -ον: bull-headed
βούλομαι: to will, wish, be willing

Γ γ

γάλα, -ακτος, τό: milk
γαμέω: to marry
γάμος: a wedding, wedding-feast
γάρ: for
γεννάω: to beget, engender
γένος, -ους, τό: race, stock, family
γε: at least, at any rate
γηράσκω: to grow old, become old
γῆ, γῆς, ἡ: earth, land
γίνομαι: become, take place, happen
γινώσκω: to learn to know, to perceive, mark, learn
γνωρίζω: to make known, point out, explain
γνώριμος, -ον: well-known, familiar
γοερός, -ά, -όν: mournful, lamentable
γόνυ, τό: a knee
γοῦν: at least then, at any rate, any way
γραφεύς, -έως, ὁ: a painter, writer
γράφω: to scratch, write
γυμνάζω: to train naked, train in gymnastic exercise
γυνή, -αϊκός, ἡ: a woman
γύψ, ἡ: a vulture

Glossary

Δ δ

δακρύω: to weep, shed tears
δάκτυλος, ό: a finger
δείκνυμι: to bring to light, display, exhibit
δελφίς, -ίνος, ό: a dolphin
δένδρον, τό: a tree
δεξιά, ή: the right hand
δεξιόομαι: to greet with the right hand, welcome, greet
δεξιός, -ά, -όν: on the right hand or side
δέυτερος, -α, -ον: second
δέ: but, and, on the other hand (with μέν)
δηλώω: to make visible or manifest, to show, exhibit
δή: now, in truth, indeed
διά: + *gen.* through, + *acc.* through, by means of
διαγωνίζομαι: to contend, struggle or fight against
διάγω: to carry over or across
διαθέω: to run about
διαλύω: to loose one from another, to part asunder, undo
διάνοια, ή: a thought, intention, purpose
διαπεράω: to go over or across
διαρρήγγνυμι: to break through, cleave asunder
διασείω: to shake violently
διατριβω: to rub hard, rub away, consume, waste
διανυγής, -ές: transparent
δίδωμι: to give
διέρχομαι: to go through, pass through
διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe in full
δικάζω: to judge, to give judgment on
διόπερ: wherefore, on which account
δίος, -α, -ον: god-like, divine
διό: wherefore, on which account
διώκω: to pursue
δοκέω: to think, suppose, imagine, expect
δοκιμάζω: to test, to approve, sanction
δόξα, ή: a notion, opinion, belief
δράω: to do
δρόσος, ή: dew
δύναμαι: to be able, capable, strong enough

δυνατός, -ή, -όν: strong, mighty, able
δύο: two
δύω: to cause to sink

Ε ε

έάν: if haply + *subjunctive*
εαρ, τό: spring
εαυτοῦ, -ής, -οῦ: reflexive pronoun, himself, etc.
εάω: to let, suffer, allow, permit
εβδομος, -η, -ον: seventh
εζομαι: to seat oneself, sit
εθέλω: to will, wish, purpose
έθνος, -εος, τό: a group of people, a nation
είδος, -εος, τό: that which is seen, form, shape, figure
εικάζω: to make like to, compare, to suppose from a likeness
είκοσι: twenty
είμι: I am
είμι: I will go (**έρχομαι**)
είπον: to say (**λέγω**)
είρεσία, ή: rowing
είσεμι: to go into
εις: into, to + *acc.*
είτα: then, next
εί: if, whether
έκ: + *gen.* from, out of, after
έκαστος, -η, -ον: every, every one, each
έκάτερος: each of two, either, each singly
έκατόν: a hundred
έκδέω: to bind so as to hang from, to fasten to or on
έκείθεν: from that place, thence
έκείνος: the person there, that person or thing
έκει: there, in that place
έκκολάπτω: to scrape out, obliterate
έκτάσσω: to draw out in battle-order
έκτος, -η, -ον: sixth
έκφέρω: to carry out of
έκφύω: to generate from
έλάσσων, -ον: smaller, less than + *gen.*
ελαύνω: to drive, drive on, set in motion
ελεφάντινος, -η, -ον: of ivory, ivory
έλιξ, -ικος, ή: a spiral, twisting tendril
έμβαίνω: to step in

Glossary

- ἐμβάλλω:** to throw in, put in
ἐμβιβάζω: to set in or on
ἐμός, -ή, -όν: mine
ἐμπλέω: to sail in
ἐν: in, among + *dat.*
ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite
ἐνδίδωμι: to give in, lessen, concede
ἐνεκα: on account of, for the sake of + *gen.*
ἐνθα: there
ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some
ἐνίστημι: to put, set, place in
ἐνοικέω: to dwell in
ἐνοικοδομέω: to build in, furnish
ἐνταῦθα: here, there
ἐντεῦθεν: hence or thence
ἐντυγχάνω: to light upon, fall in with, read
ἐξαιρέω: to take out of, remove, bring to an end
ἐξελαύνω: to drive out from
ἐξήκοντα: sixty
ἐξῆς: one after another, in order, in a row
ἐξοδος, ὁ: passage out
ἔοικα: to seem, to be like, to seem right
ἐπαινέω: to approve, applaud, commend
ἐπαυλέω: to accompany on the flute
ἐπαυλίζομαι: to encamp on the field
ἐπειδάν: whenever + *subjunctive*
ἐπειτα: thereupon
ἐπεί: after that, after, since, when
ἐπί: + *acc.* toward, against; + *gen.* upon, on; + *dat.* on
ἐπιβαίνω: to step upon or on (a boat or land)
ἐπιβοάω: to call upon or to, cry out to
ἐπιβοηθέω: to come to aid, to succor
ἐπιγίνομαι: to be born after, come into being after
ἐπίγραμμα, -ατος, τό: an inscription
ἐπιδημέω: to be at home, live at home
ἐπιδημία, ἡ: a stay in a place
ἐπιθυμέω: to set one's heart upon
ἐπικαλέω: to call upon
ἐπικειμαι: to be laid upon
ἐπικρατέω: to rule over
ἐπιμένω: to stay on, tarry or abide still
ἐπινόεω: to think on or of, contrive
ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon or over
ἐπιπλέω: to sail upon or over
ἐπισκοπέω: to look upon or at, inspect, observe
ἐπιστολή, ἡ: a message, command, commission
ἐπισύρω: to drag or trail after
ἔπος, -εος, τό: a word, in pl. the epic words of Homer
ἐπτά: seven
ἐρήμος, -ον: desolate, lone, lonely, lonesome, solitary
ἔρρω: to go slowly, wander about
ἐρυθρός, -ά, -όν: red
ἔρχομαι: to come or go
ἐσπέρα, ἡ: evening, eventide, eve
ἐστιάω: to receive at one's hearth, to entertain, feast, regale
ἐστία, ἡ: the hearth of a house, fireside
ἐτάζω: to examine, test
ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate
ἔτερος, -α, -ον: one or the other of two
ἔτι: yet, as yet, still
ἐτοῖμος, -ον: at hand, ready, prepared
ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
εὐδαίμων, -ον: blessed with good fortune
εὐθαλής, -ές: blooming, flourishing
εὕρισκω: to find
εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant
εὐώνυμος, -ον: the left side
εὖωχέω: to treat or feed well, entertain sumptuously
ἐφίημι: to send to or against, to launch, aim at
ἐφίστημι: to set or place upon, establish, impose upon
ἔφοδος, ἡ: an approach, an attack
ἔχω: to have or to hold, be able, be
ἔωθεν: from morning

Ζ ζ

- ζάω:** to live
ζέω: to boil, seethe
ζητέω: to seek, seek for

Η η

- ἡγέομαι:** to go before, lead the way
ἤδη: now, already

Glossary

ἡδομαι: to enjoy oneself, take delight,
take one's pleasure
ἡδύς, -εία, -ύ: sweet, pleasant
ἡλών, -όνος, ἡ: a shore, beach
ἦκω: to have come, be present, be here
ἡλικία, ἡ: time of life, age
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun
ἡλιώτης, -ου, ὁ: inhabitant of the sun
ἡμαι: to be seated, sit
ἡμέρα: day
ἡμερος: tame, cultivated
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our
ἡμίτομος, -ον: half cut through, cut in
two
ἡνιοχέω: to hold the reins, drive a
chariot
ἡπειρος: the land, a continent
ἥρως, ὁ: warrior, hero

Θ θ

θάλασσα, ἡ: the sea
θαλάσσιος, -α, -ον: of, in, on or from the
sea, belonging to it
θάπτω: to bury, to honor with funeral
rites
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be
astounded
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wondrous,
wonderful, marvelous
θεάομαι: to look on, gaze at, view,
behold
θέμις, ἡ: that which is laid down or
established by custom
θεός, ὁ: god
θέρμος, ὁ: a lupine
θέρμω: to heat, make hot
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast
θορυβώδης, -ες: noisy, uproarious,
turbulent
θρασύς, -εία, -ύ: bold, spirited,
courageous, confident

Ι ι

ιάομαι: to heal, cure
ιδέα, ἡ: form
ιδιώτης, -ου, ὁ: a private person, an
individual
ιερός, -ά, -όν, -: sacred, mighty, divine,
wonderful

ιερόν, το: a sanctuary
ἵζω: to make to sit, seat, place
ἵημι: to set a going, put in motion
ικανός: becoming, befitting, sufficing
ικετεύω: to approach as a suppliant
ἵνα: in order to + *subjunctive or optative*
ἱππόγυποι, οἱ: vulture-cavalry
ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, mare
ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as
ἵστημι: to set up, to make to stand
ἱστίον, τό: a sail
ἵστορέω: to inquire into
ἱστός, ὁ: anything set upright, such as a
mast
ἴσως: equally, in like manner

Κ κ

καθαιρέω: to take down, overpower,
destroy
κάθημαι: to be seated
καθίημι: to send down, let fall
καθοράω: to look down upon
καινός, -ή, -όν: new, fresh
καιρός, ὁ: due measure, proportion,
fitness
καίω: to light, kindle
καί: and, also
κακός, -ή, -όν: bad
καλέω: to call, summon
καλιά, ἡ: a wooden dwelling, hut, barn
καλός, -ή, -όν, -: beautiful, beauteous,
fair
κάλως, -ου, ὁ: a reefing rope
καπνός, ὁ: smoke
καρπός, ὁ: fruit
καρποφορέω: to bear fruit
καρτερός, -ά, -όν: strong, staunch, stout,
sturdy
καρυναύτης, -ου, ὁ: one who sails in a
nut-shell
κατά: + *gen.* below, from, against; + *acc.*
according to
καταγινώσκω: to remark, discover
καταδιώκω: to pursue closely
καταδύω: to go down, sink
κατάκειμαι: to lie down, lie
outstretched
καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, lay hold
of

Glossary

κατανοέω: to observe well, to understand
καταπίνω: to gulp or swallow down
καταπλέω: to sail down
κατασκοπέω: to view closely, spy out
καταφεύγω: to flee for refuge
κατέχω: to hold fast to
κατηγορέω: to speak against, to accuse
κατοικέω: to dwell in, to settle in, colonize
κατόπιν: by consequence, behind, after
κατορθόω: to set upright, erect
κάτω: down, downwards
κείμει: to be set down, to lie down
κεράννυμι: to mix, mingle
κέρας, τό: the horn of an animal
κεφαλή, ἡ: a head
κῆτος, -εος, τό: a sea-monster, whale
κινδυνεύω: to be daring, to make a venture, run the risk of + *inf.*
κινέω: to set in motion, to move
κλάδος, ὁ: a young slip or shoot broken off
κοιμάω: to lull or hush to sleep, put to sleep
κοινός, -ή, -όν, -: common, shared in common
κολάζω: to curtail, punish
κολοκύνθη, ἡ: a pumpkin
κολπόω: to form into a swelling fold
κομάω: to let the hair grow long, wear long hair
κομήτης, -ου, ὁ: wearing long hair, long-haired
κομίζω: to take care of, provide for
κοσμέω: to order, arrange
κρατέω: to be strong, rule, defeat
κρέας, τό: flesh, meat
κρημνώδης, -ες: precipitous
κρίνω: to pick out, separate, judge
κρίσις: a separating, decision
κτείνω: to kill, slay
κύαμος, ὁ: a bean
κυβερνήτης, -ου, ὁ: a steersman, helmsman, pilot
κύκλος, ὁ: a ring, circle, round
κῦμα, -ατος, τό: anything swollen, a wave

Δ λ

λαγχάνω: to obtain by lot or fate
λαιός, -ά, -όν: on the left
λαμβάνω: to take
λαμπρός, -ά, -όν: bright, brilliant, radiant
λανθάνω: to escape notice + *participle*
λάσιος, -ος, -ον: hairy, rough, shaggy, woolly
λάχανον, -ου, τό: vegetables, greens
λεία, ἡ: booty, plunder
λειμών, -ῶνος, ὁ: a meadow
λεπτός, -ή, -όν: thin, delicate, in a small amount
λευκός, -ή, -όν: shining, bright, white
λιμὴν, -ένος, ὁ: a harbor, haven
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
λόφος, ὁ: a hill, ridge, crest
λύχνος, ὁ: a lamp
λύω: to loose

Μ μ

μαίνομαι: to rage, be furious
μακρός, -ά: long
μαλάχη, ἡ: mallow
μάλα: very, exceedingly
μᾶλλον: more
μανθάνω: to learn
μαντεῖον, τό: an oracle
μαντεῖος, -α, -ον: oracular, prophetic
μαστιγώω: to whip, flog
μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat
μάχιμος, -ος, -ον: fit for battle, warlike
μάχομαι: to fight
μεγαλοπρεπής, -ές: befitting a great man, magnificent
μέγας: big, great
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: magnitude, size, height
μεθύω: to get drunk
μείς, μήνος, ὁ: a month
μέλι, -ιτος, τό: honey
μέλλω: to intend to do, to be about to do + *inf.*
μένω: to stay, remain
μέν: on the one hand, on the other hand
μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share
μεσημβρία, ἡ: mid-day, noon
μεσονύκτιος, -ον: of or at midnight

Glossary

μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
μεστός, -ή, -όν: full, filled
μετά: + *gen.* with, among ; + *acc.* after
μεταξύ: + *gen.* between
μετέχω: to partake of, share in, take part in
μέχρι: to a given point, even so far
μηδείς: and not one
μηκέτι: no more, no longer, no further
μήκος, -εος: length
μῆνις, -ιδος, ἥ: anger, wrath
μήν: now verily, surely
μήτε: and not
μή: not
μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little
μιμνήσκω: to remind
μόλις: scarcely, little by little
μονόξυλος, -ον: made from a solid trunk
μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary
μορφή, ἥ: form, shape
μουσικός, -ή, -όν: of or for music, musical
μυθώδης, -ες: legendary, fabulous
μυριάς, -άδος, ἥ: a thousand, a number of + *gen.*
μυρίος, -ος, -ον: numberless, countless, infinite
μύρον, -ου, τό: sweet-oil, unguent, balsam, myrrh

Ν ν

ναός, -ώ, ό: the dwelling of a god, a temple
ναυμαχέω: to fight in a ship or by sea, engage in a naval battle
ναῦς, νεώς, ἥ: a ship
νεκρός, ό/τό: a dead body, corpse
νέος, -α, -ον: young, youthful
νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud, mass or pile of clouds
νεώς, -ώ, ό: a temple
νησομαχία, ἥ: an island-fight
νήσος, -ου, ἥ: an island
νήχω: to swim
νικάω: to conquer, prevail, vanquish
νομίζω: to hold or own as a custom or usage, practice, believe, think
νῦν: now at this very time
νύξ, νυκτός, ἥ: night

Ξ ξ

ξένια, ἥ: hospitality
ξενίζω: to receive or entertain strangers, to receive as a guest
ξένιος, -α, -ον: belonging to a friend and guest, hospitable
ξένος, -η, -ον: foreign, strange
ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry
ξίφος, -εος, τό: a sword

Ο ο

ογδοος, -η, -ον: eighth
οἶδε: this
οδός, ἥ: a way, path, track, road, highway
οδών, -όντος, ό: a tooth
οθεν: whence
οθόνη, ἥ: a sail, sail-cloth, canvas
οἶδα: to know
οἰκίος, -α, -ον: in or of the house, domestic, related
οικέω: to inhabit, occupy
οἰκουμένη, ἥ: the inhabited world
οἶνος, ό: wine
οἰνώω: to intoxicate
οἶος, -α, -ον: such as, what sort or manner of nature, kind
οἶος, -α, -ον: such, of a kind
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small
ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire
ὅμοιος, -α, -ον: like, resembling
ὁμολογέω: to speak together, to agree
ὅμως: all the same, nevertheless, still
ὄνειρος, -ου, ό: a dream
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: a name
ὀξύς, -εία, -ύ: sharp, keen
ὀπίσω: backwards
ὀπλίζω: to make or get ready, arm
ὄπλον, τό: a tool, implement, weapon
ὀπόσος: as many as
ὀπτάω: to roast, broil
ὅπως: as, in such manner as, how
ὀράω: to see
ὄργυια, -ης, ἥ: the length of the outstretched arms
ὄρθιος, -α, -ον: straight up, going upwards, steep, uphill
ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, genuine

Glossary

ὀρμάω: to set in motion, urge, set out
ὀρμίζω: to bring into harbor, to moor,
 anchor

ὄρνειον, τό: a bird

ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill

ὅσος, -η, -ον: how much?

ὀστέον, τό: a bone

ὅστις: who, whoever

ὅς, ἧ, ὅ: who

οὐδαμὸς, -ή, -όν: not even one, no one

οὐδαμῶς: in no way, nowhere

οὐδεὶς: no one, nothing

οὐδέ: but not, and not

οὐκέτι: no more, no longer, no further

οὖν: really, certainly, so, then

οὕτω: not yet

οὖριος, -α, -ον: with a fair wind, from
 behind

οὖς, τό: an ear

οὔτε: and not

οὔτοι: indeed not

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο: this

οὐ: not

ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: an eye

Π π

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ/ή: a child

πάλαι: long ago, once upon a time

πάλη, ἡ: wrestling

πάλιν: again, back

παμμεγέθης, -ες: enormous

παννύχιος, -ον: all night long

παντοῖος, -α, -ον: of all sorts, of every
 kind

πάννυ: altogether, entirely

παρά: + *gen.* from the side of; + *dat.*
 beside, alongside of; + *acc.* to the side
 of, toward

παραδίδωμι: to give or hand over to
 another, transmit

παράδοξος, -ον: incredible, paradoxical

παραινέω: to exhort, recommend,
 advise

παραλαμβάνω: to take along, secure,
 associate with (someone)

παραμένω: to stay beside or near, stand
 by

παραπέμπω: to convey, escort

παραπλέω: to sail by or past, sail along

παραπλήσιος, -α, -ον: such as, nearly
 resembling, such-like

παραρρέω: to flow beside or past

παρασκευάζω: to get ready, prepare,
 make ready

παρέρχομαι: to go by, beside or past, to
 pass by

παρέχω: to hold beside, to furnish,
 provide, supply

πάσχω: to suffer, endure, experience

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: all, the whole

πάτριος, -α, -ον: of one's father

πατρίς, -ίδος, ἡ: fatherland

παχύς, -εῖα: thick, stout

πεδῖον, τό: a plain, flat land

πεζός, ὁ: a footsoldier

πείθω: to prevail upon, win over,
 persuade

πειράω: to attempt, endeavor, try

πέλαγος, -εος, τό: the sea

πέμπτος, -η, -ον: fifth

πέμπω: to send, dispatch

πένης, -ητος, ὁ: one a poor man

πεντακόσιοι, -αι: five hundred

πέντε: five

πεντήκοντα: fifty

περί: + *gen.* concerning; + *acc.*, all around,
 approximately

περίκειμαι: to lie round about

περίμετρον, τό: the circumference,
 perimeter

περιοράω: to look over, overlook

περιπληθής, -ές: very full

περιρρέω: to flow around

περισκοπέω: to look around

πετάννυμι: to spread out

πέτομαι: to fly

πέτρα, ἡ: a rock, a ledge or shelf of rock

πηγή, ἡ: running waters, streams

πήγνυμι: to make fast, form together,
 congeal

πίμπλημι: to fill up

πίνω: to drink

πιστεύω: to trust, believe

πλανάω: to make to wander, lead
 wandering about

πλατύς, -εῖα, -ύ: wide, broad

πλεθριαῖος, -α, -ον: broad, long

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

πλείων, ὁ: more, larger (than)

Glossary

πλέω: to sail, go by sea
πλήθος, -εος, τό: a great number, multitude
πλήν: + *gen.* more than, except
πλήρης, -ες: filled, full of
πλησιάζω: to bring near, consort with
πλοῖον, τό: a ship, vessel
πλόος, ό: a sailing, voyage
πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a blowing
πνέω: to blow
ποδήρης, -ες: reaching to the feet
ποιέω: to make, do
ποίησις, -εως, ή: a making, poem
ποιητής, -οῦ, ό: a maker, poet
ποικίλος, -η, -ον: many-colored, spotted
πολέμιος, -α, -ον: military, relating to war
πόλεμος, ό: battle, fight, war
πόλις, -εως, ή: a city
πολλάκις: many times, often
πολύπους, -ποδος, ό: a sea-polypus, octopus
πολύς, -ή, -όν: many
πονηρός, -ά, -όν: toilsome, painful, grievous
ποταμός, ό: a river, stream
πότερος, -α, -ον: which of two?
πούς, ποδός, ό: a foot
πρό: + *gen.* before
προαιρέω: to bring forth, produce from one's stores
προέρχομαι: to go forward, go on, advance
προθυμία, ή: readiness, willingness, eagerness, zeal
πρόθυμος, -ον: ready, willing, eager, zealous
πρός: + *gen.* from, relating to; + *dat.* in, on, at; + *acc.* to, toward
προσαγορεύω: to address, greet, name
προσάγω: to bring to or forth
προσελαύνω: to drive or chase
προσέοικα: to be like, resemble
προσέρχομαι: to come or go to, to advance
προσέχω: to hold to, to put in or anchor
προσκυνέω: to make obeisance, worship
προσκοέλλω: to run (a ship) on shore
προσπλέω: to sail towards or against

πρότερος, -α, -ον: earlier, before, in front, first
πρύμνα, -ης, ή: the hindmost part of a ship, the stern, poop
πρῶρα, -ης, ή: the forepart of a ship, prow, bow
πτερόν, τό: feather
πτερωτός, -ή, -όν: feathered
πυκνός, -η, -ον: close, compact
πύλη, ή: a gate
πυνθάνομαι: to learn by hearsay or by inquiry
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire
πυρός, ό: wheat
πυρώω: to burn with fire, burn up
πῶς: how?
πως: in any way, at all, by any means

Ρ ρ

ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready
ῥέω: to flow, run, stream, gush
ῥητός, -ή, -όν: stated, specified

Σ σ

σατράπης, -ου, ό: a satrap, viceroy
σαφής, -ές: clear, plain, distinct
σελήνη, ή: the moon
σημείον, τό: a sign, a mark, token
σιδήρεος, -α, -ον: of iron or steel
σιτίον, -ου, τό: grain, food, provisions
σκάφος, -εος, τό: ship
σκιάω: to overshadow, shade
σκοπέω: to look at or after
σκοπός, ό: one that watches, one that looks after
σκότος, -εος, ό: darkness, gloom
σμικρός, -ή, -όν: small, tiny
σπήλαιον, τό: a grotto, cave, cavern
σπουδάζω: to make haste, be busy about
σπουδή, ή: haste, speed
στάδιον, τό: a stade
στέλλω: to dispatch, equip, make ready
στένω: to moan, sigh, groan
στέφανος, ό: garland
στήλη, ή: a block of stone
στόμα, στόματος, τό: a mouth
συγγραφεύς, -έως, ό: an historian, writer

Glossary

συγγράφω: to write or note down, record
συγκαλέω: to call to council, convoke, convene
συγκόπτω: to cut up, mangle
συλλαμβάνω: to collect, gather together, conceive
συμμαχέω: to be an ally
σύμμαχος, -ον: fighting along with, allied with
συμπόσιον, τό: a drinking-party, symposium
σύν: + *dat.* with, in the company of
συναράσσω: to dash in pieces, shiver, shatter
συνέρχομαι: to come or go together
συνεχής, -ές: holding together
συνθήκη, ἡ: a composition, agreement, treaty
συνίημι: to bring or set together
συνίστημι: to set together, unite, associate, subsist
σύνοιδα: to share in knowledge, be cognizant of
συνοικέω: to dwell together
συνουσία, ἡ: a being with, intercourse, society
σφαιροειδής, -ές: spherical
σφενδονάω: to sling, to use a slingshot
σφενδονήτης, -ου, ό: a slinger
σφόδρα: very, much, exceedingly
σφοδρός, -ά, -όν: vehement, violent, excessive
σχεδία, ἡ: a raft, float
σχολάζω: to have leisure or spare time, to be at leisure
σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body
σωφρονέω: to be sound of mind

T τ

τάξις, -εως, ἡ: an arranging, battle line, rank
ταπεινός, -ή, -όν: low
ταράσσω: to stir, stir up, trouble
τάσσω: to arrange, put in order, assign, appoint
ταχύς, -εία, -ύ: quick, swift, fleet
τείχος, -εος, τό: a wall
τέλειος, -α, -ον: finished, complete

τελέω: to complete, fulfill, accomplish
τέλος, -εος, τό: fulfillment, completion
τεράστιος, -ον: monstrous
τερπνός, -ή, -όν: delightful, pleasant, agreeable, glad
τέσσαρες: four
τέταρτος, -η, -ον: fourth
τε: and
τίθημι: to set, put, place
τιμάω: to pay honor to, hold in honor, revere
τις: any one, any thing, someone, something
τίς: who?
τιτρώσκω: to wound
τοιόσδε, -άδε, -όνδε: such a one
τοιούτος, -αύτη, -οὔτο: such as this or that
τοξότης, -ου, ό: a bowman, archer
τόπος, ό: a place
τοσοὔτος, -αύτη, -οὔτο: so large, so tall, so much
τοτέ: at times, now and then
τότε: at that time, then
τρέπω: to turn
τρέφω: to thicken or congeal
τριάκοντα: thirty
τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α: three hundred
τρίτος, -η, -ον: third
τρόπαιον, τό: a trophy
τρόπος, ό: a turn, direction, course, manner
τροφή, ἡ: nourishment, food
τρυφάω: to live luxuriously
τυγχάνω: to hit upon, happen
τυρός, ό: cheese

Y υ

ύάλινος, -η, -ον: of crystal or glass
ύδρεύω: to draw or carry water
ύδωρ, ύδατος, τό: water
ύλη, ἡ: a forest
ύμός, -ά, -όν: your
ύπακούω: to listen, attend to
ύπάρχω: to begin, make a beginning
ύπέρ: + *gen.* over, above; + *acc.* over, beyond
ύπερβιβάζω: to carry over, transfer
ύπερήδομαι: to be happy

Glossary

ὑπερθानμάζω: to wonder exceedingly
ὑπισχέομαι: to promise, engage in
ὑπόθεσις, -εως, ἡ: a supposition,
 purpose, composition, subject matter
ὑπολαμβάνω: to undertake, understand,
 believe, suppose
ὑπομένω: to stay behind, survive
ὑποτελέω: to pay tribute
ὑποφαίνω: to bring to light, to appear
 slight, (of the sun) to rise
ὑπό: + *gen.* from under, by; + *dat.* under; +
acc. towards
ὑστεραίῃς, -α, -ον: on the next day
ὔστερος, -α, -ον: later, afterward
ὑφίμμι: to let down
ὑφοράω: to look at from below, suspect
ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised
ὔω: to send rain, to rain

Φ φ

φαίνομαι: to appear, seem
φαίνω: reveal, show
φάσκω: to say, affirm, assert
φέλλος, ό: cork
φέρω: to bear, carry, endure
φεύγω: to flee
φημί: to declare, make known
φθονέω: bear a grudge, be jealous
φιλέω: to love, regard with affection,
 kiss
φιλία, ἡ: affection, friendship
φίλος, -η, -ον: loved, beloved, dear
φλυαρέω: to talk nonsense, play the fool
φοβέρος, -ά, -όν: fearful
φοβέω: to frighten, set to flight
φόρος, ό: a tribute
φράζω: to point out, indicate, show
φρονέω: to think, to have understanding
φυλάττω: to guard, keep safe
φύλλον, τό: a leaf
φύσις, ἡ: the nature, natural qualities,
 condition
φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth,
 grow
φωνή, ἡ: a sound, tone, voice, utterance
φῶς, φωτός, τό: light

Χ χ

χάλκεος, -έα, -εον: of bronze, brazen
χαρίεις: graceful, beautiful, lovely
χάσκω: to open, gape, have one's mouth
 open, yawn
χειμών, -ώνος, ό: the winter, a storm
χείρ, χειρός, ἡ: a hand
χέω: to pour
χίλιοι, -αι, -α: thousand
χιτών, -ώνος, ό: a tunic
χράομαι: to use + *dat.*
χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful, good,
 serviceable
χρή: it is fated, necessary + *inf.*
χροιά, ἡ: color, the skin
χρόνος, ό: time
χρύσεος, -η, -ον: golden, of gold
χώρα, ἡ: a space, land
χωρέω: give way, draw back, go,
 withdraw
χωρίον, τό: a place, spot, district

Ψ ψ

ψεῦδος, -εος, τό: a falsehood, untruth,
 lie
ψεύδω: to cheat by lies, beguile, lie
ψυχή, ἡ: breath, soul, spirit

Ω ω

ώκεανός, -ου, ό: ocean
ῶν, τό: an egg
ῶρα, ἡ: period of time, season
ὥσπερ: just as if, even as
ὥστε: with the result that, so that
ὥς: *adv.*: as, so, how; *conj.* that, in order
 that, since; *prep.* + *acc.* to; + *part.* as if,
 as; + *superlative* as ____ as possible

NOTES:

NOTES:

NOTES:



The aim of this book is to make Lucian's *A True Story* accessible to intermediate students of Ancient Greek. The running vocabulary and commentary are meant to provide everything necessary to read each page. Lucian's *A True Story* is a great text for intermediate readers. Its breathless narrative does not involve many complex sentences or constructions; there is some unusual vocabulary and a few departures from Attic Greek, but for the most part it is a straightforward narrative that is fun and interesting by one of antiquity's cleverest authors. In *A True Story*, Lucian parodies accounts of fanciful adventures and travel to incredible places by authors such as Ctesias and Iambulus. The story's combination of mockery and learning makes it an excellent example of the Greek literature of the imperial period.



Also available in this series:

Lucian's *The Ass*: An Intermediate Greek Reader

Lucian's *On the Syrian Goddess*: An Intermediate Greek Reader

Plutarch's *Dialogue on Love*: An Intermediate Greek Reader

Fænum
Publishing